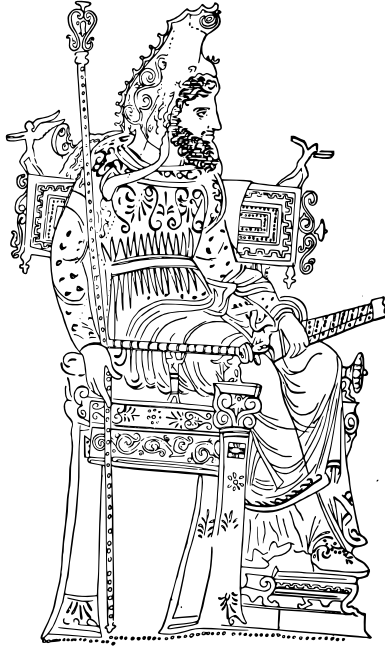


ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ



6-7

This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, see:

<https://bitbucket.org/ben-crowell/ransom/src/master/README.md>

rev. December 24, 2025

The Greek text of the Anabasis is based on the edition by Marchant, 1904. The English translation is by Dakyns, 1901.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

vocabulary

αἰχμάλωτος captive ~acute

ἀποσκεδάννυμι (ὕ) dismiss; scatter

ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice

δειπνέω eat, dine

διατριβή activity, waste of time

διατρίβω (ιῖ) wear down, delay

~tribology

Ἕλλην Greek

ἔτοιμος ready; fulfilled

εὐωχία partying

θύω (ὕ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

ἱερεῖον animal victim ~hieroglyph

κακουργέω do evil

κατάκειμαι lie down

κεράτινος (ἄ) of horn

κλωπεύω steal

ληίζομαι plunder ~lucre

ξένιος of hospitality ~xenophobe

πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic

ποτήριον cup

πρόσω forward, in the future; far

σκηνέω camp

σκηνόω camp

στολή equipment

στρατιά army ~strategy

6

6.1

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἐν τῇ διατριβῇ οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἔζων, οἱ δὲ καὶ ληζόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας. ἐκλώπευον δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες εὖ μάλα τοὺς ἀποσκεδαννυμένους, καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς τοὺς πρόσω σκηνοῦντας ἐπειρῶντο κακουργεῖν· καὶ πολεμικώτατα πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶχον ἐκ τούτων. ὁ δὲ Κορύλας, ὃς ἐτύγχανε τότε Παφλαγονίας ἄρχων, πέμπει παρὰ τοὺς Ἑλληνας πρέσβεις ἔχοντας ἵππους καὶ στολὰς καλὰς, λέγοντας ὅτι Κορύλας ἔτοιμος εἶη τοὺς Ἑλληνας μήτε ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι περὶ μὲν τούτων σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ βουλευσούντο, ἐπὶ ξένια δὲ ἐδέχοντο αὐτούς· παρεκάλεσαν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν δικαιοτάτους εἶναι. θύσαντες δὲ βούς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ ἄλλα ἱερεῖα εὐωχίαν μὲν ἀρκοῦσαν παρεῖχον, κατακέιμενοι δὲ ἐν σκίμποσιν ἐδείπνουν, καὶ ἔπινον ἐκ κερατίνων ποτηρίων, οἷς ἐνετύγχανον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.

6

6.1

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἐν τῇ διατριβῇ οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἔζων,
οἱ δὲ καὶ |ληίζομαι?: plunder; or Παφλαγονίας. |steal
|ληίζομαι?: plunder
δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες εὖ μάλα τοὺς |dismiss; scatter ,
καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς τοὺς |forward, in the οὐντας ἐπειρῶντο
|future; far
|do evil καὶ |warlike, hostile πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶχον ἐκ
τούτων. ὁ δὲ Κορύλας, ὃς ἐτύγχανε τότε Παφλαγονίας
ἄρχων, πέμπει παρὰ τοὺς |Greek πρέσβεις ἔχοντας
ἵππους καὶ |equipment λᾶς, λέγοντας ὅτι Κορύλας ἔτοιμος
εἶη τοὺς |Greek μήτε ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. οἱ
δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι περὶ μὲν τούτων σὺν τῇ
|army βουλευέσονται, ἐπὶ |of hospitality ἔχοντο αὐτούς·
παρεκάλεσαν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν
δικαιοτάτους εἶναι. |rush; sacrifice βούς τῶν |captive
καὶ ἄλλα |animal |partying μὲν |satisfy; ward off, ρεῖχον,
|victim |defend; suffice
|lie down δὲ ἐν σκίμποσιν |eat, dine , καὶ ἔπινον
ἐκ |of horn |cup , οἷς ἐνετύγχανον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.

this, whilst waiting, they lived partly on supplies from the market, partly on the fruit of raids into Paphlagonia. The Paphlagonians, on their side, showed much skill in kidnapping stragglers, wherever they could lay hands on them, and in the night time tried to do mischief to those whose quarters were at a distance from the camp. The result was that their relations to one another were exceedingly hostile, so much so that Corylas, who was the chief of Paphlagonia at that date, sent ambassadors to the Hellenes, bearing horses and fine apparel, and charged with a proposal on the part of Corylas to make terms with the Hellenes on the principle of mutual forbearance from injuries. The generals replied that they would consult with the army about the matter. Meanwhile they gave them a hospitable reception, to which they invited certain members of the army whose claims were obvious. They sacrificed some of the captive cattle and other sacrificial beasts, and with these they furnished forth a sufficiently festal entertainment, and reclining on their truckle beds, fell to eating and drinking out of beakers made of horn which they happened to find in the country.

But

vocabulary

ᾄδω sing

αἰῖδω sing

ἄλλομαι to jump ~sally

ἀνακράζω yell, scream

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue

ἀπαντάω encounter, come upon

ἀρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon

αὐλός flute, tube, hollow

εἴτα then, therefore, next

ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear

ἐνίοτε sometimes

ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἐπειδάν when, after

ζευγηλατέω drive oxen

ζευγηλάτης -ου (m, 1) ox driver

ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals

~zygote

κοῦφος light, nimble

ληιστής -οῦς (m, 3) bandit

ληιστός lootable ~lucre

ληιστής -οῦ (m, 1) bandit

μάχαιρα knife, dagger

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

ὀρχέομαι dance

ὀρχησις dancing

παιανίζω (ᾠ) chant in victory

παίω hit

παρατίθην put near, put at risk

~thesis

πλήσσω hit ~plectrum

προεῖδον look toward, catch sight of

~wit

προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender, come in

πυκνός dense, frequent; shrewd

ῥυθμός measured; symmetrical

σπείρω sow ~diaspora

σπονδή libation, treaty ~spontaneous

στρέφω turn, veer ~atrophy

τεχνικός skillful

ὕψηλός high

Ἐπεὶ δὲ σπονδαί τε ἐγένοντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν, ἀνέστησαν
 πρῶτον μὲν Θρᾷκες καὶ πρὸς αὐλὸν ὠρχήσαντο σὺν
 τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ ἤλλοντο ὑψηλά τε καὶ κούφως καὶ ταῖς
 μαχαίραις ἐχρῶντο· τέλος δὲ ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον παίει,
 ὥς πᾶσιν ἐδόκει πεπληγένοι τὸν ἄνδρα· ὁ δ' ἔπεσε
 τεχνικῶς πῶς. καὶ ἀνέκραγον οἱ Παφλαγόνες. καὶ ὁ μὲν
 σκυλεύσας τὰ ὅπλα τοῦ ἐτέρου ἐξήει ἄδων τὸν Σιτάλκαν·
 ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρακῶν τὸν ἕτερον ἐξέφερον ὥς τεθνηκότα·
 ἦν δὲ οὐδὲν πεπονθώς.

Μετὰ τοῦτο Αἰνιᾶνες καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἳ
 ὠρχοῦντο τὴν καρπαίαν καλουμένην ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις. ὁ
 δὲ τρόπος τῆς ὀρχήσεως ἦν, ὁ μὲν παραθέμενος τὰ
 ὅπλα σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ, πυκνὰ δὲ στρεφόμενος
 ὥς φοβούμενος, ληστής δὲ προσέρχεται· ὁ δ' ἐπειδὴν
 προΐδῃται, ἀπαντᾷ ἀρπάσας τὰ ὅπλα καὶ μάχεται πρὸ
 τοῦ ζεύγους· καὶ οὗτοι ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν
 αὐλόν· καὶ τέλος ὁ ληστής δήσας τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τὸ ζεύγος
 ἀπάγει· ἐνίστε δὲ καὶ ὁ ζευγηλάτης τὸν ληστήν· εἶτα παρὰ

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |libation, treaty τε ἐγένοντο καὶ |chant in victory ἔστησαν
 πρῶτον μὲν Θρᾶκες καὶ πρὸς |flute, |dance σὺν
 τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ |to jump |high τε καὶ |hollow |light, καὶ ταῖς
 |knife ἐχρῶντο· τέλος δὲ ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον |hit ,
 ὥς πᾶσιν ἐδόκει |hit τὸν ἄνδρα· ὁ δ' ἔπεσε
 |skillful πως. καὶ |yell, scream οἱ Παφλαγόνες. καὶ ὁ μὲν
 σκυλεύσας τὰ ὅπλα τοῦ ἑτέρου |go forth; |is possible ν τὸν Σιτάλκαν·
 ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρακῶν τὸν ἕτερον |carry off ὥς τεθνηκότα·
 ἦν δὲ οὐδὲν πεπονθώς.

Μετὰ τοῦτο Αἰνιᾶνες καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἱ
 |dance τὴν καρπαίαν καλουμένην ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις. ὁ
 δὲ τρόπος τῆς |dancing ἦν, ὁ μὲν |put near, put at risk τὰ
 ὅπλα σπείρει καὶ |drive oxen , πυκνὰ δὲ |turn
 ὥς φοβούμενος, ληστής δὲ προσέρχεται· ὁ δ' ἐπειδὰν
 |look toward, |encounter, |catch sight of |carry off, seize
 τοῦ |team καὶ οὗτοι ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν ἐν |measured; |symmetrical
 |flute, tube, hollow ὁ ληστής δήσας τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τὸ |team
 |lead |sometimes : αἰ ὁ |ox driver τὸν ληστήν· |then, there-
 away, |back |fore, next

as soon as the libation was ended and they had sung the hymn, up got first some Thracians, who performed a dance under arms to the sound of a pipe, leaping high into the air with much nimbleness, and brandishing their swords, till at last one man struck his fellow, and every one thought he was really wounded, so skilfully and artistically did he fall, and the Paphlagonians screamed out. Then he that gave the blow stripped the other of his arms, and marched off chanting the «Sitalcas,” whilst others of the Thracians bore off the other, who lay as if dead, though he had not received even a scratch.

After this some Aenianians and Magnesians got up and fell to dancing the Carpaea, as it is called, under arms. This was the manner of the dance: one man lays aside his arms and proceeds to drive a yoke of oxen, and while he drives he sows, turning him about frequently, as though he were afraid of something; up comes a cattle-lifter, and no sooner does the ploughman catch sight of him afar, than he snatches up his arms and confronts him. They fight in front of his team, and all in rhythm to the sound of the pipe. At last the robber binds the countryman and drives off the team. Or sometimes the cattle-driver binds the robber, and then he puts him under the

vocabulary

ἀντιτάσσω set against
ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit
αὐλέω play (blow, toot)
αὐλός flute, tube, hollow
δινεύω (ι) turn, whirl, roam
εἰσάγω lead in ~demagogue
ἐκάτερος each of two
ἐκκυβιστάω tumble out
ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out
 ~plectrum
ἐλαφρός nimble, light on one's feet;
 light, bearable ~elevator
ἐνόπλιος martial
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐξάνιστημι raise, bring/send out
ἐξοπλίζω prepare, arm ~hoplite
ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion
ζεύγνυμι (υ) yoke, join ~zygote
κοῦφος light, nimble
κρότος rattling, clapping
κρούω hit, clap, knock
μιμέομαι (ι) imitate, represent
ὀκλάζω squat, sink

ὀπίσω backwards, later in time, after
 (+gen)
ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
 ~hoplite
ὀρχέομαι dance
ὄρχησις dancing
ὀρχηστρίς dancing girl
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
παιανίζω (ᾱ) chant in victory
πάομαι acquire ~pathos
πάσσω sprinkle; insert in a web
πατέομαι eat, drink ~pastor
πέλτη shield, spear ~pelt
πέλτης -ου (m, 1) type of river fish
 ~pelt
ποιόω make of a certain quality
πρόσοδος (f) approach, procession; a
 rent
πυρρίχη war dance
πύρριχος red
ῥυθμός measured; symmetrical
σκευάζω prepare, collect
τοτέ then ... now ...

τοὺς βοῦς ζεύξας ὀπίσω τῷ χεῖρε δεδεμένον ἐλαύνει.

Μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσὸς εἰσῆλθεν ἐν ἑκατέρᾳ τῇ χειρὶ ἔχων
 πέλτην, καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ὥς δύο ἀντιταττομένων μιμούμενος
 ὠρχεῖτο, τοτὲ δὲ ὥς πρὸς ἓνα ἐχρήτο ταῖς πέλταις,
 τοτὲ δ' ἐδινεῖτο καὶ ἐξεκυβίστα ἔχων τὰς πέλτας, ὥστε
 ὄψιν καλὴν φαίνεσθαι. τέλος δὲ τὸ περσικὸν ὠρχεῖτο
 κρούων τὰς πέλτας καὶ ὥκλαζε καὶ ἐξανίστατο· καὶ ταῦτα
 πάντα ἐν ῥυθμῷ ἐποίει πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ
 ἐπιόντες οἱ Μαντινεῖς καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν Ἀρκάδων
 ἀναστάντες ἐξοπλισάμενοι ὥς ἐδύναντο κάλλιστα ἦσαν
 τε ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν ἐνόπλιον ῥυθμὸν αὐλούμενοι καὶ
 ἐπαιάνισαν καὶ ὠρχήσαντο ὥσπερ ἐν ταῖς πρὸς τοὺς θεοὺς
 προσόδοις. ὀρώντες δὲ οἱ Παφλαγόνες δεινὰ ἐποιοῦντο
 πάσας τὰς ὀρχήσεις ἐν ὅπλοις εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτοις ὀρών
 ὁ Μυσὸς ἐκπεπληγμένους αὐτούς, πείσας τῶν Ἀρκάδων
 τινὰ πεπαμένον ὀρχηστρίδα εἰσάγει σκευάσας ὥς ἐδύνατο
 κάλλιστα καὶ ἀσπίδα δοὺς κούφην αὐτῇ. ἡ δὲ ὠρχήσατο
 πυρρίχην ἐλαφρῶς. ἐνταῦθα κρότος ἦν πολὺς, καὶ οἱ

τοὺς βοῦς |yoke, join ἴσω τῷ χεῖρε δεδεμένον ἐλαύνει.

Μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσὸς εἰσῆλθεν ἐν ἐκατέρα τῇ χειρὶ ἔχων

πέλτην, καὶ |then ... now ... |set against |imitate,
|represent

|dance , |then ... now ... πρὸς ἓνα ἐχρήτο ταῖς πέλταις,

|then ... |turn, καὶ |tumble out ἔχων τὰς πέλτας, ὥστε
|now ... |whirl,
|roam
ὅψιν καλὴν φαίνεσθαι. τέλος δὲ τὸ περσικὸν |dance

|hit, clap, knock ἄλτας καὶ |squat, sink ... |raise, bring/send
|out

πάντα ἐν |measured; ... εἰ πρὸς τὸν |flute, tube, hollōw . οὕτω
|symmetrical

ἐπιόντες οἱ Μαντινεῖς καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν Ἀρκάδων

ἀναστάντες ἐξοπλισάμενοι ὡς ἐδύναντο κάλλιστα ἦσαν

τε ἐν |measured; ... τὸν |martial |me- |play (blow, toot) ...
|symmetrical |sured;
|chant in victory ... |dance ὥσπερ |symmet-
|rical

ταῖς πρὸς τοὺς θεοὺς

|approach, pro- ῥώντες δὲ οἱ Παφλαγόνες δεινὰ |make of a cer-
|cession; a rent |tain quality

πάσας τὰς |dancing ἐν ὅπλοις εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτοις ὁρῶν

ὁ Μυσὸς ἐκπεπληγμένους αὐτούς, πείσας τῶν Ἀρκάδων

τινὰ πεπαμένον |dancing girl εἰσάγει |prepare, ὡς ἐδύνατο
|collect

κάλλιστα καὶ ἀσπίδα δούς |light, αὐτῇ. ἡ δὲ |dance
|nimble

πυρρίχην |light in weight . αὔθα |rattling, ἦν πολὺς, καὶ οἱ
|clapping

yoke beside the oxen, with his two hands tied behind his back, and off he drives.

After this a Mysian came in with a light shield in either hand and danced, at one time going through a pantomime, as if he were dealing with two assailants at once; at another plying his shields as if to face a single foe, and then again he would whirl about and throw somersaults, keeping the shields in his hands, so that it was a beautiful spectacle. Last of all he danced the Persian dance, clashing the shields together, crouching down on one knee and springing up again from earth; and all this he did in measured time to the sound of the flute. After him the Mantineans stepped upon the stage, and some other Arcadians also stood up; they had accoutred themselves in all their warlike finery. They marched with measured tread, pipes playing, to the tune of the 'warrior's march'; the notes of the paean rose, lightly their limbs moved in dance, as in solemn procession to the holy gods. The Paphlagonians looked upon it as something truly strange that all these dances should be under arms; and the Mysians, seeing their astonishment persuaded one of the Arcadians who had got a dancing girl to let him introduce her, which he did after dressing her up magnificently and giving her a light shield. When, lithe of limb, she danced the Pyrrhic, loud clapping followed;

vocabulary

ἄλφιτον barley meal
 ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
 ἄποικος abroad, colonizing
 ἀριστερός left-hand
 ἄρнуμαι get, win
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐνταῦθα there, here
 ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise
 ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go
 searching through
 κεράμιον jar
 μέδιμνος bushel
 ναύαρχος admiral
 ξένιος of hospitality ~xenophobe

οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
 οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
 ὀρμίζω anchor, beach
 πεντακόσιοι 500
 προσάγω bring to a place
 ~demagogue
 προσδοκάω expect
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
 συμμάχομαι fight with
 τριήρης trireme ~row
 τρισχίλιοι 3000 ~kilo-
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later
 χίλιοι (ii) thousand ~kilo-

Παφλαγόνες ἤροντο εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες συνεμάχοντο αὐτοῖς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι αὐται καὶ αἱ τρεψάμεναι εἶεν βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. τῇ μὲν νυκτὶ ταύτῃ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸ στράτευμα· καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις μήτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγόνας μήτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν πρέσβεις ὥχοντο· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ἐπειδὴ πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἐδόκει παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἔπλεον ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα πνεύματι καλῶ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὴν Παφλαγονίαν. τῇ δ' ἄλλῃ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Σινώπην καὶ ὠρμίσαντο εἰς Ἀρμήνην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινωπεῖς δὲ οἰκοῦσι μὲν ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, Μιλησίων δὲ ἄποικοί εἰσιν. οὗτοι δὲ ξένια πέμπουσι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀλφίτων μεδίμνους τρισχιλίους, οἴνου δὲ κεράμια χίλια καὶ πεντακόσια. καὶ Χειρίσοφος ἐνταῦθα ἦλθε τριήρη ἔχων. καὶ οἱ μὲν στρατιῶται προσεδόκων ἄγοντά τι σφίσιν ἤκειν· ὁ δ' ἦγε μὲν οὐδέν, ἀπήγγελλε δὲ ὅτι ἐπαινοίη αὐτοὺς καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, καὶ

Παφλαγόνες ἤρουντο εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες |fight with αὐτοῖς.
οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι αὐται καὶ αἱ τρεψάμεναι εἶεν βασιλέα ἐκ
τοῦ στρατοπέδου. τῇ μὲν νυκτὶ ταύτῃ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος
ἐγένετο.

Τῇ δὲ |the next;|bring to a place ὕς εἰς τὸ |army καὶ
|later
ἔδοξε τοῖς |soldier, μήτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγόνας μήτε
|mercenary
ἀδικεῖσθαι. μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν πρέσβεις |come, go οἱ δὲ
|Greek , ἐπειδὴ πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἐδόκει παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες
ἔπλεον ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα πνεύματι καλῶ ἐν |left-hand
ἔχοντες τὴν Παφλαγονίαν. τῇ δ' ἄλλῃ ἀφικνοῦνται
εἰς Σινώπην καὶ |anchor, εἰς Ἀρμήνην τῆς Σινώπης.
|beach
Σινωπεῖς δὲ |inhabit μὲν ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, Μιλησίων
δὲ |abroad, ἴσιν. οὗτοι δὲ |of hospitality ὕσι τοῖς |Greek
|colonizing
|barley meal|bushel |3000 , οἶνου δὲ |jar χίλια
καὶ |500 . καὶ Χειρίσοφος |there, here ἔλθε |trireme
ἔχων. καὶ οἱ μὲν |soldier, |expect ἄγοντά τι
|mercenary
σφίσιν ἤκειν· ὁ δ' ἦγε μὲν οὐδέν, |announce, or-᾽ ὅτι |concur
|der, promise
αὐτοὺς καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ |admiral καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, καὶ

and the Paphlagonians asked, «If these women fought by their side in battle?» to which they answered, «To be sure, it was the women who routed the great King, and drove him out of camp.» So ended the night.

But next day the generals introduced the embassy to the army, and the soldiers passed a resolution in the sense proposed: between themselves and the Paphlagonians there was to be a mutual abstinence from injuries. After this the ambassadors went on their way, and the Hellenes, as soon as it was thought that sufficient vessels had arrived, went on board ship, and voyaged a day and a night with a fair breeze, keeping Paphlagonia on their left. And on the following day, arriving at Sinope, they came to moorings in the harbour of Harmene, near Sinope. The Sinopeans, though inhabitants of Paphlagonia, are really colonists of the Milesians. They sent gifts of hospitality to the Hellenes, three thousand measures of barley with fifteen hundred jars of wine. At this place Cheirisophus rejoined them with a man of war. The soldiers certainly expected that, having come, he would have brought them something, but he brought them nothing, except complimentary phrases, on the part of Anaxibius, the high admiral, and the rest, who sent them their congratulations,

vocabulary

διανοέω have in mind

ἐγγύς near

εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion

ἐνδείκνυμι (ὄ) address, consider

εὖνοια good will, gift

κρύπτω hide, cover ~cryptic

λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain

μισθοφορά payment of wages

οἴκαδε homeward ~economics

περαίνω finish, accomplish

πολυαρχία shared command

πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add ~ion

προσίημι be allowed near

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιά army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do ~ischemia

ὑστερίζω be late

ὑφίστημι promise, undertake ~station

φθάνω (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

ὅτι ὑπισχνεῖτο Ἀναξίβιος, εἰ ἀφίκοντο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, μισθοφορὰν αὐτοῖς ἔσσεσθαι.

Καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμῆνῃ ἔμειναν οἱ στρατιῶται ἡμέρας πέντε. ὥς δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐδόκουν ἐγγὺς γίνεσθαι, ἤδη μᾶλλον ἢ πρόσθεν εἰσῆει αὐτοὺς ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἔχοντές τι οἴκαδε ἀφίκωνται. ἠγήσαντο οὖν, εἰ ἓνα ἔλουντο ἄρχοντα, μᾶλλον ἂν ἢ πολυαρχίας οὔσης δύνασθαι τὸν ἓνα χρῆσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας, καὶ εἴ τι δέοι λανθάνειν, μᾶλλον ἂν κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἴ τι αὐτῷ δέοι φθάνειν, ἥττον ἂν ὑστερίζειν· οὐ γὰρ ἂν λόγων δεῖν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνὶ περαινεσθαι ἄν· τὸν δ' ἔμπροσθεν χρόνον ἐκ τῆς νικώσης ἔπραττον πάντα οἱ στρατηγοί.

Ὡς δὲ ταῦτα διανοοῦντο, ἐτράποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔλεγον προσιόντες αὐτῷ ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ οὕτω γινώσκει, καὶ εὖνοιαν ἐνδεικνύμενος ἕκαστος ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν ὑποστῆναι τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῇ μὲν ἐβούλετο ταῦτα, νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν μείζω οὕτως

ὅτι ^{|promise,}
|agree Ἀναξίβιος, εἰ ἀφίκοντο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου,
|payment of wages. οὕτως ἔσεσθαι.

Καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμῆνῃ ἔμειναν οἱ ^{|soldier,}
|mercenary ἡμέρας
πέντε. ὥς δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐδόκουν ^{|near} γίγνεσθαι, ἤδη
μᾶλλον ἢ πρόσθεν ^{|go in} αὐτοὺς ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἔχοντές
τι ^{|homeward} ῥίκωνται. ἠγήσαντο οὖν, εἰ ἓνα ἔλουντο
ἄρχοντα, μᾶλλον ἂν ἢ ^{|shared}
|command οὔσης δύνασθαι τὸν
ἓνα χρῆσθαι τῷ ^{|army} καὶ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας, καὶ
εἴ τι δέοι λανθάνειν, μᾶλλον ἂν ^{|hide, cover} , καὶ εἴ τι αὐ
δέοι ^{|be first} , ἦττον ἂν ^{|be late} οὐ γὰρ ἂν λόγων δεῖν
πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνὶ ^{|finish,}
|accomplish ἅν· τὸν
δ' ἔμπροσθεν χρόνον ἐκ τῆς νικώσης ἔπραττον πάντα οἱ
στρατηγοί.

Ὡς δὲ ταῦτα διανοοῦντο, ἐτράποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα·
καὶ οἱ ^{|captain} ἔλεγον προσιόντες αὐτῷ ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ
οὕτω γινώσκει, καὶ ^{|good will,}
|gift ^{|address,}
|consider ἕκαστος
ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν ^{|promise,}
|undertake τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῇ
μὲν ἐβούλετο ταῦτα, νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν μείζω οὕτως

coupled with a promise on the part of Anaxibius that, as soon as they were outside the Euxine, pay would be forthcoming.

At Harmene the army halted five days; and now that they seemed to be so close to Hellas, the question how they were to reach home not empty-handed presented itself more forcibly to their minds than heretofore. The conclusion they came to was to appoint a single general, since one man would be better able to handle the troops, by night or by day, than was possible while the generalship was divided. If secrecy were desirable, it would be easier to keep matters dark, or if again expedition were an object, there would be less risk of arriving a day too late, since mutual explanations would be avoided, and whatever approved itself to the single judgement would at once be carried into effect, whereas previously the generals had done everything in obedience to the opinion of the majority.

With these ideas working in their minds, they turned to Xenophon, and the officers came to him and told him that this was how the soldiers viewed matters; and each of them, displaying a warmth of kindly feeling, pressed him to accept the office. Xenophon partly would have liked to do so, in the belief that by

vocabulary

ἄδηλος invisible, unknown
ἄετός eagle ~avis
αἵτιος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
ἀνακοινώ communicate, impart
ἀποβάλλω throw away, lose
ἀπορέω be confused, distressed
αὐτοκράτωρ independent
διακρίνω (ι) separate, sort ~critic
διαπορέω me/be in trouble
ἔνδοξος reputable
ἐνθυμέομαι (ὕ) take to heart
ἐνθύμημα (ὕ) thought, invention
ἐπαίρω lift, raise ~heresy
ἐπιθυμέω (ὕ) wish, covet
ἐπίπονος of/with pain, toil ~osteopenia
θύω (ὕ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

ἰδιωτικός private, amateurish
ἱερεῖον animal victim ~hieroglyph
κράτιστος best
μαντευτός foretold
μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis
οἰωνός vulture, large bird, bird of prey; omen ~avis
ὄναρ -τος (n) dream
ὅπη wherever, however
ὄρνεον bird ~ornithology
προεργάζομαι prepare
προπέμπω send, send ahead ~pomp
στρατιά army ~strategy
συνεπιμελέομαι care for together
συνίστημι unite; confront in battle
 ~station
φθέγγομαι make a sound, utter
 ~diphthong

ἑαυτῷ γίνεσθαι πρὸς τοὺς φίλους καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν
τοῦνομα μείζον ἀφίξεσθαι αὐτοῦ, τυχὸν δὲ καὶ ἀγαθοῦ
τινος ἂν αἴτιος τῇ στρατιᾷ γενέσθαι.

Τὰ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα ἐνθυμήματα ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμεῖν
αὐτοκράτορα γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα. ὁπότε δ' αὖ ἐνθυμοῖτο
ὅτι ἄδηλον μὲν παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ ὅπῃ τὸ μέλλον ἔξει,
διὰ τοῦτο δὲ καὶ κίνδυνος εἴη καὶ τὴν προειργασμένην
δόξαν ἀποβαλεῖν, ἡπορεῖτο. διαπορουμένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ
διακρῖναι ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοῖς θεοῖς ἀνακοινῶσαι·
καὶ παραστησάμενος δύο ἱερεῖα ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ,
ὅσπερ αὐτῷ μαντευτὸς ἦν ἐκ Δελφῶν· καὶ τὸ ὄναρ δὴ ἀπὸ
τούτου τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνόμιζεν ἑορακέναι ὃ εἶδεν ὅτε ἤρχετο
ἐπὶ τὸ συνεπιμελείσθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς καθίστασθαι. καὶ
ὅτε ἐξ Ἐφέσου ὠρμᾶτο Κύρῳ συσταθησόμενος, αἰετὸν
ἀνεμιμνήσκετο ἑαυτῷ δεξιὸν φθεγγόμενον, καθήμενον
μέντοι, ὃνπερ ὁ μάντις προπέμπων αὐτὸν ἔλεγεν ὅτι μέγας
μὲν οἰωνὸς εἴη καὶ οὐκ ἰδιωτικός, καὶ ἔνδοξος, ἐπίπονος
μέντοι· τὰ γὰρ ὄρνεα μάλιστα ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῷ αἰετῷ

ἐαυτῷ γίγνεσθαι πρὸς τοὺς φίλους καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν
 τοῦνομα μείζον ἀφίξεσθαι αὐτοῦ, τυχὸν δὲ καὶ ἀγαθοῦ
 τινος ἂν |blameworthy; ,ρατιᾷ γενέσθαι.
 |the cause

Τὰ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα |thought, |lift, αὐτὸν |wish, covet
 |invention |raise
 |independent γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα. ὁπότε δ' αὖ |take to heart

ὅτι |invisible, |ἐν παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ |wherever, μέλλον ἔξει,
 |unknown |however
 διὰ τοῦτο δὲ καὶ κίνδυνος εἴη καὶ τὴν |prepare

δόξαν |throw away, |be confused, |me/be in trouble δὲ αὐτῷ
 |lose |distressed
 |separate, sort ὅξε |best εἶναι τοῖς θεοῖς |communicate,
 |impart

καὶ παραστησάμενος δύο |animal |rush; sacrifice ἂ τῷ βασιλεῖ,
 |victim

ὅσπερ αὐτῷ |foretold ἦν ἐκ Δελφῶν· καὶ τὸ |dream ἡ ἀπὸ
 τούτου τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνόμιζεν ἑορακέναι ὃ εἶδεν ὅτε ἤρχετο

ἐπὶ τὸ |care for together τῆς στρατιᾶς καθίστασθαι. καὶ

ὅτε ἐξ Ἐφέσου ὠρμάτο Κύρῳ |unite; confront in, |eagle
 |battle

ἀνεμμνήσκετο ἐαυτῷ δεξιὸν |make a sound, utter ἡ ἡμενον

μέντοι, ὅνπερ ὁ |seer |send, send ahead ὃν ἔλεγεν ὅτι μέγας

μὲν |vulture, εἴη καὶ οὐκ ἰδιωτικός, καὶ |reputable |of/with pain, toil
 |eagle,
 |omen
 μέντοι τὰ γὰρ |bird μάλιστα ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῷ |eagle

so doing he would win to himself a higher repute in the esteem of his friends, and that his name would be reported to the city written large; and by some stroke of fortune he might even be the discoverer of some blessing to the army collectively.

These and the like considerations elated him; he had a strong desire to hold the supreme command. But then again, as he turned the matter over, the conviction deepened in his mind that the issue of the future is to every man uncertain; and hence there was the risk of perhaps losing such reputation as he had already acquired. He was in sore straits, and, not knowing how to decide, it seemed best to him to lay the matter before heaven. Accordingly, he led two victims to the altar and made sacrifice to Zeus the King, for it was he and no other who had been named by the oracle at Delphi, and his belief was that the vision which he had beheld when he first essayed to undertake the joint administration of the army was sent to him by that god. He also recalled to mind a circumstance which befell him still earlier, when setting out from Ephesus to associate himself with Cyrus; — how an eagle screamed on his right hand from the east, and still remained perched, and the soothsayer who was escorting him said that it was a great and royal omen; indicating glory and yet suffering; for the punier race of birds only attack the eagle when seated. «Yet,” added he,

vocabulary

ἄετός eagle ~avis
αἵτιος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
αἰτίος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
δῆλος visible, conspicuous
διαφανής transparent
εἶπερ if indeed
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἐπιψηφίζω put to a vote
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
οἰωνός vulture, large bird, bird of

prey; omen ~avis
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
προβάλλω throw before; propose;
 (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate
 ~ballistic
προκρίνω (ι) choose first
προσδέω bind also; need also
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
στρατιά army ~strategy
συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear
συνέρχομαι come together
τιμάω (ι) honor, exalt
χρηματιστικός profitable

καθημένῳ· οὐ μέντοι χρηματιστικὸν εἶναι τὸν οἰωνόν· τὸν γὰρ αἰετὸν πετόμενον μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

Οὕτω δὴ θυομένῳ αὐτῷ διαφανῶς ὁ θεὸς σημαίνει μήτε προσδεῖσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς μήτε εἰ αἰροῦντο ἀποδέχεσθαι. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐγένετο. ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ συνήλθε, καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον ἓνα αἰρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἔδοξε, προυβάλλοντο αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι αἰρήσονται αὐτόν, εἴ τις ἐπιψηφίζοι, ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδομαι μὲν ὑφ' ὑμῶν τιμώμενος, εἴπερ ἄνθρωπός εἰμι, καὶ χάριν ἔχω καὶ εὐχομαι δοῦναί μοι τοὺς θεοὺς αἰτιὸν τινος ὑμῖν ἀγαθοῦ γενέσθαι· τὸ μέντοι ἐμὲ προκριθῆναι ὑφ' ὑμῶν ἄρχοντα Λακεδαιμονίου ἀνδρὸς παρόντος οὔτε ὑμῖν μοι δοκεῖ συμφέρον εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἥττον ἂν διὰ τοῦτο τυγχάνειν, εἴ τι δέοισθε παρ' αὐτῶν· ἐμοί τε αὖ οὐ πάνυ τι νομίζω ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι τοῦτο. ὁρῶ γὰρ ὅτι καὶ τῇ πατρίδι μου οὐ πρόσθεν ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες πρὶν ἐποίησαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν

καθημένῳ· οὐ μέντοι |profitable εἶναι τὸν |vulture, τὸν
 γὰρ |eagle πετόμενον μάλλον λαμβάνειν τὰ |fit, suitable
 eagle, omen

Οὕτω δὲ |rush; sacrifice ᾧ διαφανῶς ὁ θεὸς |give orders, to; ε
 προσδεῖσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς μήτε εἰ αἰροῦντο |accept
 show; mark

τοῦτο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐγένετο. ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ |come together
 καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον ἓνα αἰρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἔδοξε,

|throw before; propose; (mp) ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει |visible, ὅτι
 |pretend, abandon, nominate |conspicuous
 αἰρήσονται αὐτόν, εἴ τις |put to a vote, ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε
 τάδε.

Ἐγώ, ᾧ ἄνδρες, |ῥδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy; |honor
 |or ῥδομαι?: be pleased, en-
 |joy
 ἀνθρωπὸς εἰμι, καὶ χάριν ἔχω καὶ εὐχομαι δοῦναί μοι

τοὺς θεοὺς αἰτιὸν τινος ὑμῖν ἀγαθοῦ γενέσθαι· τὸ μέντοι
 ἐμὲ |choose first ὑφ' ὑμῶν ἄρχοντα Λακεδαιμονίου ἀνδρὸς

παρόντος οὔτε ὑμῖν μοι δοκεῖ |bring together; be expedi-
 |ent; agree; (mp) happen
 ἂν διὰ τοῦτο τυγχάνειν, εἴ τι δέοισθε παρ' αὐτῶν· ἐμοί τε

αὐτὸ οὐ πάνυ τι νομίζω |safe, easy, τοῦτο. ὁρῶ γὰρ ὅτι
 |steady, careful
 καὶ τῇ πατρίδι μου οὐ πρόσθεν ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες

πρὶν ἐποίησαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν |agree with/to

«it bodes not gain in money; for the eagle seizes his food, not when seated, but on the wing.”

Thus Xenophon sacrificed, and the god as plainly as might be gave him a sign, neither to demand the generalship, nor, if chosen, to accept the office. And that was how the matter stood when the army met, and the proposal to elect a single leader was unanimous. After this resolution was passed, they proposed Xenophon for election, and when it seemed quite evident that they would elect him, if he put the question to the vote, he got up and spoke as follows.

«Sirs, I am but mortal, and must needs be happy to be honoured by you. I thank you, and am grateful, and my prayer is that the gods may grant me to be an instrument of blessing to you. Still, when I consider it closer, thus, in the presence of a Lacedaemonian, to be preferred by you as general, seems to me but ill conducive either to your interests or to mine, since you will the less readily obtain from them hereafter anything you may need, while for myself I look upon acceptance as even somewhat dangerous. Do I not see and know with what persistence these Lacedaemonians prosecuted the war till finally they forced our State to acknowledge the leadership of Lacedaemon?

vocabulary

ἄκυρον water plantain
ἄκυρος (ῥ) without authority
ἄξίωμα -τος (n, 3) honor; decree
ἄχθομαι be burdened with
γέλοιος laughable; joking
ἐννοέω consider
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,
 chief ~hegemony
λίαν very
λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company

ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὅπου where
ὀργίζω anger, provoke, annoy
πέρας -τος (n, 3) cord; bound, crux,
 outcome ~prove
περάω cross over, drive across; sell as
 a slave ~pierce
στασιάζω revolt, be divided
στάσις -εως (f) placing; faction
συμποσίαρχος toastmaster
συνέρχομαι come together
σωτηρία saving, preservation
σωφρονίζω calm, chasten

Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ αὐτῶν ἡγεμόνας εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ὁμολόγησαν, εὐθὺς ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες καὶ οὐκέτι πέρα ἐπολιόρκησαν τὴν πόλιν. εἰ οὖν ταῦτα ὁρῶν ἐγὼ δοκοίην ὅπου δυναίμην ἐνταῦθ' ἄκυρον ποιεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων ἀξίωμα, ἐκεῖνο ἐννοῶ μὴ λίαν ἂν ταχὺ σωφρονισθείην. ὁ δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐννοεῖτε, ὅτι ἦττον ἂν στάσις εἴη ἐνὸς ἄρχοντος ἢ πολλῶν, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι ἄλλον μὲν ἐλόμενοι οὐχ εὐρήσετε ἐμὲ στασιάζοντα· νομίζω γὰρ ὅστις ἐν πολέμῳ ὢν στασιάζει πρὸς ἄρχοντα, τοῦτον πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σωτηρίαν στασιάζει· ἐὰν δὲ ἐμὲ ἔλθῃ, οὐκ ἂν θαυμάσαιμι εἴ τινα εὕροιτε καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἐμοὶ ἀχθόμενον.»

Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα εἶπε, πολὺ πλείονες ἀνίσταντο λέγοντες ὡς δέοι αὐτὸν ἄρχειν. Ἀγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν ὅτι γελοῖον εἴη, εἰ οὕτως ἔχοι· «ἢ ὀργιοῦνται Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐὰν σύνδειπνοι συνελθόντες μὴ Λακεδαιμόνιον συμποσίαρχον αἰρῶνται; ἐπεὶ εἰ οὕτω γε τοῦτο ἔχει,» ἔφη, «οὐδὲ λοχαγεῖν ἡμῖν ἔξεστιν, ὡς ἔοικεν, ὅτι Ἀρκάδες ἐσμέν.» ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὡς εὖ εἰπόντος τοῦ Ἀγασίου

Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ αὐτῶν |leader εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ
 τοῦτο |agree with/to , εὐθὺς ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες καὶ
 οὐκέτι πέρα ἐπολιόρκησαν τὴν πόλιν. εἰ οὖν ταῦτα
 ὁρῶν ἐγὼ δοκοίην |where δυναίμην |there, here ὕρον ποιεῖν
 τὸ ἐκείνων |honor; , ἐκεῖνο |consider ,μή |very ἂν ταχὺ
 |decree
 |calm, chasten . ὁ δὲ ὑμεῖς |consider , ὅτι ἦττον ἂν |placing;
 |faction
 εἷη ἐνὸς ἄρχοντος ἢ πολλῶν, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι ἄλλον μὲν
 ἐλόμενοι οὐχ εὐρήσετε ἐμὲ |revolt, be divided μῖζω γὰρ ὅστις
 ἐν πολέμῳ ὢν |revolt, be divided ἄρχοντα, τοῦτον πρὸς τὴν
 ἑαυτοῦ |saving, |revolt, be divided δὲ ἐμὲ ἔλησθε, οὐκ ἂν
 |preservation
 θανμάσαιμι εἴ τινα εὔροιτε καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἐμοὶ |be burdened with

 Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα εἶπε, πολὺ πλείονες ἀνίσταντο λέγοντες ὡς
 δέοι αὐτὸν ἄρχειν. Ἀγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν ὅτι
 |laughable; ἢ, εἰ οὕτως ἔχει· «ἢ |anger, pro- Λακεδαιμόνιοι
 |joking |voke, annoy
 καὶ ἐὰν σύνδειπνοι |come together μὴ Λακεδαιμόνιον
 |toastmaster αἱρῶνται; ἐπεὶ εἰ οὕτω γε τοῦτο ἔχει,»
 ἔφη, «οὐδὲ |lead a company ἕξεσιν, ὡς ἔοικεν, ὅτι Ἀρκάδες
 ἐσμέν.» |there, here ἢ ὡς εὖ εἰπόντος τοῦ Ἀγασίου

This confession once extorted from their antagonists, they ceased warring at once, and the siege of the city was at an end. If, with these facts before my eyes, I seem to be doing all I can to neutralise their high self-esteem, I cannot escape the reflection that personally I may be taught wisdom by a painful process. But with your own idea that under a single general there will be less factiousness than when there were many, be assured that in choosing some other than me you will not find me factious. I hold that whosoever sets up factious opposition to his leader factiously opposes his own safety. While if you determine to choose me, I should not be surprised were that choice to entail upon you and me the resentment of other people."

After those remarks on Xenophon's part, many more got up, one after another, insisting on the propriety of his undertaking the command. One of them, Agasias the Stymphalian, said: It was really ridiculous, if things had come to this pass that the Lacedaemonians are to fly into a rage because a number of friends have met together to dinner, and omitted to choose a Lacedaemonian to sit at the head of the table. «Really, if that is how matters stand," said he, «I do not see what right we have to be officers even, we who are only Arcadians." That sally brought down the plaudits of the

vocabulary

ἀναθορυβέω cheer, yell

ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

διαβάλλω throw across; slander

~ballistic

ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack

ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

θύω (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

ιδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman

μοναρχία monarchy

ὄμνυμι (ō) swear

ὀνίνημι help, please, be available

παρέρχομαι pass, escape

σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

σιγάζω (i) shush, silence

στασιάζω revolt, be divided

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συνεθέλω consent

ὕμέτερος (ō) yours

ὕφιστημι promise, undertake ~station

ἀνεθορύβησαν. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ ἑώρα πλείονος ἐνδέον,
παρελθὼν εἶπεν·

«Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες,» ἔφη, «ὥς πάνυ εἰδήτε, ὁμνύω ὑμῖν
θεοὺς πάντας καὶ πάσας, ἡ μὲν ἐγώ, ἐπεὶ τὴν ὑμετέραν
γνώμην ἡσθανόμην, ἐθυόμην εἰ βέλτιον εἴη ὑμῖν τε ἐμοὶ
ἐπιτρέψαι ταύτην τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ ὑποστῆναι· καὶ μοι
οἱ θεοὶ οὕτως ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς ἐσήμηναν ὥστε καὶ ἰδιώτην ἂν
γινῶναι ὅτι τῆς μοναρχίας ἀπέχεσθαί με δεῖ.»

Οὕτω δὲ Χειρίσοφον αἰροῦνται. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ
ἡρέθη, παρελθὼν εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτο μὲν
ἴστε, ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ἔγωγε ἐστασίαζον, εἰ ἄλλον εἴλεσθε·
Ξενοφῶντα μέντοι,» ἔφη, «ὠνήσατε οὐχ ἐλόμενοι· ὥς καὶ
νῦν Δέξιππος ἤδη διέβαλλεν αὐτὸν πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον ὃ τι
ἐδύνατο καὶ μάλα ἐμοῦ αὐτὸν σιγάζοντος. ὁ δ' ἔφη νομίζειν
αὐτὸν Τιμασίῳνι μᾶλλον ἄρχειν συνεθελῆσαι Δαρδανεῖ
ὄντι τοῦ Κλεάρχου στρατεύματος ἢ ἑαυτῷ Λάκωνι ὄντι.
ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐμὲ εἴλεσθε,» ἔφη, «καὶ ἐγὼ πειράσομαι ὃ τι
ἂν δύνωμαι ὑμᾶς ἀγαθὸν ποιεῖν. καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω

|cheer, yell . καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ ἑώρα πλείονος |tie to ,

|pass, escape εἶπεν·

«Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες,» ἔφη, «ὥς πάνυ εἰδῆτε, ὁμνύω ὑμῖν

θεοὺς πάντας καὶ πάσας, ἥ μὴν ἐγώ, ἐπεὶ τὴν |yours

γνώμην ἡσθανόμην, |rush; sacrifice, ἑλτίον εἴη ὑμῖν τε ἐμοὶ

|entrust, de- ταύτην τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ |promise, καί μοι
|cide, allow |undertake

οἱ θεοὶ οὕτως ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς |give orders τῷ; τε καὶ |private; a layman
|show; mark

γινῶναι ὅτι τῆς |monarchy |ward off, drive off, refrain,
|be at some distance

Οὕτω δὲ Χειρίσοφον αἰρούνται. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ

ἡρέθη, |pass, escape εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτο μὲν

ἴστε, ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ἔγωγε |revolt, be divided ἄλλον εἴλεσθε·

Ξενοφῶντα μέντοι,» ἔφη, «|help, please, χ ἐλόμενοι· ὥς καὶ
|be available

νῦν Δέξιππος ἤδη |throw across; ὑτὸν πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον ὅ τι
|slander

ἐδύνατο καὶ μάλα ἐμοῦ αὐτὸν |shush,
|silence . ὁ δ' ἔφη νομίζειν

αὐτὸν Τιμασίῳ μᾶλλον ἄρχειν |consent Δαρδανεῖ

ὄντι τοῦ Κλεάρχου |army ἢ ἑαυτῷ Λάκωνι ὄντι.

ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐμὲ εἴλεσθε,» ἔφη, «καὶ ἐγὼ πειράσομαι ὅ τι

ἂν δύνωμαι ὑμᾶς ἀγαθὸν ποιεῖν. καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω

assembly; and Xenophon, seeing that something more was needed, stepped forward again and spoke, «Pardon, sirs,” he said, «let me make a clean breast of it. I swear to you by all the gods and goddesses; verily and indeed, I no sooner perceived your purpose, than I consulted the victims, whether it was better for you to entrust this leadership to me, and for me to undertake it, or the reverse. And the gods vouchsafed a sign to me so plain that even a common man might understand it, and perceive that from such sovereignty I must needs hold myself aloof.”

Under these circumstances they chose Cheirisophus, who, after his election, stepped forward and said: «Nay, sirs, be well assured of this, that had you chosen some one else, I for my part should not have set up factious opposition. As to Xenophon, I believe you have done him a good turn by not appointing him; for even now Dexippus has gone some way in traducing him to Anaxibius, as far as it lay in his power to do so, and that, in spite of my attempts to silence him. What he said was that he believed Xenophon would rather share the command of Clearchus’s army with Timasion, a Dardanian, than with himself, a Laconian. But,” continued Cheirisophus, «since your choice has fallen upon me, I will make it my endeavour to do you all the good in my power; so make your

*vocabulary***ἄκτῃ** beach; cereal grain**ἄλφιτον** barley meal**ἄποικος** abroad, colonizing**αὔριον** tomorrow**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height**δείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-**ἐκεῖσε** thither**Ἑλλῆν** Greek**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐπειδάν** when, after**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle;

observe, contemplate

κατάβασις -εως (f) way down**κεράμιον** jar**μέδιμνος** bushel**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe**ὀρμίζω** anchor, beach**παραπλέω** sail past ~float**σημεῖον** sign**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;
(pl noun) 200 meters**τρισχίλιοι** 3000 ~kilo-**ὕστεραίῳς** the next; later

παρασκευάζεσθε ὡς αὖριον, εἰς πλοῦς ἦ, ἀναζόμενοι· ὁ δὲ πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἅπαντας οὖν δεῖ ἐκείσε πειρᾶσθαι κατασχεῖν· τὰ δ' ἄλλα, ἐπειδὴν ἐκείσε ἔλθωμεν, βουλευσόμεθα.»

6.2

Ἐντεῦθεν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναζόμενοι πνεύματι ἔπλεον καλῶ ἡμέρας δύο παρὰ γῆν. καὶ παραπλέοντες ἐθεώρουν τήν τε Ἰασονίαν ἀκτὴν, ἔνθα ἡ Ἀργὼ λέγεται ὀρμίσασθαι, καὶ τῶν ποταμῶν τὰ στόματα, πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμώδοντος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἰριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἄλυσος, μετὰ τοῦτον τοῦ Παρθενίου· τοῦτον δὲ παραπλεύσαντες ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα Μεγαρέων ἀποικον, οὖσαν δ' ἐν τῇ Μαριανδυνῶν χώρᾳ. καὶ ὠρμίσαντο παρὰ τῇ Ἀχερουσιάδι Χερρονήσῳ, ἔνθα λέγεται ὁ Ἡρακλῆς ἐπὶ τὸν Κέρβερον κύνα καταβῆναι ἥ νῦν τὰ σημεῖα δεικνύασι τῆς καταβάσεως τὸ βάθος πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ δύο στάδια. ἐνταῦθα τοῖς Ἑλλησιν οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ξένια πέμπουσιν ἀλφίτων μεδίμνους τρισχιλίους καὶ οἶνου κεράμια δισχίλια καὶ βοῦς

παρασκευάζεσθε ὡς |tomorrow ἂν πλοῦς ᾗ, ἀναξόμενοι· ὁ
 δὲ πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἅπαντας οὖν δεῖ |thither
 πειρᾶσθαι κατασχεῖν· τὰ δ' ἄλλα, |when, |thither ἔλθωμεν,
 |after
 βουλευσόμεθα.»

6.2

|thence τῇ |the next; later γόμενοι πνεύματι ἔπλεον καλῶ
 ἡμέρας δύο παρὰ γῆν. καὶ |sail past |be sent to consult an oracle;
 |observe, contemplate
 τε Ἰασονίαν |beach; , ἔνθα ἡ Ἀργὼ λέγεται |anchor, beach, καὶ
 |grain
 τῶν ποταμῶν τὰ στόματα, πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμώδοντος,
 ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἰριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἄλυσ, μετὰ τοῦτον
 τοῦ Παρθενίου· τοῦτον δὲ |sail past ἀφίκοντο εἰς
 Ἡράκλειαν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα Μεγαρέων |abroad, , οὖσαν
 |colonizing
 δ' ἐν τῇ Μαριανδυνῶν χώρᾳ. καὶ |anchor, |parà τῇ
 |beach
 Ἀχερουσιάδι Χερρονήσῳ, ἔνθα λέγεται ὁ Ἡρακλῆς ἐπὶ τὸν
 Κέρβερον κύνα καταβῆναι ἥ νῦν τὰ |sign |show τῆς
 |way down τὸ |depth, πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ δύο στάδια. |there, here
 |height
 τοῖς |Greek οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται |of hospitality υσιν |barley meal
 |bushel |3000 καὶ οἶνου |jar |2000 καὶ βοῦς

preparations to weigh anchor to-morrow; wind and weather permitting, we will voyage to Heraclea; every one must endeavour, therefore, to put in at that port; and for the rest we will consult, when we are come thither.”

6.2

The next day they weighed anchor and set sail from Harmene with a fair breeze, two days' voyage along the coast. (As they coasted along they came in sight of Jason's beach, where, as the story says, the ship Argo came to moorings; and then the mouths of the rivers, first the Thermodon, then the Iris, then the Halys, and next to it the Parthenius.) Coasting past (the latter), they reached Heraclea, a Hellenic city and a colony of the Megarians, situated in the territory of the Mariandynians. So they came to anchorage off the Acherusian Chersonese, where Heracles is said to have descended to bring up the dog Cerberus, at a point where they still show the marks of his descent, a deep cleft more than two furlongs down. Here the Heracleots sent the Hellenes, as gifts of hospitality, three thousand measures of barley and two thousand jars of wine, twenty beeves and one

vocabulary

αἰτέω ask for ~etiology
 ἄμφω both ~amphora
 ἀναγκάζω force, compel
 ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
 ἀπομάχομαι fight off
 ἐκπορίζω provide; invent
 ἐνταῦθα there, here
 ἐντεῦθεν thence
 ἐπισιτίζομαι (ἰλ.) take supplies
 εὐρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east
 wind
 ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent
 κυζικηνός unit of currency
 μυρίος (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad
 ξένιος of hospitality ~xenophobe
 οἷς sheep ~ewe

ὀπόθεν whence
 πλέθρον 30 meters or its square
 ~plethora
 πορεία gait, march
 πότερος which, whichever of two
 προβάλλω throw before; propose;
 (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate
 ~ballistic
 ῥέω flow ~rheostat
 σιτηρέσιον (ἰλ.) stipend
 σιτίον (ἰλ.) grain, bread, food ~parasite
 στρατιά army ~strategy
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
 συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
 τρισχίλιοι 3000 ~kilo-
 φιλία friendship ~philanthropy
 φίλιος friendly

εἴκοσι καὶ οἷς ἑκατόν. ἐνταῦθα διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ρεῖ ποταμὸς
Λύκος ὄνομα, εὖρος ὥς δύο πλέθρων.

Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλλεγέστες ἐβουλευόντο τὴν λοιπὴν
πορείαν πότερον κατὰ γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν χρὴ
πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου. ἀναστὰς δὲ Λύκων Ἀχαιὸς
εἶπε· «Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τῶν στρατηγῶν ὅτι
οὐ πειρῶνται ἡμῖν ἐκπορίζειν σιτηρέσιον· τὸ μὲν γὰρ
ξένια οὐ μὴ γένηται τῇ στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμερῶν σιτία·
ὁπόθεν δ' ἐπισιτισάμενοι πορευσόμεθα οὐκ ἔστιν,» ἔφη.
«ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ αἰτεῖν τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ ἔλαττον
ἢ τρισχιλίους κυζικηνοὺς·» ἄλλος δ' εἶπε μὴ ἔλαττον
ἢ μυρίους· καὶ ἐλομένους πρέσβεις αὐτίκα μάλα ἡμῶν
καθημένων πέμπειν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ εἰδέναι ὅ τι ἂν
ἀπαγγέλλωσι, καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι. ἐντεῦθεν
προυβάλλοντο πρέσβεις πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφον, ὅτι
ἄρχων ἦρητο· ἔστι δ' οἱ καὶ Ξενοφῶντα.

Οἱ δὲ ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεμάχοντο· ἀμφοῖν γὰρ ταῦτα ἐδόκει μὴ
ἀναγκάζειν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα καὶ φιλίαν ὅ τι μὴ αὐτοὶ

εἴκοσι καὶ |sheep| τὸν. |there, here| ἀ τοῦ πεδίου ρεῖ ποταμὸς

Λύκος ὄνομα, |width; --(caps)|30 me-
|the east wind| ters or its
|square

Οἱ δὲ |soldier, |collect, ἐβουλεύοντο τὴν λοιπὴν
|mercenary |assemble

|gait, |which, κατὰ γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν χρὴ
|march |whichever

πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου. ἀναστὰς δὲ Λύκων Ἀχαιοὺς

εἶπε· «Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τῶν στρατηγῶν ὅτι

οὐ πειρῶνται ἡμῖν |provide; |stipend τὸ μὲν γὰρ
|invent

|of hospitality, γένηται τῇ |army τριῶν ἡμερῶν |grain,
|bread,
|whence δ' |take supplies πορευσόμεθα οὐκ ἔστιν,» εἶπε.

«ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ |ask for τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ ἔλαττον

ἢ |3000 |unit of currency ἄλλος δ' εἶπε μὴ ἔλαττον

ἢ μυρίους· καὶ ἐλομένους πρέσβεις αὐτίκα μάλα ἡμῶν

καθημένων πέμπειν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ εἰδέναι ὅ τι ἂν

|announce, or-, καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλεύεσθαι. |thence
|der, promise

|throw before; propose;-(mp) πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφον, ὅτι
|pretend, abandon, nominate

ἄρχων ἦρρητο· ἔστι δ' οἱ καὶ Ξενοφῶντα.

Οἱ δὲ ἰσχυρῶς |fight off |both γὰρ ταῦτα ἐδόκει μὴ

|force, compel πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα καὶ φιλίαν ὅ τι μὴ αὐτοῖ

hundred sheep. Through the flat country here flows the Lycus river, as it is called, about two hundred feet in breadth.

The soldiers held a meeting, and took counsel about the remainder of the journey: should they make their exit from the Pontus by sea or by land? and Lycon the Achaean got up and said: «I am astonished, sirs, that the generals do not endeavour to provide us more efficiently with provisions. These gifts of hospitality will not afford three days' victuals for the army; nor do I see from what region we are to provide ourselves as we march. My proposal, therefore, is to demand of the Heracleots at least three thousand cyzicenes.” Another speaker suggested, «not less than ten thousand. Let us at once, before we break up this meeting, send ambassadors to the city and ascertain their answer to the demand and take counsel accordingly.” Thereupon they proceeded to put up as ambassadors, first and foremost Cheirisophus, as he had been chosen general in chief; others also named Xenophon.

But both Cheirisophus and Xenophon stoutly declined, maintaining both alike that they could not compel a Hellenic city, actually friendly, to give anything which they did not spontaneously offer. So, since

vocabulary

ἄγρᾱ hunting, prey

ἄγρέω come!

ἄγρός field, wild ~agriculture

αἰσχρός shameful

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology

ἀνασκευάζω pack up

ἀπρόθυμος (ὄ) not eager

ἐπαπειλέω threaten

κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;
kill

κέρδος -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning

κλείω tell of; close

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
~hoplite

πόνος toil, suffering ~osteopenia

πράξις -εως (f) result, business
~practice

προίστημι put forward; (+gen) be
head of, guard ~station

πύλη gate ~Thermopylae

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιά army ~strategy

συνάγω assemble; join in battle
~demagogue

συνίστημι unite; confront in battle
~station

σωτηρία saving, preservation

ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea

ἐθέλοντες διδοῖεν. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐδόκουν ἀπρόθυμοι εἶναι, πέμπουσι Λύκωνα Ἀχαιὸν καὶ Καλλίμαχον Παρράσιον καὶ Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. οὗτοι ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον τὰ δεδογμένα· τὸν δὲ Λύκωνα ἔφασαν καὶ ἐπαπειλεῖν, εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν ταῦτα. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται βουλευέσθαι ἔφασαν· καὶ εὐθὺς τὰ τε χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν συνήγουν καὶ τὴν ἀγορὰν εἴσω ἀνεσκεύασαν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν ὄπλα ἐφαίνετο.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ ταραξάντες ταῦτα τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἡτιῶντο διαφθεῖρειν τὴν πρᾶξιν· καὶ συνίσταντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοί· προειστήκει δὲ μάλιστα αὐτῶν Καλλίμαχος τε ὁ Παρράσιος καὶ Λύκων ὁ Ἀχαιός. οἱ δὲ λόγοι ἦσαν αὐτοῖς ὡς αἰσχυρὸν εἶη ἄρχειν Ἀθηναῖον Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιον, μηδεμίαν δύναμιν παρεχόμενον εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ τοὺς μὲν πόρους σφᾶς ἔχειν, τὰ δὲ κέρδη ἄλλους, καὶ ταῦτα τὴν σωτηρίαν σφῶν κατειργασμένων· εἶναι γὰρ τοὺς κατειργασμένους Ἀρκάδας καὶ Ἀχαιούς, τὸ δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲν εἶναι καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ

ἐθέλοντες διδοῖεν. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐδόκουν |not eager εἶναι,
πέμπουσι Λύκωνα Ἀχαιὸν καὶ Καλλίμαχον Παρράσιον
καὶ Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. οὗτοι ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον τὰ
δεδογμένα· τὸν δὲ Λύκωνα ἔφασαν καὶ |threaten , εἰ
μὴ ποιήσοιεν ταῦτα. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται
βουλεύεσθαι ἔφασαν· καὶ εὐθὺς τά τε χρήματα ἐκ τῶν
ἀγρῶν |join καὶ τὴν ἀγορὰν εἴσω |pack up , καὶ αἱ
|gate |tell of; close καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν |tool ἐφαίνετο.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ |mess things up ταῦτα τοὺς στρατηγούς |blame
διαφθείρειν τὴν |result, καὶ |unite; confront Ἄρκάδες καὶ
|business |in battle
οἱ Ἀχαιοί· προειστήκει δὲ μάλιστα αὐτῶν Καλλίμαχος
τε ὁ Παρράσιος καὶ Λύκων ὁ Ἀχαιός. οἱ δὲ λόγοι ἦσαν
αὐτοῖς ὥς |shameful εἶη ἄρχειν Ἀθηναίων Πελοποννησίων
καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιον, μηδεμίαν δύναμιν παρεχόμενον εἰς τὴν
|army , καὶ τοὺς μὲν |toil, suffering ἔχειν, τὰ δὲ |advantage,
|cunning
ἄλλους, καὶ ταῦτα τὴν |saving, preservation|achieve; cultivate;
|get; kill
εἶναι γὰρ τοὺς |achieve; cultivate; Ἀρκάδας καὶ Ἀχαιούς, τὸ
|get; kill
δ' ἄλλο |army οὐδὲν εἶναι καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ |truth

these two appeared to be backward, the soldiers sent Lycon the Achaean, Callimachus the Parrhasian, and Agasias the Stymphalian. These three went and announced the resolutions passed by the army. Lycon, it was said, even went so far as to threaten certain consequences in case they refused to comply. The Heracleots said they would deliberate; and, without more ado, they got together their goods and chattels from their farms and fields outside, and dismantled the market outside and transferred it within, after which the gates were closed, and arms appeared at the battlements of the walls.

At that check, the authors of these tumultuary measures fell to accusing the generals, as if they had marred the proceeding; and the Arcadians and Archaeans banded together, chiefly under the auspices of the two ringleaders, Callimachus the Parrhasian and Lycon the Achaean. The language they held was to this effect: It was outrageous that a single Athenian and a Lacedaemonian, who had not contributed a soldier to the expedition, should rule Peloponnesians; scandalous that they themselves should bear the toils whilst others pocketed the spoils, and that too though the preservation of the army was due to themselves; for, as every one must admit, to the Arcadians and Achaeans the credit of that achievement was due, and the rest of the army went for nothing (which was indeed so far true that the Arcadians and Achaeans did form numerically the

vocabulary

ἀθυμέω (ῥ) be disheartened
ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse
ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail
ἀρμοστής -οῦ (m, 1) governor
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
ἑβδομος seventh
ἐκπλέω sail away ~float
ἕκτος sixth ~hexagon
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἥμισυς half ~hemisphere
καταλύω unyoke; destroy ~loose
κοινός communal, ordinary
λιμήν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge

~limnic

μετέχω partake of
πορεία gait, march
στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult
 ~volunteer
συνίστημι unite; confront in battle
 ~station
σωφρονέω be sane, moderate
τριήρης trireme ~row
ψηφίζω count, vote

ὑπὲρ ἡμῖσιν τοῦ στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ Ἀχαιοί·
 εἰ οὖν σωφρονοῖεν, αὐτοὶ συστάντες καὶ στρατηγοὺς
 ἐλόμενοι ἑαυτῶν καθ' ἑαυτοὺς ἂν τὴν πορείαν ποιοῖντο
 καὶ πειρῶντο ἀγαθὸν τι λαμβάνειν. ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ
 ἀπολιπόντες Χειρίσοφον εἴ τινας ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῷ Ἀρκάδες
 ἢ Ἀχαιοὶ καὶ Ξενοφῶντα συνέστησαν καὶ στρατηγοὺς
 αἱρῶνται ἑαυτῶν δέκα· τούτους δὲ ἐψηφίσαντο ἐκ τῆς
 νικώσης ὅ τι δοκοίη τοῦτο ποιεῖν. ἡ μὲν οὖν τοῦ παντὸς
 ἀρχὴ Χειρισόφῳ ἐνταῦθα κατελύθη ἡμέρα ἕκτη ἢ ἐβδόμη
 ἀφ' ἧς ἦρέθη.

Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν
 ποιέισθαι, νομίζων οὕτως ἀσφαλεστέραν εἶναι ἢ ἰδίᾳ
 ἕκαστον στέλλεσθαι· ἀλλὰ Νέων ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν καθ' αὐτὸν
 πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐν
 Βυζαντίῳ ἀρμοστής φαίη τριήρεις ἔχων ἥξειν εἰς Κάλπης
 λιμένα· ὅπως οὖν μηδεὶς μετάσχοι, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ
 αὐτῶν στρατιῶται ἐκπλεύσειαν ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων, διὰ
 ταῦτα συνεβούλευε. καὶ Χειρίσοφος, ἅμα μὲν ἀθυμῶν

ὑπὲρ |half τοῦ |army Ἀρκάδες καὶ Ἀχαιοί·
 εἰ οὖν |be sane, moderate ᾿τοὶ |unite; confront :αὶ στρατηγοὺς
 |in battle
 ἐλόμενοι ἑαυτῶν καθ' ἑαυτοὺς ἂν τὴν |gait, ποιοῖντο
 |march
 καὶ πειρῶντο ἀγαθόν τι λαμβάνειν. ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ
 ἀπολιπόντες Χειρίσοφον εἴ τινες ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῷ Ἀρκάδες
 ἢ Ἀχαιοὶ καὶ Ξενοφῶντα |unite; confront :αὶ στρατηγοὺς
 |in battle
 αἰροῦνται ἑαυτῶν δέκα· τούτους δὲ |count, vote ἕκ τῆς
 νικώσης ὅ τι δοκοίη τοῦτο ποιεῖν. ἡ μὲν οὖν τοῦ παντός
 ἀρχὴ Χειρισόφῳ |there, |unyoke; ἡμέρα ἕκτη ἢ |seventh
 |here |destroy
 ἀφ' ἧς ἠρέθη.

Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν τὴν |gait,
 |march
 ποιῆσθαι, νομίζων οὕτως |safe, easy, steady, εἶναι ἢ ἰδίᾳ
 |careful
 ἕκαστον |prepare, send, furl ἃ Νέων ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν καθ' αὐτὸν
 πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐν
 Βυζαντίῳ |governor φαίη |trireme ἔχων ἤξειν εἰς Κάλπησ
 |harbor, ὅπως οὖν μηδεὶς |partake of , ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ
 |refuge
 αὐτῶν |soldier, |sail away ἐπὶ τῶν |trireme , διὰ
 |mercenary
 ταῦτα |give advice; καὶ Χειρίσοφος, ἅμα μὲν ἀθυμῶν
 |(mid) consult

larger half of the whole army). What then did common sense suggest? Why, that they, the Arcadians and Achaeans, should make common cause, choose generals for themselves independently, continue the march, and try somewhat to better their condition. This proposal was carried. All the Arcadians and Achaeans who chanced to be with Cheirisophus left him and Xenophon, setting up for themselves and choosing ten generals of their own. These ten, it was decreed, were to put into effect such measures as approved themselves to the majority. Thus the absolute authority vested in Cheirisophus was terminated there and then, within less than a week of his appointment.

Xenophon, however was minded to prosecute the journey in their company, thinking that this would be a safer plan than for each to start on his own account. But Neon threw in his weight in favour of separate action. «Every one for himself,” he said, for he had heard from Cheirisophus that Cleander, the Spartan governor-general at Byzantium, talked of coming to Calpe Haven with some war vessels. Neon’s advice was due to his desire to secure a passage home in these war vessels for themselves and their soldiers, without allowing any one else to share

vocabulary

ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
ἀπαλλάξειω wish to get rid of
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out
 ~basis
διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
 ~practice
ἐκπλέω sail away ~float
ἐξαίφνης suddenly
ἐπιπίπτω fall upon, attack
ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow
 ~trophy
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἐπταχόσιοι 700
ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony
θρίξ hair ~tresses
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
κοινός make common; cooperate
λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge
 ~limnic
λῶϊον more desirable

μισέω (ι) hate, wish to prevent
 ~misogyny
μῖσος -εος (n, 3) hate
ὀπλίτης -ου (ι, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite
παραμένω stay with ~remain
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
πότερος which, whichever of two
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατεύω make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
συστρατεύω join in an expedition
τεσσαράκοντα forty ~trapezoid
τετρακισχίλιοι 4000 ~kilo-
τετρακόσιοι 400
τετταράκοντα forty
τριακόσιοι three hundred ~three
τρίχα divided into thirds ~three
χίλιοι (ι) thousand ~kilo-

τοῖς γεγενημένοις, ἅμα δὲ μισῶν ἐκ τούτου τὸ στράτευμα, ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν ὅ τι βούλεται. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔτι μὲν ἐπεχείρησεν ἀπαλλαγεῖς τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκπλεῦσαι· θυομένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ τῷ ἡγεμόνι Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ κοινουμένῳ, πότερα λῶον καὶ ἄμεινον εἴη στρατεῦεσθαι ἔχοντι τοὺς παραμείναντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ἐσήμηνεν ὁ θεὸς τοῖς ἱεροῖς συστρατεῦεσθαι.

Οὕτω γίγνεται τὸ στράτευμα τρίχα, Ἀρκάδες μὲν καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ πλείους ἢ τετρακισχίλιοι, ὀπλῖται πάντες, Χειρισόφῳ δ' ὀπλῖται μὲν εἰς τετρακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, πελτασταὶ δὲ εἰς ἑπτακοσίους, οἱ Κλεάρχου Θρᾷκες, Ξενοφῶντι δὲ ὀπλῖται μὲν εἰς ἑπτακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, πελτασταὶ δὲ εἰς τριακοσίους· ἵππικὸν δὲ μόνος οὗτος εἶχεν, ἀμφὶ τετταράκοντα ἱππέας.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες διαπραξάμενοι πλοῖα παρὰ τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν πρῶτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπεσόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς λάβοιεν ὅτι πλείστα· καὶ ἀποβαίνουσιν εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα κατὰ μέσον πῶς τῆς

τοῖς γεγενημένοις, ἅμα δὲ μισῶν ἐκ τούτου τὸ |army

|entrust, de- αὐτῷ ποιεῖν ὅ τι βούλεται. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔτι
cide, allow

μὲν |do, try, attack ἀπαλλαγεὶς τῆς στρατιᾶς |sail away

|rush; sacrifice ὑπὸ τῷ ἡγεμόνι Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ |make common;
cooperate

|which, |more desirable|better εἴη |make an expedition, |ντι
|whichever war, campaign

τοὺς |stay with τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἣ |free from, remove;
|be freed, depart

|give orders to; ἐδὲ τοῖς ἱεροῖς |join in an expedi-
|show; mark tion

Οὕτω γίγνεται τὸ |army τρίχα, Ἀρκάδες μὲν

καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ πλείους ἢ |4000 |hoplite, heavy |τες,
|infantryman

Χειρισόφω δ' |hoplite, heavy |in-|400 καὶ χιλίους,
|fantryman

|light troops δὲ εἰς |700 , οἱ Κλεάρχου Θρᾶκες,

Ξενοφῶντι δὲ |hoplite, heavy |in-|700 καὶ χιλίους,
|fantryman

|light troops δὲ εἰς |three hundred |of horses δὲ μόνος οὗτος

εἶχεν, ἀμφὶ τετταράκοντα ἱππέας.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες |travel over, ac- πλοῖα παρὰ
|comply

τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν πρῶτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως |suddenly

|fall upon, attack οἷς Βιθυνοῖς λάβοιεν ὅτι πλείστα· καὶ

ἀποβαίνουσιν εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα κατὰ μέσον πῶς τῆς

in their good-fortune. As for Cheirisophus, he was at once so out of heart at the turn things had taken, and soured with the whole army, that he left it to his subordinate, Neon, to do just what he liked. Xenophon, on his side, would still have been glad to be quit of the expedition and sail home; but on offering sacrifice to Heracles the Leader, and seeking advice, whether it were better and more desirable to continue the march in charge of the soldiers who had remained faithful, or to take his departure, the god indicated to him by the victims that he should adopt the former course.

In this way the army was now split up into three divisions. First, the Arcadians and Achaeans, over four thousand five hundred men, all heavy infantry. Secondly, Cheirisophus and his men, viz. one thousand four hundred heavy infantry and the seven hundred peltasts, or Clearchus's Thracians. Thirdly, Xenophon's division of one thousand seven hundred heavy infantry, and three hundred peltasts; but then he alone had the cavalry — about forty troopers.

The Arcadians, who had bargained with the Heracleots and got some vessels from them, were the first to set sail; they hoped, by pouncing suddenly on the Bithynians, to make as large a haul as possible. With that object they disembarked at Calpe Haven, pretty nearly at the middle

vocabulary

ἄθροίζω press close together; (mid)
muster
ἀλίζω gather, assemble
ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
ἀποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out
~basis
ἀσθενέω be weak, sick
ἄτε as if; since
ἄω aor: to sate ~sate
διαφεύγω escape, survive
ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental
state ~ballistic
ἐξαίφνης suddenly
ἐπιπίπτω fall upon, attack
κώμη village
λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge
~limnic
λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop
λόχος ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

μεσόγεια inland
ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy
infantryman ~hoplite
ὅποιος whatever kind
ὄριον boundary
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
~pelt
περιβάλλω act: excel; mid: put on
clothing ~ballistic
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
(pl noun) 200 meters
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
meet, fall in with ~ballistic
σύνδυο in pairs
φάος φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl)
eyes ~photon

Θράκης. Χειρίσοφος δ' εὐθύς ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν ἀρξάμενος πεζῇ ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς χώρας· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Θράκην ἐνέβαλε, παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν ἦει· καὶ γὰρ ἡσθένει. Ξενοφῶν δὲ πλοῖα λαβὼν ἀποβαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρια τῆς Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος καὶ διὰ μεσογείας ἐπορεύετο.

6.3

Ἐπραξαν δ' αὐτῶν ἕκαστοι τάδε. οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες ὡς ἀπέβησαν νυκτὸς εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς πρώτας κώμας, στάδια ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὡς τριάκοντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ φῶς ἐγένετο, ἦγεν ἕκαστος ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸν αὐτοῦ λόχον ἐπὶ κώμην· ὅποια δὲ μείζων ἐδόκει εἶναι, σύνδυο λόχους ἦγον οἱ στρατηγοί. συνεβάλλοντο δὲ καὶ λόφον εἰς ᾧν δέοι πάντας ἀλίζεσθαι· καὶ ἅτε ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπεσόντες ἀνδράποδά τε πολλὰ ἔλαβον καὶ πρόβατα πολλὰ περιεβάλλοντο. οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες ἡθροίζοντο οἱ διαφεύγοντες· πολλοὶ δὲ διέφευγον πελτασταὶ ὄντες ὀπλίτας ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν χειρῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνελέγησαν, πρῶτον μὲν τῷ

Θράκης. Χειρίσοφος δ' εὐθὺς ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως τῶν
 Ἡρακλεωτῶν ἀρξάμενος πεζῇ ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς χώρας·
 ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Θράκην |throw in; inspire τὴν θάλατταν ἦει·
 καὶ γὰρ |be weak, sick νοφῶν δὲ πλοῖα λαβὼν |leave, get off;
 |turn out ἐπὶ τὰ |boundary Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος καὶ διὰ
 |inland ἐπορεύετο.

6.3

Ἐπραξαν δ' αὐτῶν ἕκαστοι τάδε. οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες ὡς
 |leave, get off; |υκτὸς εἰς Κάλπης |harbor, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς
 |turn out |refuge
 πρώτας |village , στάδια ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὡς τριάκοντα.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ φῶς ἐγένετο, ἦγεν ἕκαστος ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸν
 αὐτοῦ |ambush, |village |whatever kind ὧν ἐδόκει εἶναι,
 |band, child-
 |in pairs |ambush, |band, οἱ στρατηγοί. |pit against; compare; |
 |childbirth |mp: meet, fall in with
 |neck, crest on a |δέοι πάντας |gather, καὶ ἄτε |suddenly
 |helmet, hilltop |assemble
 |fall upon, attack |slave τε πολλὰ ἔλαβον καὶ |cattle, flocks,
 |herds
 πολλὰ |excel; don οἱ δὲ Θράκες |press close together;
 |(mid) muster
 |escape, survive πολλοὶ δὲ |escape, |light troops ὄντες
 |survive
 |hoplite, heavy |υπὸ τῶν τῶν χειρῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ |collect,
 |infantryman |assemble
 πρῶτον μὲν τῷ

point in Thrace. Cheirisophus setting off straight from Heraclea, commenced a land march through the country; but having entered into Thrace, he preferred to cling to the seaboard, health and strength failing him. Xenophon, lastly, took vessels, and disembarking on the confines of Thrace and the Heracleotid, pushed forward through the heart of the country.

6.3

The Arcadians, disembarking under cover of night at Calpe Haven, marched against the nearest villages about thirty furlongs from the sea; and as soon as it was light, each of the ten generals led his company to attack one village, or if the village were large, a couple of companies advanced under their combined generals. They further agreed upon a certain knoll, where they were all eventually to assemble. So sudden was their attack that they seized a number of captives and enclosed a multitude of small cattle. But the Thracians who escaped began to collect again; for being light-armed troops they had slipped in large numbers through the hands of the heavy infantry; and now that they were

vocabulary

ἀκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute
ἀκοντιστής -οῦ (m, 1) spearman
 ~acute
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀποφεύγω avoid, escape, go free
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
διάβασις -εως (f) crossing, passage
 ~basis
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion
ἐρρωμένος vigorous, powerful
εὐτυχέω be lucky, prosper, succeed
εὐτύχημα -τος (n, 3) lucky happening
κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop
λόχος ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

ὀκτώ eight ~octopus
ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy
 infantryman ~hoplite
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
προσβάλλω hit, attack, approach;
 attach, offer ~ballistic
προσελαύνω go to, approach ~elastic
προσθέω run to
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up
 station ~strategy
σύγκειμαι be composed of, agreed on
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συμβοάω shout with
συνέρχομαι come together
συρρέω flow together
τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic
χαράδρα torrent, gorge

Σμίκρητος λόχῳ ἐνὸς τῶν Ἀρκάδων στρατηγῶν ἀπιόντι ἤδη εἰς τὸ συγκείμενον καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἄγοντι ἐπιτίθενται. καὶ τέως μὲν ἐμάχοντο ἅμα πορευόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπὶ δὲ διαβάσει χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ αὐτόν τε τὸν Σμίκρητα ἀποκτινύασι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας· ἄλλου δὲ λόχου τῶν δέκα στρατηγῶν τοῦ Ἥγησάνδρου ὀκτὼ μόνους ἔλιπον· καὶ αὐτὸς Ἥγησανδρος ἐσώθη. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ λόχοι συνῆλθον οἱ μὲν σὺν πράγμασιν οἱ δὲ ἄνευ πραγμάτων·

Οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες ἐπεὶ ἠτύχησαν τοῦτο τὸ εὐτύχημα, συνεβόων τε ἀλλήλους καὶ συνελέγοντο ἐρρωμένως τῆς νυκτός. καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρᾳ κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐτάττοντο καὶ ἱππεῖς πολλοὶ καὶ πελτασταί, καὶ αἰὲ πλείονες συνέρρεον· καὶ προσέβαλλον πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἀσφαλῶς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Ἕλληνες οὔτε τοξότην εἶχον οὔτε ἀκοντιστὴν οὔτε ἱππέα· οἱ δὲ προσθέοντες καὶ προσελαύνοντες ἠκόντιζον· ὅποτε δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐπίοιεν, ῥαδίως ἀπέφευγον· ἄλλοι δὲ ἄλλῃ

Σμίκρητος |ambush, band, |in Ἀρκάδων στρατηγῶν ἀπιόντι
 |childbirth
 ἤδη εἰς τὸ |be composed καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἄγοντι
 |of, agreed on
 ἐπιτίθενται. καὶ τέως μὲν ἐμάχοντο ἅμα πορευόμενοι οἱ
 |Greek , ἐπὶ δὲ |crossing, χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτούς,
 |passage
 καὶ αὐτόν τε τὸν Σμίκρητα ἀποκτινύασι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
 πάντας· ἄλλου δὲ |ambush, band, δέκα στρατηγῶν τοῦ
 |childbirth
 Ἠγησάνδρου |eight μόνους ἔλιπον· καὶ αὐτὸς Ἠγήσανδρος
 ἐσώθη. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ |am- |come together· μὲν σὺν
 |bush,
 πράγμασιν οἱ δὲ |away from; not hav-
 |band,
 |ing; not needing |child-
 |birth
 Οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες ἐπεὶ |be lucky, pros- οὗτο τὸ |lucky happening
 |per, succeed
 συνεβόων τε ἀλλήλους καὶ |collect, |vigorous, τῆς
 |assemble |powerful
 νυκτός. καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρα |circle, περὶ τὸν |neck, crest on a helmet,
 |wheel |hilltop
 οἱ |Greek |encamp or take up ἐτάττοντο καὶ ἱππεῖς
 |station
 πολλοὶ καὶ |light troops , καὶ ἀεὶ πλέονες |flow together καὶ
 |hit, attack, approach; τοὺς |hoplite, heavy, ἀλῶς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ
 |attach, offer |infantryman
 |Greek οὔτε |archer εἶχον οὔτε |spearman οὔτε ἱππέα·
 οἱ δὲ |run to καὶ |go to, approach |throw, (+gen) ἅτ' ἔτε
 δὲ αὐτοῖς |lie upon; approach |avoid, escape, ἄλλοι δὲ ἄλλῃ
 |go free

got together they first attacked the company of the Arcadian general, Smicres, who had done his work and was retiring to the appointed meeting-place, driving along a large train of captives and cattle. For a good while the Hellenes maintained a running fight; but at the passage of a gorge the enemy routed them, slaying Smicres himself and those with him to a man. The fate of another company under command of Hegesander, another of the ten, was nearly as bad; only eight men escaped, Hegesander being one of them. The remaining captains eventually met, some with somewhat to show for their pains, others empty-handed.

The Thracians, having achieved this success, kept up a continual shouting and clatter of conversation to one another during the night; but with day-dawn they marshalled themselves right round the knoll on which the Hellenes were encamped—both cavalry in large numbers and light-armed troops—while every minute the stream of new-comers grew greater. Then they commenced an attack on the heavy infantry in all security, for the Hellenes had not a single bowman, javelin-man, or mounted trooper amongst them; while the enemy rushed forward on foot or galloped up on horseback and let fly their javelins. It was vain to attempt to retaliate, so lightly did they spring back and escape; and ever the attack renewed itself from every point, so that

vocabulary

αἰτέω ask for ~etiology
ἀπορία difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἔργω bound, fend off; do ~ergonomics
ἑρωτάω ask about something
ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony
ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent
ἴσχω restrain, hold back ~ischemia
καταθέω run down
κινέω (ι) set in motion, move, remove ~kinetic
λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge ~limnic
λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

μεσόγεια inland
ὄμηρος insurance, hostage
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὅποι to which place
περικυκλώω encircle
ποῖ whither? how long?
πρεσβύτης -ου (ῥ, m, 1) old person
σκοπός (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope
σπονδή libation, treaty ~spontaneous
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle
τιτρώσκω wound, bring to grief ~trauma
χωρίον area; downwards

ἐπετίθεντο. καὶ τῶν μὲν πολλοὶ ἐτιτρώσκοντο, τῶν δὲ οὐδείς· ὥστε κινηθῆναι οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου, ἀλλὰ τελευτῶντες καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος εἶργον αὐτοὺς οἱ Θρᾶκες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία πολλὴ ἦν, διελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν· καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ὡμολόγητο αὐτοῖς, ὁμήρους δὲ οὐκ ἐδίδοσαν οἱ Θρᾶκες αἰτούντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ ἴσχετο. τὰ μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἀρκάδων οὕτως εἶχε.

Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενος παρὰ θάλατταν ἀφικνέεται εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα. Ξενοφῶντι δὲ διὰ τῆς μεσογείας πορευομένῳ οἱ ἵππεῖς καταθέοντες ἐντυγχάνουσι πρεσβύταις πορευομένοις ποι. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤχθησαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐρωτᾷ αὐτοὺς εἴ που ἦσθηνται ἄλλου στρατεύματος ὄντος Ἑλληνικοῦ. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα, καὶ νῦν ὅτι πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ λόφου, οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες πάντες περικεκυκλωμένοι εἶεν αὐτούς. ἐνταῦθα τοὺς μὲν ἀνθρώπους τούτους ἐφύλαττεν ἰσχυρῶς, ὅπως ἡγεμόνες εἶεν ὅποι δέοι· σκοποὺς δὲ καταστήσας συνέλεξε τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἔλεξεν·

ἐπετίθεντο. καὶ τῶν μὲν πολλοὶ |wound, bring to, τῶν δὲ
 |grief
 οὐδεὶς· ὥστε |move, οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἐκ τοῦ |area; downwards
 |remove
 |bring about, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος |bound, fend off; do Ἰρᾶκες.
 |finish
 ἐπεὶ δὲ |difficulty, ... ἀλλή ἦν, |go through, debate |libation, καὶ
 |bottleneck |treaty
 τὰ μὲν ἄλλα |agree with/to αὐτοῖς, |insurance, ὅς οὐκ ἐδίδοσαν
 |hostage
 οἱ Θρᾶκες |ask for τῶν |Greek , ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ |hold back
 τὰ μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἀρκάδων οὕτως εἶχε.

Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενος παρὰ θάλατταν
 ἀφικνεῖται εἰς Κάλπης |harbor, Ξενοφῶντι δὲ διὰ
 |refuge
 τῆς |inland πορευομένῳ οἱ ἱππεῖς |run down
 ἐντυγχάνουσι |old person πορευομένοις ποι. καὶ ἐπεὶ
 ἤχθησαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, |ask αὐτοὺς εἴ που ἦσθηνται
 ἄλλου |army ὄντος Ἑλληνικοῦ. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον
 πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα, καὶ νῦν ὅτι πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ
 |neck, crest ὃν ἂν Ἰρᾶκες πάντες |encircle εἶεν
 |helmet, hilltop
 αὐτούς. |there, here οὗς μὲν ἀνθρώπους τούτους ἐφύλαττεν
 |strong, force- τῶς |leader εἶεν |to which place|lookout δὲ
 |ful, violent
 καταστήσας |collect, τοὺς |soldier, καὶ ἔλεξεν·
 |assemble |mercenary

on one side man after man was wounded, on the other not a soul was touched; the result being that they could not stir from their position, and the Thracians ended by cutting them off even from their water. In their despair they began to parley about a truce, and finally various concessions were made and terms agreed to between them; but the Thracians would not hear of giving hostages in answer to the demand of the Hellenes; at that point the matter rested. So fared it with the Arcadians.

As to Cheirisophus, that general prosecuted his march along the seaboard, and without check reached Calpe Haven. Xenophon advanced through the heart of the country; and his cavalry pushing on in front, came upon some old men pursuing their road somewither, who were brought to him, and in answer to his question, whether they had caught sight of another Hellenic army anywhere, told him all that had already taken place, adding that at present they were being besieged upon a knoll with all the Thracians in close circle round them. Thereupon he kept the old men under strict guard to serve as guides in case of need; next, having appointed outposts, he called a meeting of the soldiers, and

vocabulary

ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
διακινδυνεύω (ὅ) take risks
διέρχομαι pierce, traverse
εἰκάζω liken; conjecture
ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest
ἐνθένδε hence
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
θαρρέω be of good heart
θαρσέω be of good heart
κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that
κοινός communal, ordinary
κράτιστος best
λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge
 ~limnic
λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop
πλησίος near, neighboring
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
σῶς safe, alive
σωτηρία saving, preservation

«Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τῶν Ἀρκάδων οἱ μὲν τεθνᾶσιν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς πολιορκοῦνται. νομίζω δ' ἔγωγε, εἰ ἐκεῖνοι ἀπολοῦνται, οὐδ' ἡμῖν εἶναι οὐδεμίαν σωτηρίαν, οὕτω μὲν πολλῶν ὄντων τῶν πολεμίων, οὕτω δὲ τεθαρρηκότων. κράτιστον οὖν ἡμῖν ὥς τάχιστα βοηθεῖν τοῖς ἀνδράσιν, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι εἰσὶ σῶοι, σὺν ἐκείνοις μαχώμεθα καὶ μὴ μόνοι λειφθέντες μόνοι καὶ κινδυνεύωμεν.

«Ἡμεῖς γὰρ ἀποδραΐημεν ἂν οὐδαμοὶ ἐνθένδε· πολλή μὲν γάρ,» ἔφη, «εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πάλιν ἀπιέναι, πολλή δὲ εἰς Χρυσόπολιν διελθεῖν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι πλησίον· εἰς Κάλπης δὲ λιμένα, ἔνθα Χειρίσοφον εἰκάζομεν εἶναι, εἰ σέσωσται, ἐλαχίστη ὁδός. ἀλλὰ δὴ ἐκεῖ μὲν οὐτε πλοιά ἐστὶν οἷς ἀποπλευσοῦμεθα, μένουσι δὲ αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ μιᾶς ἡμέρας ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. τῶν δὲ πολιορκουμένων ἀπολομένων σὺν τοῖς Χειρισόφου μόνοις κάκιόν ἐστι διακινδυνεύειν ἢ τῶνδε σωθέντων πάντας εἰς ταῦτόν ἐλθόντας κοινῇ τῆς σωτηρίας ἔχεσθαι. ἀλλὰ χρὴ παρασκευασαμένους

«Ἄνδρες |soldier, mercenary, τῶν Ἀρκάδων οἱ μὲν τεθνᾶσιν,
οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ |neck, crest on a |τολιορκοῦνται. νομίζω δ' |helmet, hilltop
ἔγωγε, εἰ ἐκείνοι ἀπολοῦνται, οὐδ' ἡμῖν εἶναι οὐδεμίαν
|saving, preservation, ἐν πολλῶν ὄντων τῶν πολεμίων, οὕτω
δὲ τεθαρρηκότων. |best οὖν ἡμῖν ὡς τάχιστα
βοηθεῖν τοῖς ἀνδράσιν, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι εἰσὶ σῶοι, σὺν
ἐκείνοις μαχώμεθα καὶ μὴ μόνοι λειφθέντες μόνοι καὶ
|encounter danger; (+inf)
|there is a danger that
«Ἡμεῖς γὰρ ἀποδραίμεν ἂν οὐδαμοῖ |hence πολλὴ μὲν
γάρ,» ἔφη, «εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πάλιν ἀπιέναι, πολλὴ δὲ εἰς
Χρυσόπολιν |pierce, |οἱ δὲ πολέμοι |near εἰς Κάλπης
|traverse
δὲ |harbor, , ἐνθα Χειρίσοφον |liken; εἶναι, εἰ σέσωσται,
|refuge |conjecture
|smallest, short-est. ἀλλὰ δὴ ἐκεῖ μὲν οὐτε πλοῖά ἐστιν οἷς
|est, fewest
|sail away , μένουσι δὲ αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ μιᾶς ἡμέρας
ἔστι τὰ |fit, suitable. τῶν δὲ πολιορκουμένων ἀπολομένων
σὺν τοῖς Χειρισόφου μόνοις κάκιόν ἐστι |take risks ἢ
τῶνδε σωθέντων πάντας εἰς ταῦτὸν ἐλθόντας κοινῇ τῆς
σωτηρίας ἔχεσθαι. ἀλλὰ χρὴ παρασκευασαμένους

addressed them: «Soldiers, some of the Arcadians are dead and the rest are being besieged upon a certain knoll. Now my own belief is, that if they are to perish, with their deaths the seal is set to our own fate: since we must reckon with an enemy at once numerous and emboldened. Clearly our best course is to hasten to their rescue, if haply we may find them still alive, and do battle by their side rather than suffer isolation, confronting danger single-handed.

«As for ourselves,” he continued, «we need not look to find cover in any direction; for it is a long step back to Heraclea and a long leap across to Chrysopolis, and the enemy is at the door. The shortest road is to Calpe Haven, where we suppose Cheirisophus, if safe, to be; but then, when we get there, at Calpe Haven there are no vessels for us to sail away in; and if we stop here, we have not provisions for a single day. Suppose the beleaguered Arcadians left to their fate, we shall find it but a sorry alternative to run the gauntlet with Cheirisophus’s detachment alone; better to save them if we can, and with united forces work out our deliverance in common. But if so,

vocabulary

ἄκρα at the edge, extreme ~acute
 ἄκρη at the edge, extreme
 ἄκρῑς -ός (f) hilltop ~acute
 ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute
 γυμνής light infantry; serf
 δειπνοποιέω make dinner
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἔντιμος (i) honored
 ἐπιπάρειμι come to help; pass, visit
 εὖζωνος well-girded ~zone
 εὐκλεής honored ~Euclid
 ἐφοράω look upon ~panorama
 ἡώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene
 καθοράω look down ~panorama
 καίω burn ~caustic
 καύσιμος combustible
 μεγαληγορέω boast, extol
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,

recommend, encourage
 παραπέμπω send via; escort ~pomp
 πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
 πλάγιος sideways; treacherous
 πόθεν from where?
 προελαύνω ride on
 προέρχομαι proceed, come out
 προσέχω direct to; think about
 σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
 σκοπάω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 σπείρω sow ~diaspora
 στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up
 station ~strategy
 ταπεινός lower, abase
 τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle

τὴν γνώμην πορεύεσθαι ὥς νῦν ἢ εὐκλεῶς τελευτῆσαι ἔστιν ἢ κάλλιστον ἔργον ἐργάσασθαι Ἑλληνας τοσούτους σώσαντας. καὶ ὁ θεὸς ἴσως ἄγει οὕτως, ὃς τοὺς μεγαληγορήσαντας ὥς πλέον φρονοῦντας ταπεινῶσαι βούλεται, ἡμᾶς δὲ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν ἀρχομένους ἐντιμότερους ἐκείνων καταστήσαι. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθαι χρὴ καὶ προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ὥς ἂν τὸ παραγγελλόμενον δύνησθε ποιεῖν. νῦν μὲν οὖν στρατοπεδευσώμεθα προελθόντες ὅσον ἂν δοκῇ καιρὸς εἶναι εἰς τὸ δειπνοποιεῖσθαι· ἕως δ' ἂν πορευώμεθα, Τιμασίων ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας προελαννέτω ἐφορῶν ἡμᾶς καὶ σκοπεῖτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, ὥς μηδὲν ἡμᾶς λάθῃ.»

Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἡγείτο. παρέπεμψε δὲ καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ἀνθρώπους εὐζώνους εἰς τὰ πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως εἴ πού τί ποθεν καθορῶεν, σημαίνουσιν· ἐκέλευε δὲ καίειν ἅπαντα ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνουσιν καυσίμῳ. οἱ δὲ ἱππεῖς σπειρόμενοι ἐφ' ὅσον καλῶς εἶχεν ἔκαιον, καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα ἔκαιον

τὴν γνώμην πορεύεσθαι ὥς νῦν ἣ |honored |bring about,
 ἔστιν ἣ κάλλιστον ἔργον ἐργάσασθαι |Greek |finish
 τοσοῦτους
 σώσαντας. καὶ ὁ θεὸς ἴσως ἄγει οὕτως, ὃς τοὺς
 |boast, extol ὥς πλέον φρονούντας |lower, abase
 βούλεται, ἡμᾶς δὲ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν ἀρχομένους
 |honored ἐκείνων καταστήσαι. ἀλλ' ἔπεισθαι χρὴ καὶ
 |direct to; τὸν νοῦν, ὥς ἂν τὸ |transmit; order, summōn, σθε
 |think about |recommend, encourage
 ποιεῖν. νῦν μὲν οὖν |encamp or take up sta- |proceed, come out
 |tion
 ὅσον ἂν δοκῇ καιρὸς εἶναι εἰς τὸ |make dinner ἕως δ' ἂν
 πορευώμεθα, Τιμασίῳ ἔχων τοὺς ἵππεας |ride on
 |look upon ἡμᾶς καὶ σκοπεῖτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, ὥς μηδὲν ἡμᾶς
 λάθῃ.»

Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἡγείτο. |send via; escort καὶ τῶν |light
 |infantry;
 ἀνθρώπους |well-girded εἰς τὰ πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ ἄκρα, |serf
 ὅπως εἴ ποῦ τί ποθεν |look down , |give orders to; ἐκέλευε δὲ
 |show; mark
 |burn ἅπαντα ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν |combustible οἱ δὲ ἵππεῖς
 |sow ἐφ' ὅσον καλῶς εἶχεν |burn , καὶ οἱ |light troops
 |come to help; κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα |burn
 |pass, visit

we must set out with minds prepared, since to-day either a glorious death awaits us or the achievement of a deed of noblest emprise in the rescue of so many Hellene lives. Maybe it is God who leads us thus, God who chooses to humble the proud boaster, boasting as though he were exceedingly wise, but for us, the beginning of whose every act is by heaven's grace, that same God reserves a higher grade of honour. One duty I would recall to you, to apply your minds to the execution of the orders with promptitude."

With these words he led the way. The cavalry, scattering as far in advance as was prudent, wherever they set foot, set fire. The peltasts moving parallel on the high ground were similarly employed, burning everything combustible they could discover. While the main army, wherever they came upon anything which had accidentally escaped, completed the work,

vocabulary

αἶθω set on fire ~ether

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
~angel

ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at
some distance

γερόντιον little old man

δειπνέω eat, dine

ἐκβαίνω come forth, disembark ~basis

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,
chief ~hegemony

θαῦμα -τος (n, 3) a wonder, feeling of
surprise ~theater

καθεύδω lie down

καίω burn ~caustic

καταλείβω drip

καταλείπω leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

κατασβέννυμι (ō) extinguish

καταστρατοπεδεύω encamp, station

καύσιμος combustible

λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,
recommend, encourage

παραλείπω leave, leave out

πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds

προελαύνω ride on

προσεύχομαι pray, vow

πυρά pyre ~pyre

στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)

στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
(pl noun) 200 meters

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιά army ~strategy

συντάσσω gather, assemble ~syntax

τεσσαράκοντα forty ~trapezoid

τετταράκοντα forty

φίλιος friendly

φυλακή guard, prison, watch

~phylactery

πάντα ὅσα καύσιμα ἐώρων, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ δέ, εἵ
 τινι παραλειπομένῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν· ὥστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα
 αἴθεσθαι ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πολὺ εἶναι. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ ὥρα ἦν, κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐπὶ λόφον ἐκβάντες,
 καὶ τά τε τῶν πολεμίων πυρὰ ἐώρων, ἀπείχον δὲ ὡς
 τεττάρακοντα σταδίους, καὶ αὐτοὶ ὡς ἐδύναντο πλείστα
 πυρὰ ἔκαιον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν τάχιστα, παρηγγέλθη τὰ
 πυρὰ κατασβεννύναι πάντα. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα φυλακὰς
 ποιησάμενοι ἐκάθευδον·

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ προσευξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς, συνταξάμενοι
 ὡς εἰς μάχην ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. Τιμασίων
 δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἔχοντες τοὺς ἡγεμόνας καὶ προελαύνοντες
 ἐλάνθανον αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ γενόμενοι ἔνθα
 ἐπολιορκοῦντο οἱ Ἕλληνες. καὶ οὐχ ὁρώσιν οὔτε φίλιον
 στράτευμα οὔτε πολέμιον καὶ ταῦτα ἀπαγγέλλουσι πρὸς
 τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τὸ στράτευμα, γράδια δὲ καὶ γερόντια
 καὶ πρόβατα ὀλίγα καὶ βοῦς καταλελειμμένους. καὶ τὸ
 μὲν πρῶτον θαῦμα ἦν τί εἴη τὸ γεγεννημένον, ἔπειτα δὲ
 καὶ

πάντα ὅσα |combustible ἔϋρων, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ δέ, εἴ
 τινι |leave, leave out ἐντυγχάνοιεν· ὥστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα
 |set on fire ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ |army πολὺ εἶναι. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ ὥρα ἦν, |encamp, station ἐπὶ |neck, |come forth,
 καὶ τά τε τῶν πολεμίων |pyre ἐώρων |crest
 |on |ward off, drive off, refrain, be
 |helmet, |at some distance
 |hilltop
 τετταράκοντα σταδίου, καὶ αὐτοὶ ὡς ἐδύναντο πλείστα
 |pyre |burn . ἐπεὶ δὲ |eat, dine τάχιστα, |transmit; order, summon, rec-
 |ommend, encourage
 |pyre |extinguish πάντα. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα |guard,
 |prison,
 ποιησάμενοι ἐκάθευδον· |watch
 Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ |pray, vow τοῖς θεοῖς, |gather, assemble
 ὡς εἰς μάχην ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. Τιμασίῳ
 δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἔχοντες τοὺς |leader καὶ |ride on
 ἐλάνθανον αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ |neck, crest on ἅ |ενοι ἔνθα
 |helmet, hilltop
 ἐπολιορκοῦντο οἱ |Greek . καὶ οὐχ ὁρώσιν οὔτε |friendly
 |army οὔτε πολέμιον καὶ ταῦτα |announce, order, πρὸς
 |promise
 τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τὸ |army , γράδια δὲ καὶ |little old man
 καὶ |cattle, flocks, ἵγᾶ καὶ βοῦς καταλελειμμένους. καὶ τὸ
 |herds
 μὲν πρῶτον |wonder, ἦν τί εἴη τὸ γεγενημένον, ἔπειτα δὲ
 |surprise
 καὶ

so that the whole country looked as if it were ablaze; and the army might easily pass for a larger one. When the hour had come, they turned aside to a knoll and took up quarters; and there they espied the enemy's watch-fires. He was about forty furlongs distant. On their side also they kindled as many watch-fires as possible; but as soon as they had dined the order was passed to quench all the fires. So during the night they posted guards and slept.

But at daybreak they offered prayers to the gods, and drawing up in order of battle, began marching with what speed they might. Timasion and the cavalry, who had the guides with them, and were moving on briskly in front, found themselves without knowing it at the very knoll upon which the Hellenes had been beleaguered. But no army could they discover, whether of friend or foe; only some starveling old women and men, with a few sheep and oxen which had been left behind. This news they reported to Xenophon and the main body. At first the marvel was what had happened; but ere long they found out by inquiries from the

vocabulary

ἀποδιδράσκω escape

ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat

ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet

ἐσπέρα evening, west

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

καταλείβω drip

καταλείπω leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

κατασβέννυμι (ῶ) extinguish

λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge
~limnic

οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

ὅποι to which place

πυρά pyre ~pyre

στίβος trail

συσκευάζω pack up

σχεδόν near, approximately at

~ischemia

τῶν καταλελειμμένων ἐπυνθάνοντο ὅτι οἱ μὲν Θρᾶκες ἀφ' ἐσπέρας ὥχοντο ἀπιόντες, καὶ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας δ' ἔφασαν οἴχεσθαι· ὅποι δέ, οὐκ εἰδέναι.

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεὶ ἡρίστησαν, συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο, βουλόμενοι ὥς τάχιστα συμμείξαι τοῖς ἄλλοις εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα. καὶ πορευόμενοι ἐώρων τὸν στίβον τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν κατὰ τὴν ἐπὶ Κάλπης ὁδόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸ αὐτό, ἄσμενοί τε εἶδον ἀλλήλους καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ὥσπερ ἀδελφούς. καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα τί τὰ πυρὰ κατασβέσειαν· «ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ,» ἔφασαν, «ὥμεθα ὑμᾶς τὸ μὲν πρῶτον, ἐπειδὴ τὰ πυρὰ οὐχ ἐωρῶμεν, τῆς νυκτὸς ἤξειν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ οἱ πολέμοι δέ, ὥς γε ἡμῖν ἐδόκουν, τοῦτο δείσαντες ἀπῆλθον· σχεδὸν γὰρ ἀμφὶ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπῆσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἀφίκεσθε, ὁ δὲ χρόνος ἐξῆκεν, ὥόμεθα ὑμᾶς πυθομένους τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν φοβηθέντας οἴχεσθαι ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν

τῶν καταλελειμμένων ἐπυνθάνοντο ὅτι οἱ μὲν Θρᾷκες ἀφ' ἐσπέρας |come, go ἀπιόντες, καὶ τοὺς |Greek δ' ἔφασαν |come, go |to which place ἰδέναι.

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεὶ |eat lunch , |pack up ἐπορεύοντο, βουλόμενοι ὥς τάχιστα συμμεῖξαι τοῖς ἄλλοις εἰς Κάλπησ |harbor, |refuge καὶ πορευόμενοι ἐώρων τὸν |trail τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν κατὰ τὴν ἐπὶ Κάλπησ ὁδόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸ αὐτό, |be pleased, enjoy ὦν ἀλλήλους καὶ |greet, salute ὥσπερ ἀδελφούς. καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα τί τὰ |pyre |extinguish «ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ,» ἔφασαν, «ᾧμεθα ὑμᾶς τὸ μὲν πρῶτον, ἐπειδὴ τὰ |pyre οὐχ ἐωρῶμεν, τῆς νυκτὸς ἦξιεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ οἱ πολέμοι δέ, ὥς γε ἡμῖν ἐδόκουν, τοῦτο δείσαντες ἀπῆλθον· |about γὰρ ἀμφὶ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπῆσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἀφίκεσθε, ὁ δὲ χρόνος |send forth, |allow forth ᾧμεθα ὑμᾶς πυθομένους τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν φοβηθέντας |come, go |escape ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν

folk who had been left behind, that the Thracians had set off immediately after sundown, and were gone; the Hellenes had waited till morning before they made off, but in what direction, they could not say.

On hearing this, Xenophon's troops first breakfasted, and then getting their kit together began their march, desiring to unite with the rest at Calpe's Haven without loss of time. As they continued their march, they came across the track of the Arcadians and Achaeans along the road to Calpe, and both divisions arriving eventually at the same place, were overjoyed to see one another again, and they embraced each other like brothers. Then the Arcadians inquired of Xenophon's officers—why they had quenched the watch-fires? «At first,” said they, «when we lost sight of your watch-fires, we expected you to attack the enemy in the night; and the enemy, so at least we imagined, must have been afraid of that and so set off. The time at any rate at which they set off would correspond. But when the requisite time had elapsed and you did not come, we concluded that you must have learnt what was happening to us, and in terror had made a bolt for it to the seaboard. We resolved not

vocabulary

αἰγιαλός beach, shore

ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse

ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail

αὐλίζομαι live, lodge at

δεῦρο here, come here!

εἰσπλέω sail into

ἐκατέρωθεν on both sides

ἐκπίπτω fall out of ~petal

Ἑλλήν Greek

κώπη handle; oar ~capture

λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge

~limnic

μέχρι as far as, until

πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to

τριήρης trireme ~row

ὕβριζω insult, treat outrageously

φίλιος friendly

χωρίον area; downwards

μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι ὑμῶν. οὕτως οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς δεῦρο ἐπορεύθημεν.»

6.4

Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν αὐτοῦ ηὐλίζοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. τὸ δὲ χωρίον τοῦτο ὃ καλεῖται Κάλπης λιμὴν ἔστι μὲν ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ τῇ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ· ἀρξαμένη δὲ ἡ Θράκη αὕτη ἐστὶν ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος τοῦ Πόντου μέχρι Ἡρακλείας ἐπὶ δεξιὰ εἰς τὸν Πόντον εἰσπλέοντι. καὶ τριήρει μὲν ἐστὶν εἰς Ἡράκλειαν ἐκ Βυζαντίου κώπαις ἡμέρας μακρᾶς πλοῦς· ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ ἄλλη μὲν πόλις οὐδεμία οὔτε φιλία οὔτε Ἑλληνίς, ἀλλὰ Θρᾶκες Βιθυνοί· καὶ οὕς ἂν λάβωσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκπίπτοντας ἢ ἄλλως πως δεινὰ ὑβρίζειν λέγονται τοὺς Ἕλληνας.

Ὁ δὲ Κάλπης λιμὴν ἐν μέσῳ μὲν κεῖται ἐκατέρωθεν πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, ἔστι δ' ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ προκείμενον χωρίον, τὸ μὲν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν

μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι ὑμῶν. οὕτως οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς |here, come here!
ἐπορεύθημεν.»

6.4

Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν αὐτοῦ |live, lodge ἐπὶ τοῦ
|at
|beach, πρὸς τῷ |harbor, τὸ δὲ |area; downwards˘ καλεῖται
|shore |refuge
Κάλπης |harbor, ἔστι μὲν ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ τῇ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ˙
|refuge
ἀρξαμένη δὲ ἡ Θράκη αὕτη ἐστὶν ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος
τοῦ Πόντου |as far as, until˘ εἰς ἐπὶ δεξιὰ εἰς τὸν Πόντον
|sail into . καὶ |trireme μὲν ἐστὶν εἰς Ἡράκλειαν ἐκ
Βυζαντίου |handle; oar, ἱέρας μακρᾶς πλοῦς˙ ἐν δὲ τῷ
μέσῳ ἄλλη μὲν πόλις οὐδεμία οὔτε |friendly ὅτε Ἑλληνίς,
ἀλλὰ Θρᾶκες Βιθυνοί˙ καὶ οὓς ἂν λάβωσι τῶν |Greek
|fall out of ἢ ἄλλως πως δεινὰ |insult λέγονται τοὺς
|Greek

Ὁ δὲ Κάλπης |harbor, ἐν μέσῳ μὲν κείται |on both sides
|refuge
πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, ἔστι δ' ἐν τῇ
θαλάττῃ |be placed by; |area; downwards˘ εἰς τὴν θάλατταν
|be devoted to

to be left behind by you; and that is how we also came to march hither.”

6.4

During this day they contented themselves with bivouacking there on the beach at the harbour. The place which goes by the name of Calpe Haven is in Asiatic Thrace, the name given to a region extending from the mouth of the Euxine all the way to Heraclea, which lies on the right hand as you sail into the Euxine. It is a long day's voyage for a war-ship, using her three banks of oars, from Byzantium to Heraclea, and between these two there is not a single Hellenic or friendly city, but only these Bithynian Thracians, who have a bad reputation for the savagery with which they treat any Hellenes cast ashore by shipwreck or otherwise thrown into their power.

Now the haven of Calpe lies exactly midway, halving the voyage between Byzantium and Heraclea. It is a long promontory running out into the sea; the seaward portion

vocabulary

αἰγιαλός beach, shore
 ἄλιθος without stones
 ἄμπελος (f) vine
 ἀνήκω reach up to; belong
 ἀπορρώξ -χνος (m) broken off; a fragment
 ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice
 αὐχὴν -ένος (m, 3) neck
 ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful
 γεώδης earthy
 δασύς hairy, brushy
 ἐλάα olive, olive tree ~olive
 ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest
 ἐντός within
 ἐπικράτεια domain, realm; control
 ἐσπέρα evening, west
 εὖρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind
 ἡδύοινος wine producing
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 καθήκω come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; be proper
 κρήνη well, spring
 κριθή (t) barley plant
 λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge
 ~limnic
 μείων less, smaller

μελίνη millet
 μεσόγεια inland
 μυρίος (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad
 ναυπηγήσιμος useful in shipbuilding
 ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone
 οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
 ὅπη wherever, however
 ὄργυια fathom, arm's length ~reach
 ὀργυιά fathom, arm's length
 ὄσπριον bean, legume
 παντοδαπής of every kind, manifold
 παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold
 πέτρα rock, cliff, reef ~petrified
 πλέθρον 30 meters or its square
 ~plethora
 πυρός (ῥ) wheat
 ῥέω flow ~rheostat
 σήσαμον sesame
 σκηνέω camp
 σκηνώ camp
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
 σύκον fig
 τέσσαρες four ~trapezoid
 ὕψος ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit
 χωρίον area; downwards

καθήκον αὐτοῦ πέτρα ἀπορρώξ, ὕψος ὅπη ἐλάχιστον οὐ μείον εἴκοσιν ὀργυῶν, ὁ δὲ αὐχὴν ὁ εἰς τὴν γῆν ἀνήκων τοῦ χωρίου μάλιστα τεττάρων πλέθρων τὸ εὖρος· τὸ δ' ἐντὸς τοῦ αὐχένος χωρίον ἱκανὸν μυρίοις ἀνθρώποις οἰκῆσαι. λιμὴν δ' ὑπ' αὐτῇ τῇ πέτρᾳ τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέραν αἰγιαλὸν ἔχων. κρήνη δὲ ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἄφθονος ῥέουσα ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπικρατείᾳ τοῦ χωρίου. ξύλα δὲ πολλὰ μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, πάνυ δὲ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπηγήσιμα ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ. τὸ δὲ ὄρος εἰς μεσόγειαν μὲν ἀνήκει ὅσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίοις, καὶ τοῦτο γεῶδες καὶ ἄλιθον· τὸ δὲ παρὰ θάλατταν πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίοις δασὺ πολλοῖς καὶ παντοδαποῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ξύλοις. ἡ δὲ ἄλλη χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλή, καὶ κῶμαι ἐν αὐτῇ εἰσι πολλαὶ καὶ οἰκούμεναι· φέρει γὰρ ἡ γῆ καὶ κριθὰς καὶ πυροὺς καὶ ὄσπρια πάντα καὶ μελίνας καὶ σήσαμα καὶ σῦκα ἀρκοῦντα καὶ ἀμπέλους πολλὰς καὶ ἡδυοῖνους καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα πλὴν ἐλαῶν. ἡ μὲν χώρα ἦν τοιαύτη.

Ἐσκήνουν δ' ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ· εἰς δὲ τὸ

|come down, (a day) to, fall, |broken off , |height, " τη ἐλάχιστον οὐ
arrive; be proper |summit

|less, ἥκοσιν ὀργυῶν, ὁ δὲ |neck ὁ εἰς τὴν γῆν |reach up to; belong
smaller

χωρίου μάλιστα τεττάρων |30 meters ὁρ|width; (caps) ἐντὸς
its square |the east wind

τοῦ |neck χωρίον ἱκανὸν μυρίοις ἀνθρώποις οἰκῆσαι.

λιμὴν δ' ὑπ' αὐτῇ τῇ πέτρᾳ τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέραν |beach,
shore

ἔχων. |well, δὲ ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ |ungrudging, ἡ ἡυσσα ἐπ' αὐτῇ
spring |plentiful

τῇ θαλάττῃ ὑπὸ τῇ |domain, ἡ χωρίου. ξύλα δὲ πολλὰ
realm; con-
trol

μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, πάντ' οὖν πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ |useful in ship- ἐπ'
building

αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ. τὸ δὲ ὄρος εἰς |inland μὲν |reach up to; belong

ὅσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, καὶ τοῦτο |earthy καὶ |without
stones

τὸ δὲ παρὰ θάλατταν πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους |hairy,
brushy

πολλοῖς καὶ παντοδαποῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ξύλοις. ἡ δὲ ἄλλη

χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλή, καὶ κῶμαι ἐν αὐτῇ εἰσι πολλαὶ

καὶ οἰκούμεναι· φέρει γὰρ ἡ γῆ καὶ |barley καὶ |wheat καὶ
plant

|bean, πάντα καὶ |millet καὶ |sesame καὶ |fig |satisfy; ward off, de-
legume |fend; suffice

καὶ |vine πολλὰς καὶ |wine producing ` τὰλλα πάντα

πλὴν |olive . ἡ μὲν χώρα ἦν τοιαύτη.

Ἐσκήνουν δ' ἐν τῷ |beach, πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ· εἰς δὲ τὸ
shore

being a rocky precipice, at no point less than twenty fathoms high; but on the landward side there is a neck about four hundred feet wide; and the space inside the neck is capable of accommodating ten thousand inhabitants, and there is a haven immediately under the crag with a beach facing the west. Then there is a copious spring of fresh water flowing on the very marge of the sea commanded by the stronghold. Again, there is plenty of wood of various sorts; but most plentiful of all, fine shipbuilding timber down to the very edge of the sea. The upland stretches into the heart of the country for twenty furlongs at least. It is good loamy soil, free from stones. For a still greater distance the seaboard is thickly grown with large timber trees of every description. The surrounding country is beautiful and spacious, containing numerous well populated villages. The soil produces barley and wheat, and pulse of all sorts, millet and sesame, figs in ample supply, with numerous vines producing sweet wines, and indeed everything else except olives. Such is the character of the country.

The tents were pitched on the seaward-facing beach, the soldiers being altogether averse to camping on

vocabulary

ἀποδιδράσκω escape
ἀρετή goodness, excellence
βίος life ~biology
βιόω live; (mp) make a living ~biology
ἐκπλέω sail away ~float
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue
ἐξοδος (f) leaving, way out
ἐπιβουλή a plot, scheme ~volunteer
ἐπινοέω intend
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
θάπτω bury ~epitaph
θύω (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon

κατοικίζω colonize
κτάομαι acquire, possess
μισθοφορά payment of wages
πεμπταῖος on the fifth day ~pentagon
ποθέω miss, long for, notice an absence; lose ~bid
πόλισμα buildings of a city
προσαναλίσκω lavish on as well
σπάνις -εως (f) scarcity, rarity
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up station ~strategy
σύνοδος meeting, conjunction
ὕστέρα womb; ovary

πόλισμα ἂν γενόμενον οὐκ ἐβούλοντο στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ ἐλθεῖν ἐνταῦθα ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς εἶναι, βουλομένων τινῶν κατοικίσαι πόλιν. τῶν γὰρ στρατιωτῶν οἱ πλείστοι ἦσαν οὐ σπάνει βίου ἐκπεπλευκότες ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν μισθοφοράν, ἀλλὰ τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἀκούοντες, οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄνδρας ἄγοντες, οἱ δὲ καὶ προσανηλωκότες χρήματα, καὶ τούτων ἕτεροι ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μητέρας, οἱ δὲ καὶ τέκνα καταλιπόντες ὥς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἥξοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν. τοιοῦτοι ὄντες ἐπόθουν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα σῶζεσθαι.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑστέρα ἡμέρα ἐγένετο τῆς εἰς ταῦτόν συνόδου, ἐπ' ἐξόδῳ ἐθύετο Ξενοφῶν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐξάγειν· ἐπενόει δὲ καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἐγένετο, εἶποντο καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες, καὶ τοὺς μὲν νεκροὺς τοὺς πλείστους ἔνθαπερ ἔπεσον ἐκάστους ἔθαψαν· ἥδη γὰρ ἦσαν πεμπταῖοι καὶ οὐχ οἷόν

|buildings of a city ἔμενον οὐκ ἐβούλοντο |encamp or take up,
 |station
 ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ ἐλθεῖν |there, here ἐξ |a plot, scheme
 εἶναι, βουλομένων τινῶν |colonize πόλιν. τῶν
 γὰρ |soldier, οἱ πλείστοι ἦσαν οὐ |scarcity, βίου
 |mercenary |rarity
 |sail away ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν |payment of wages ἄλλὰ τὴν
 Κύρου |excellence ἄκούοντες, οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄνδρας ἄγοντες,
 οἱ δὲ καὶ |lavish on as well χρήματα, καὶ τούτων ἕτεροι
 |escape πατέρας καὶ μητέρας, οἱ δὲ καὶ τέκνα
 |leave behind, ὥς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἤξοντες
 |abandon
 πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πολλὰ
 καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν. τοιοῦτοι ὄντες |miss, long for, notice an absence;
 |lose
 Ἑλλάδα σώζεσθαι.
 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑστέρα ἡμέρα ἐγένετο τῆς εἰς ταῦτον |meeting,
 |conjunction
 ἐπ' |leaving, |rush; sacrifice φῶν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν ἐπὶ τὰ
 |way out
 |fit, suitable |lead out |intend δὲ καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς |bury
 ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἐγένετο, εἶποντο καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες,
 καὶ τοὺς μὲν νεκροὺς τοὺς πλείστους ἔνθαπερ ἔπεσον
 ἐκάστους |bury ἥδη γὰρ ἦσαν |on the fifth day ὃν οἶόν

ground which might so easily be converted into a city. Indeed, their arrival at the place at all seemed very like the crafty design of some persons who were minded to form a city. The aversion was not unnatural, since the majority of the soldiers had not left their homes on so long a voyage from scantiness or subsistence, but attracted by the fame of Cyrus's virtues; some of them bringing followers, while others had expended money on the expedition. And amongst them was a third set who had run away from fathers and mothers; while a different class had left children behind, hoping to return to them with money or other gains. Other people with Cyrus won great success, they were told; why should it not be so with them? Being persons then of this description, the one longing of their hearts was to reach Hellas safely.

It was on the day after their meeting that Xenophon sacrificed as a preliminary to a military expedition; for it was needful to march out in search of provisions, besides which he designed burying the dead. As soon as the victims proved favourable they all set out, the Arcadians following with the rest. The majority of the dead, who had lain already five days, they buried just where they had fallen, in groups; to remove their bodies now would have been impossible. Some

vocabulary

ἀναιρέω take up ~heresy
ἀναχωρέω return, retreat ~heir
δειπνέω eat, dine
δῆλος visible, conspicuous
δίχα in two, in two ways
δόγμα -τος (n, 3) belief, legal decision
ἐνιοι some
ζημιόω fine, punish
θάπτω bury ~epitaph
κενοτάφιον cenotaph
κοιμάω put to sleep; (pass) lie down,
 have sex
λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
παραλαμβάνω receive, undertake,

associate with
πορεία gait, march
πυρέσσω have a fever
στέφανος ring
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear
συνάγω assemble; join in battle
 ~demagogue
συνέρχομαι come together
τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle
ὑστεραίῳς the next; later
φάρμακον drug, potion ~pharmacy

ἀναιρεῖν ἔτι ἦν· ἐνίους δὲ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν συνενεγκόντες ἔθαιψαν ἐκ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων ὥς ἐδύναντο κάλλιστα· οὓς δὲ μὴ ἡῤῥισκον, κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς ἐποίησαν μέγα, καὶ στεφάνους ἐπέθεσαν. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες ἀνεχώρησαν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τότε μὲν δειπνήσαντες ἐκοιμήθησαν.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ συνήλθον οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες· συνήγε δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε ὁ Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς καὶ Ἰερώνυμος Ἡλείος λοχαγὸς καὶ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν Ἀρκάδων. καὶ δόγμα ἐποιήσαντο, εἴαν τις τοῦ λοιποῦ μνησθῇ δίχα τὸ στράτευμα ποιεῖν, θανάτῳ αὐτὸν ζημιοῦσθαι, καὶ κατὰ χώραν ἀπιέναι ἥπερ πρόσθεν εἶχε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ ἄρχειν τοὺς πρόσθεν στρατηγούς. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤδη ἐτετελευτήκει φάρμακον πιὼν πυρέττων· τὰ δ' ἐκείνου Νέων Ἀσιναιῖος παρέλαβε.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· «ᾧ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὴν μὲν πορείαν, ὥς ἔοικε, δῆλον ὅτι πεζῇ ποιητέον· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι πλοῖα· ἀνάγκη δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἤδη·

|take up ἔτι ἦν· |some δὲ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν συνενεγκόντες
 |bury ἐκ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων ὡς ἐδύναντο κάλλιστα· οὓς
 δὲ μὴ ἡŷρισκον, |cenotaph αὐτοῖς ἐποίησαν μέγα, καὶ
 |ring ἐπέθεσαν. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες |return, retreat
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τότε μὲν |eat, dine
 ἐκοιμήθησαν.

Τῇ δὲ |the next;|come together |soldier, πάντες· |join
 |later |mercenary
 δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε ὁ Στυμφάλιος |captain καὶ
 Ἰερώνυμος Ἡλείος |captain καὶ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι
 τῶν Ἀρκάδων. καὶ |belief, legal |wished, ἐάν τις τοῦ
 |decision
 λοιποῦ μνησθῇ |in two, in|army ποιεῖν, θανάτῳ αὐτὸν
 |two ways
 |fine, punish , καὶ κατὰ χώραν ἀπιέναι ἥπερ πρόσθεν εἶχε
 τὸ |army καὶ ἄρχειν τοὺς πρόσθεν στρατηγούς.
 καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤδη |bring about, φάρμακον πιὼν
 |finish
 |have a fever τὰ δ' ἐκείνου Νέων Ἀσιναιῶς |receive, undertake,
 |associate with
 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· «ὦ ἄνδρες
 |soldier, , τὴν μὲν |gait, , ὡς ἔοικε, |visible, " τεξῇ
 |mercenary |march |conspicuous
 ποιητέον· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι πλοῖα· ἀνάγκη δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἥδη·

few, who lay off the roads, they got together and buried with what splendour they could, considering the means in their power. Others they could not find, and for these they erected a great cenotaph, and covered it with wreaths. When it was all done, they returned home to camp. At that time they supped, and went to rest.

Next day there was a general meeting of the soldiers, collected chiefly by Agasias the Stymphalian, a captain, and Hieronymus, an Eleian, also a captain, and other seniors of the Arcadians; and they passed a resolution that, for the future, whoever revived the idea of breaking up the army should be punished by death. And the army, it was decided, would now resume its old position under the command of its former generals. Though Cheirisophus, indeed, had already died under medical treatment for fever; and Neon the Asinaean had taken his place.

After these resolutions Xenophon got up and said: «Soldiers, the journey must now, I presume, be conducted on foot; indeed, this is clear, since we have no vessels; and we

vocabulary

ἄλλοτε at another time ~alien
ἀναθαρσέω regain courage
ἀποδιδράσκω escape
αὔριον tomorrow
ἄφοδος departure, return; toilet, shit
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐντεῦθεν thence
ἐπιλείπω fail, not work ~eclipse
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
θυσία sacrifice
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon
 people

μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis
μισθόω rent out; (pass) be hired
οἰκίζω colonize, settle
παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,
 recommend, encourage
πότε when?
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
συνέρχομαι come together
συνθεάζω ecstasize with
συνθεάομαι view together
τρίς 3 times
χωρίον area; downwards

οὐ γὰρ ἔστι μένουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἡμεῖς οὖν,» ἔφη,
 «θυσόμεθα· ὑμᾶς δὲ δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς μαχουμένους
 εἴ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε· οἱ γὰρ πολέμοι ἀνατεθαρρήκασιν.»

Ἐκ τούτου ἐθύοντο οἱ στρατηγοί, μάντις δὲ παρῆν
 Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς· ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμπρακιώτης ἤδη
 ἀπεδεδράκει πλοῖον μισθωσάμενος ἐξ Ἡρακλείας.
 θυομένοις δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. ταύτην
 μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο. καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν
 ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν βουλόμενος τὸ χωρίον οἰκίσαι πέπεικε
 τὸν μάντιν λέγειν ὡς τὰ ἱερά οὐ γίγνεται ἐπὶ ἀφόδῳ.
 ἐντεῦθεν κηρύξας τῇ αὔριον παρεῖναι ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν
 τὸν βουλόμενον, καὶ μάντις εἴ τις εἴη, παραγγείλας
 παρεῖναι ὡς συνθεασόμενον τὰ ἱερά, ἔθνε· καὶ ἐνταῦθα
 παρήσαν πολλοί. θυομένῳ δὲ πάλιν εἰς τρεῖς ἐπὶ τῇ
 ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. ἐκ τούτου χαλεπῶς εἶχον
 οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλιπεν ἃ ἔχοντες
 ἦλθον, καὶ ἀγορὰ οὐδεμία πω παρῆν.

Ἐκ τούτου ξυνελθόντων εἶπε πάλιν Ξενοφῶν· «ὦ ἄνδρες,

οὐ γὰρ ἔστι μένουσι τὰ |fit, suitable ἡμεῖς οὖν,» ἔφη,
 «|rush; sacrifice ἄς δὲ δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς μαχουμένους
 εἴ ποτε καὶ |at another time, πολέμοι |regain courage .»

Ἐκ τούτου |rush; sacrifice στρατηγοί, |seer δὲ παρῆν
 Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς· ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμπρακιώτης ἦδη

|escape πλοῖον |rent out; (pass) ἐξ Ἡρακλείας.
 |be hired
 |rush; sacrifice ἐπὶ τῇ |departure, ἴ. re-, ἔγνετο τὰ ἱερά. ταύτην
 |turn; toilet,
 μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν |shit ἐπαύσαντο. καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν

ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν βουλόμενος τὸ |area; |colonize, πέπεικε
 |down- |settle
 τὸν |seer λέγειν ὡς τὰ ἱερά οὐ γίγνεται ἐπὶ |departure, return;
 |toilet, shit

|thence |be a henchman, tomorrow, ἀρεῖναι ἐπὶ τὴν |sacrifice
 |summon people

τὸν βουλόμενον, καὶ |seer εἴ τις εἴη, |transmit; order, summon,
 |recommend, encourage

παρεῖναι ὡς συνθεασόμενον τὰ ἱερά, |rush; sacri-|there, here
 |fice

παρῆσαν πολλοί. |rush; sacrifice πάλιν εἰς |3 ἐπὶ τῇ
 |times

|departure, ἴ. re-, ἔγνετο τὰ ἱερά. ἐκ τούτου χαλεπῶς εἶχον
 |turn; toilet,
 |shit
 |soldier, καὶ γὰρ τὰ |fit, suitable |fail, not work ἔχοντες
 |mercenary

ἦλθον, καὶ ἀγορὰ οὐδεμία πω παρῆν.

Ἐκ τούτου |come together εἶπε πάλιν Ξενοφῶν· «ᾧ ἄνδρες,

are driven to commence it at once, for we have no provisions if we stop. We then," he continued, «will sacrifice, and you must prepare yourselves to fight now, if ever, for the spirit of the enemy has revived."

Thereupon the generals sacrificed, in the presence of the Arcadian seer, Arexion; for Silanus the Ambraciot had chartered a vessel at Heraclea and made his escape ere this. Sacrificing with a view to departure, the victims proved unfavourable to them. Accordingly they waited that day. Certain people were bold enough to say that Xenophon, out of his desire to colonise the place, had persuaded the seer to say that the victims were unfavourable to departure. Consequently he proclaimed by herald next morning that any one who liked should be present at the sacrifice; or if he were a seer he was bidden to be present and help to inspect the victims. Then he sacrificed, and there were numbers present; but though the sacrifice on the question of departure was repeated as many as three times, the victims were persistently unfavourable. Thereat the soldiers were in high dudgeon, for the provisions they had brought with them had reached the lowest ebb, and there was no market to be had.

Consequently there was another meeting, and Xenophon spoke again: «Men," said he, «the victims

vocabulary

ἀναμένω wait for ~remain
ἀρμοστής -οῦ (m, 1) governor
αὐτόματος self-willed, accidental
 ~after
ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
ἐοικότως like; fairly
ἐπιλείπω fail, not work ~eclipse
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἐρυμνός fortified, impregnable
θῦμα -τος (n, 3) victim, sacrifice
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
κυκλέω carry on wheels ~cycle
κυκλόω circle, encircle

μέλω concern, interest, be one's
 responsibility
οὐπω no longer
πορεία gait, march
σκεῦος -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel
σκηνή tent; stage
στρατιά army ~strategy
συγκαλέω call together ~gallo
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
σχεδόν near, approximately at
 ~ischemia
τριήρης trireme ~row
τρίς 3 times
ὑστεραῖος the next; later
χθές yesterday
χωρίον area; downwards

ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ πορείᾳ, ὡς ὀράτε, τὰ ἱερά οὐπω γίνονται· τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων ὁρῶ ὑμᾶς δεομένους· ἀνάγκη οὖν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι θύεσθαι περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου.» ἀναστάς τις εἶπε· «Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα ἡμῖν οὐ γίνονται τὰ ἱερά· ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου χθὲς ἤκοντος πλοίου ἤκουσά τινος ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής μέλλει ἥξειν πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις ἔχων.» ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἀναμένειν μὲν πᾶσιν ἐδόκει· ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνάγκη ἦν ἐξίεναι. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ πάλιν ἐθύετο εἰς τρίς, καὶ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. καὶ ἤδη καὶ ἐπὶ σκηνὴν ἰόντες τὴν Ξενοφώντος ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐκ ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἔφη ἐξαγαγεῖν μὴ γιγνομένων τῶν ἱερῶν.

Καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐθύετο, καὶ σχεδόν τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ μέλειν ἅπασιν ἐκυκλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ἱερά· τὰ δὲ θύματα ἐπελελοίπει. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἐξῆγον μὲν οὐ, συνεκάλεσαν δέ. εἶπεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν· «Ἴσως οἱ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσὶ καὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν καταλιπόντες τὰ σκεύη ἐν τῷ ἐρυμνῷ χωρίῳ ὡς εἰς μάχην

ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ |gait, march, ὥς ὀράτε, τὰ ἱερά |no longer, νεται·
 τῶν δ' |fit, suitable ὀρώ ὑμᾶς δεομένους· ἀνάγκη οὖν μοι
 δοκεῖ εἶναι |rush; sacrifice` αὐτοῦ τούτου.» ἀναστάς τις εἶπε·
 «Καὶ |like; ἄρα ἡμῖν οὐ γίγνεται τὰ ἱερά· ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ
 ἀπὸ τοῦ |self-willed, |yesterday, τος πλοίου ἤκουσά τινος ὅτι
 |accidental
 Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου |governor μέλλει ἥξειν πλοῖα
 καὶ |trireme ἔχων.» ἐκ τούτου δὲ |wait for μὲν πᾶσιν
 ἐδόκει· ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ |fit, suitable ἀνάγκη ἦν ἐξιέναι. καὶ ἐπὶ
 τούτῳ πάλιν |rush; sacri-3, καὶ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά.
 |fice |times
 καὶ ἤδη καὶ ἐπὶ |tent; ἰόντες τὴν Ξενοφώντος ἔλεγον ὅτι
 |stage
 οὐκ ἔχοιεν τὰ |fit, suitable. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἔφη |lead out μὴ
 γιγνομένων τῶν ἱερώων.

Καὶ πάλιν τῇ |the next; |rush; sacrifice` |about τι πᾶσα ἡ
 |later
 στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ |be in/on the mind` κυκλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ἱερά·
 τὰ δὲ |victim, |fail, not work. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ |lead out μὲν
 |sacrifice
 οὗ, |call together δέ. εἶπεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν· «Ἴσως οἱ
 πολέμιοι |collect, assemble εἰσὶ καὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν
 |leave behind, τὰ |thing, ` toῶν, |fortified |area; downwards, `χην
 |abandon |vessel

are, as you may see for yourselves, not yet favourable to the march; but meanwhile, I can see for myself that you are in need of provisions; accordingly we must narrow the sacrifice to the particular point.” Some one got up and said: «Naturally enough the victims are unfavourable, for, as I learnt from some one on a vessel which arrived here yesterday by accident, Cleander, the governor at Byzantium, intends coming here with ships and men of war.” Thereat they were all in favour of stopping; but they must needs go out for provisions, and with this object he again sacrificed three times, and the victims remained adverse. Things had now reached such a pass that the men actually came to Xenophon’s tent to proclaim that they had no provisions. His sole answer was that he would not lead them out till the victims were favourable.

So again the next day he sacrificed; and nearly the whole army, so strong was the general anxiety, flocked round the victims; and now the very victims themselves failed. So the generals, instead of leading out the army, called the men together. Xenophon, as was incumbent on him, spoke: «It is quite possible that the enemy are collected in a body, and we shall have to fight. If we were to leave our baggage in the strong place” (pointing overhead)

*vocabulary***ἄγγειον** vessel**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream**ἀποκωλύω** hinder from/from using**ἀσκέω** work on**ἀσκός** wine skin, leather bag**διασπείρω** scatter, dissipate**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-**δοράτιον** small spear**ἐγγύς** near**ἐνδεῖα** a lack, need**ἐπιπίπτω** fall upon, attack**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἡγεμῶν** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,
chief ~hegemony**θύλακος** (ῶ) sack**θύω** (ῶ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἴσχω** imitate, liken to, guess ~victor**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon
people**κώμη** village**ὅθεν** whence**πρίσμαι** buy**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**προθυμέομαι** (ῶ) be eager**προχωρέω** proceed, come forward**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,
mercenary ~strategy**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma**χωρίον** area; downwards**ὠνέομαι** buy

παρεσκευασμένοι ἴοιμεν, ἴσως ἂν τὰ ἱερὰ προχωροῖη
 ἡμῖν.» ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνέκραγον, ὥς οὐδὲν
 δέον εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἄγειν, ἀλλὰ θύεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα. καὶ
 πρόβατα μὲν οὐκέτι ἦν, βοῦς δὲ ὑπὸ ἀμάξης πριάμενοι
 ἐθύοντο· καὶ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνορος ἐδεήθη τοῦ Ἀρκάδος
 προθυμεῖσθαι, εἴ τι ἐν τούτῳ εἴη. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὥς ἐγένοντο.

Νέων δὲ ἦν μὲν στρατηγὸς κατὰ τὸ Χειρισόφου μέρος,
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὡς εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ ἐνδείᾳ,
 βουλόμενος αὐτοῖς χαρίζεσθαι, εὐρών τινα ἄνθρωπον
 Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς ἔφη κώμας ἐγγὺς εἰδέναι ὅθεν εἴη
 λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκήρυξε τὸν βουλόμενον ἰέναι ἐπὶ
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὡς ἡγεμόνος ἐσομένου. ἐξέρχονται δὴ σὺν
 δορατίοις καὶ ἀσκοῖς καὶ θυλάκοις καὶ ἄλλοις ἀγγείοις εἰς
 δισχιλίους ἀνθρώπους.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ διεσπείροντο ὡς
 ἐπὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν, ἐπιπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ Φαρναβάζου
 ἵππεῖς πρῶτοι· βεβοηθηκότες γὰρ ἦσαν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς,
 βουλόμενοι σὺν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, εἰ δύναιτο, ἀποκωλύσαι

παρεσκευασμένοι |imitate, liken ; ἂν τὰ ἱερὰ |proceed, come
 |to, guess forward
 ἡμῖν.» ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ |soldier, |yell, scream , ὥς οὐδὲν
 |mercenary
 δέον εἰς τὸ |area; down\wards ἄλλὰ |rush; sacrifice . ἀχίστα. καὶ
 |cattle, flocks, ἐν οὐκέτι ἦν, βοῦς δὲ ὑπὸ |wagon πριάμενοι
 |herds
 |rush; sacrifice ` Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνορος ἐδεήθη τοῦ Ἀρκάδος
 |be eager , εἴ τι ἐν τούτῳ εἴη. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὥς ἐγένοντο.

Νέων δὲ ἦν μὲν στρατηγὸς κατὰ τὸ Χειρισόφου μέρος,
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὥς εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ |a lack, need
 βουλόμενος αὐτοῖς |gratify , εὐρών τινα ἄνθρωπον
 Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς ἔφη |village |near εἰδέναι |whence ἥ
 λαβεῖν τὰ |fit, suitable , |be a henchman, |ουλόμενον ἰέναι ἐπὶ
 |summon people
 τὰ |fit, suitable , ὥς |leader ἔσομένου. ἐξέρχονται δὴ σὺν
 |small spear καὶ ἄσκοῖς καὶ |sack καὶ ἄλλοις |vessel εἰς
 |2000 ἀνθρώπους.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς |village καὶ |scatter, ὥς
 |dissipate
 ἐπὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν, |fall upon, attack αὐτοῖς οἱ Φαρναβάζου
 ἱππεῖς πρῶτοι· βεβοηθηκότες γὰρ ἦσαν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς,
 βουλόμενοι σὺν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, εἰ δύναιτο, |hinder from/from
 |using

«and sally forth prepared for battle, the victims might favour us.” But the soldiers, on hearing this proposal, cried out, «No need to take us inside that place; better sacrifice with all speed.” Now sheep there were none any longer. So they purchased oxen from under a wagon and sacrificed; and Xenophon begged Cleanor the Arcadian to superintend the sacrifice on his behalf, in case there might be some change now. But even so there was no improvement.

Now Neon was general in place of Cheirisophus, and seeing the men suffering so cruelly from want, he was willing to do them a good turn. So he got hold of some Heracleot or other who said he knew of villages close by from which they could get provisions, and proclaimed by herald: «If any one liked to come out and get provisions, be it known that he, Neon, would be their leader.” So out came the men with spears, and wine skins and sacks and other vessels—two thousand strong in all.

But when they had reached the villages and began to scatter for the purpose of foraging, Pharnabazus’s cavalry were the first to fall upon them. They had come to the aid of the Bithynians, wishing, if

vocabulary

ἄθυμος (ῥ) having low morale ~fume
 ἄμαξα wagon
 ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume
 ἀναφεύγω escape, flee up
 ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
 ἀποφεύγω avoid, escape, go free
 ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
 δασύς hairy, brushy
 δειπνοποιέω make dinner
 δύσμη sunset
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐξαπίνης suddenly
 ἐπιγίγνομαι succeed, come after
 ~genus
 ἱερεῖον animal victim ~hieroglyph

κατακαίνω kill
 κινέω (ι) set in motion, move, remove
 ~kinetic
 κραυγή screaming, shouting
 λάσιος shaggy, overgrown ~lanolin
 μείων less, smaller
 μέχρι as far as, until
 νυκτερεύω pass the night
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
 ~hoplite
 πεντακόσιοι 500
 προφύλαξ vanguard, guard officer
 σφαγιάζομαι sacrifice an animal
 τρέχω run, spin
 φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery
 χωρίον area; downwards

τοὺς Ἑλληνας μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὗτοι οἱ ἱππεῖς ἀποκτείνουσι τῶν ἀνδρῶν οὐ μείον πεντακοσίους· οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀνέφυγον.

Ἐκ τούτου ἀπαγγέλλει τις ταῦτα τῶν ἀποφευγόντων εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐγεγένητο τὰ ἱερὰ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, λαβὼν βοὺν ὑπὸ ἀμάξης οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἄλλα ἱερεῖα, σφαγιασάμενος ἐβοήθει καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι τριάκοντα ἐτῶν ἅπαντες. καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς λοιποὺς ἄνδρας εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικνούνται.

Καὶ ἤδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς ἦν καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μάλ' ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο, καὶ ἐξαπίνης διὰ τῶν λασίων τῶν Βιθυνῶν τινες ἐπιγενόμενοι τοῖς προφύλαξι τοὺς μὲν κατέκαινον τοὺς δὲ ἐδίωξαν μέχρι εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ κραυγῆς γενομένης εἰς τὰ ὅπλα πάντες ἔδραμον οἱ Ἕλληνες· καὶ διώκειν μὲν καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι· δασέα γὰρ ἦν τὰ χωρία· ἐν δὲ τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐνυκτέρευον φυλαττόμενοι ἱκανοῖς φύλαξι.

τοὺς |Greek μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὗτοι οἱ ἱππεῖς

ἀποκτείνουσι τῶν ἀνδρῶν οὐ |less, |500 οἱ δὲ
smaller

λοιποὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος |escape, flee up

Ἐκ τούτου |announce, or- |ς ταῦτα τῶν |avoid, escape, go εἰς
der, promise free

τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐγεγένητο τὰ

ἱερὰ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, λαβὼν βοὴν ὑπὸ |wagon οὐ γὰρ ἦν

ἄλλα |animal, |sacrifice an animal βοήθει καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι
victim

τριάκοντα ἐτῶν ἅπαντες. καὶ |take up, re- τοὺς λοιποὺς
cover, resume

ἄνδρας εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικνοῦνται.

Καὶ ἤδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου |sunset ἦν καὶ οἱ |Greek μάλ'

|having low morale. |make dinner , καὶ |suddenly διὰ τῶν

λασίων τῶν Βιθυνῶν τινες |succeed τοῖς |vanguard,
guard officer

τοὺς μὲν |kill τοὺς δὲ ἐδίωξαν μέχρι εἰς τὸ

στρατόπεδον. καὶ |screaming, , ἐνομένης εἰς τὰ |tool πάντες
shouting

|run, spin οἱ |Greek καὶ διώκειν μὲν καὶ |move, τὸ
remove

στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς οὐκ |safe, easy, εἰ εἶναι |hairy, γὰρ
steady, careful brushy

ἦν τὰ |area; downwards ἵς |tool |pass the night ὑλαττόμενοι

ἱκανοῖς |guard;
sentry

possible, in conjunction with the latter, to hinder the Hellenes from entering Phrygia. These troopers killed no less than five hundred of the men; the rest fled for the lives up into the hill country.

News of the catastrophe was presently brought into camp by one of those who had escaped, and Xenophon, seeing that the victims had not been favourable on that day, took a wagon bullock, in the absence of other sacrificial beasts, offered it up, and started for the rescue, he and the rest under thirty years of age to the last man. Thus they picked up the remnant of Neon's party and returned to camp.

It was now about sunset; and the Hellenes in deep despondency were making their evening meal, when all of a sudden, through bush and brake, a party of Bithynians fell upon the pickets, cutting down some and chasing the rest into camp. In the midst of screams and shouts the Hellenes ran to their arms, one and all; yet to pursue or move the camp in the night seemed hardly safe, for the ground was thickly grown with bush; all they could do was to strengthen the outposts and keep watch under arms the livelong night.

*vocabulary***ἀετός** eagle ~avis**αἶσιος** auspicious ~etiology**ἄλφιτον** barley meal**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume**ἀνδράποδον** -ς slave ~androgynous**ἀποσταυρόω** fence off**ἀποταφρεύω** entrench**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

εἴσοδος (f) entrance ~odometer**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet**ἔξοδος** (f) leaving, way out**ἐρυμνός** fortified, impregnable**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἱερεῖον** animal victim ~hieroglyph**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon
people**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

πύλη gate ~Thermopylae**σκεῦος** -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

τάφος (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry

~phylactery

χωρίον area; downwards

6.5

Τὴν μὲν νύκτα οὕτω διήγαγον· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν χωρίον ἡγοῦντο· οἱ δὲ εἶποντο ἀναλαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη. πρὶν δὲ ἀρίστου ὥραν εἶναι ἀπετάφρευον ἥ ἢ εἴσοδος ἦν εἰς τὸ χωρίον, καὶ ἀπεσταύρωσαν ἅπαν, καταλιπόντες τρεῖς πύλας. καὶ πλοῖον ἐξ Ἡρακλείας ἤκεν ἄλφιστα ἄγον καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ οἶνον.

Πρῶ δ' ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν ἐθύετο ἐπ' ἐξόδῳ, καὶ γίγνεται τὰ ἱερὰ ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου ἱερείου. καὶ ἤδη τέλος ἐχόντων τῶν ἱερῶν ὁρᾷ αἰετὸν αἴσιον ὁ μάντις Ἀρηξίων Παρράσιος, καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα. καὶ διαβάντες τὴν τάφρον τὰ ὅπλα τίθενται, καὶ ἐκήρυξαν ἀριστήσαντας ἐξιέναι τοὺς στρατιώτας σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, τὸν δὲ ὄχλον καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι πάντες ἐξῆσαν, Νέων δὲ οὐ· ἐδόκει γὰρ κάλλιστον εἶναι τοῦτον φύλακα καταλιπεῖν τῶν ἐπὶ στρατοπέδου. ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται

6.5

Τὴν μὲν νύκτα οὕτω |lead through; |pass a time
|pass a time

στρατηγοὶ εἰς τὸ |fortified |area; downwards - οἱ δὲ εἶποντο

|take up, re- τὰ |tool καὶ τὰ |thing, tool, vessel |ἀρίστου
|cover, resume

ὥραν εἶναι |entrench ἧ ἧ |entrance ἦν εἰς τὸ |area; downwards

καὶ |fence off ἅπαν, καταλιπόντες τρεῖς |gate καὶ

πλοῖον ἐξ Ἡρακλείας ἦκεν |barley meal, οὐ καὶ |animal καὶ
|victim

οἶνον.

Πρῶ δ' ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν |rush; sacril-|leaving, way out, |εται
|fice

τὰ ἱερὰ ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου |animal καὶ ἤδη τέλος
|victim

ἐχόντων τῶν ἱερῶν ὄρα |eagle |auspicious|seer Ἀρηξίων

Παρράσιος, καὶ ἡγείσθαι κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα. καὶ

|pass over, cross, |ditch τὰ |tool τίθενται, καὶ |be a henchman, sum-
|mon people

|eat lunch ἐξίεναι τοὺς στρατιώτας σὺν τοῖς |tool

τὸν δὲ ὄχλον καὶ τὰ |slave αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν. οἱ

μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι πάντες |go forth; |is possible
|is possible

κάλλιστον εἶναι τοῦτον |guard; καταλιπεῖν τῶν ἐπὶ
|sentry

στρατοπέδον. ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ |captain καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται

6.5

And so they spent the night, but with day-dawn the generals led the way into the natural fastness, and the others picked up their arms and baggage and followed the lead. Before the breakfast-hour arrived, they had fenced off with a ditch the only side on which lay ingress into the place, and had palisaded off the whole, leaving only three gates. Anon a ship from Heraclea arrived bringing barleymeal, victim animals, and wine.

Xenophon was up betimes, and made the usual offering before starting on an expedition, and at the first victim the sacrifice was favourable. Just as the sacrifice ended, the seer, Arexion the Parrhasian, caught sight of an eagle, which boded well, and bade Xenophon lead on. So they crossed the trench and grounded arms. Then proclamation was made by herald for the soldiers to breakfast and start on an expedition under arms; the mob of sutlers and the captured slaves would be left in camp. Accordingly the mass of the troops set out. Neon alone remained; for it seemed best to leave that general and his men to guard the contents of the camp. But when the officers and soldiers had left them in the lurch, they

vocabulary

ἄθρόος grouped
αἰσχύνω (ō) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar
ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse
ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail
ἄταφος unburied
διέρχομαι pierce, traverse
ἐντός within
ἐξαίφνης suddenly
ἐξείμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐπιλαμβάνω take, attack, seize
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
θάπτω bury ~epitaph
καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit ~ceratopsia
κώμη village
λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop
μεσώω be in the middle
ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how

great

οὐρά tail
πεντεκαίδεκα 15
πέρας -τος (n, 3) cord; bound, crux, outcome ~prove
περάω cross over, drive across; sell as a slave ~pierce
προάγω lead forward, advance
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιά army ~strategy
συμφέρω bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear
τεσσαράκοντα forty ~trapezoid
τετταράκοντα forty
ὑπερβάλλω cause to go beyond; delay ~ballistic
φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle ~phalanx

ἀπέλειπον αὐτόν, αἰσχυνόμενοι μὴ ἐφέπεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων ἐξιόντων, κατέλιπον αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὲρ πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα ἔτη.

Καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἔμενον, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. πρὶν δὲ πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια διεληλυθέναι ἐνέτυχον ἤδη νεκροῖς· καὶ τὴν οὐρὰν τοῦ κέρατος ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους φανέντας νεκροὺς ἔθαπτον πάντας ὁπόσους ἐπελάμβανε τὸ κέρας. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς πρώτους ἔθαιψαν, προαγαγόντες καὶ τὴν οὐρὰν αὐθις ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους τῶν ἀτάφων ἔθαπτον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ὁπόσους ἐπελάμβανεν ἡ στρατιά. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἦκον τὴν ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν, ἔνθα ἔκειντο ἀθρόοι, συνενεγκόντες αὐτοὺς ἔθαιψαν.

Ἦδη δὲ πέρα μεσοῦσης τῆς ἡμέρας προάγοντες τὸ στράτευμα ἔξω τῶν κωμῶν ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅτι τις ὁρῶν ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ ἐξαίφνης ὁρῶσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπερβάλλοντας κατὰ λόφους τινὰς ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος ἱππέας τε πολλοὺς

ἀπέλειπον αὐτόν, |spoil, disgrace μὴ |drive, meet, follow

ἄλλων |go forth; κατέλιπον αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὲρ πέντε καὶ
|is possible

τετταράκοντα ἔτη.

Καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἔμενον, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. πρὶν δὲ

|15 στάδια |pierce, traverse ἐνέτυχον ἤδη νεκροῖς·

καὶ τὴν |tail τοῦ κέρατος ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς

πρώτους φανέντας νεκροὺς |bury πάντας |as/how many/great

|take, attack, τὸ κέρας. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς πρώτους |bury ,
|seize

|lead forward, ad- καὶ τὴν |tail αὐθις ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς
|vance

πρώτους τῶν |unburied |bury τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον |as/how many/great

|take, attack, ἡ στρατιά. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἦκον τὴν ἐκ
|seize

τῶν |village ἔνθα ἔκειντο |grouped συνενεγκόντες αὐτοὺς

|bury

Ἦδη δὲ πέρα |be in the middle ἡμέρας |lead forward, τὸ
|advance

|army ἔξω τῶν |village ἐλάμβανον τὰ |fit, suitable ὅ

τι τις ὁρώη |within τῆς |rank of battle :αὶ |suddenly ὁρώσι

τοὺς πολεμίους |cause to go be- κατὰ |neck, crest on a ἐκ τοῦ
|yond; delay |helmet, hilltop

ἐναντίου, τεταγμένους ἐπὶ |rank of battle πέας τε πολλοὺς

were so ashamed to stop in camp while the rest marched out, that they too set out, leaving only those above five and forty years of age.

These then stayed, while the rest set out on the march. Before they had gone two miles, they stumbled upon dead bodies, and when they had brought up the rear of the column in a line with the first bodies to be seen, they began digging graves and burying all included in the column from end to end. After burying the first batch, they advanced, and again bringing the rear even with the first unburied bodies which appeared, they buried in the same way all which the line of troops included. Finally, reaching the road that led out of the villages where the bodies lay thick together, they collected them and laid them in a common grave.

It was now about midday, when pushing forward the troops up to the villages without entering them, they proceeded to seize provisions, laying hands on everything they could set eyes on under cover of their lines; when suddenly they caught sight of the enemy cresting certain hillocks in front of them, duly marshalled in line—a large body of cavalry and infantry. It was

vocabulary

ἀκέρατος unmixed; unharmed
ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance
ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse
ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
διακόσιοι (ἄ) two hundred
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐμπίπτω fall into; attack ~petal
ἐπιβοηθέω come to aid
ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near
ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow
 ~trophy
ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
ἥσυχος quiet
καθοράω look down ~panorama
καταχωρίζω emplace; record
λόχος ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis
πεντεκαίδεκα 15
πλέθρον 30 meters or its square
 ~plethora
προάγω lead forward, advance
προηγέομαι go first
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters
συνδοκέω seem good also
σφαγιάζομαι sacrifice an animal
σφάγιον victim, sacrifice
ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea
τελευταῖος last, final
τοίνυν well, then
φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle
 ~phalanx
φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery

καὶ πεζούς· καὶ γὰρ Σπιθριδάτης καὶ Ῥαθίνης ἦκον παρὰ Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν δύναμιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατείδον τοὺς Ἑλλήνας οἱ πολέμοι, ἔστησαν ἀπέχοντες αὐτῶν ὅσον πεντεκαίδεκα σταδίους.

Ἐκ τούτου εὐθὺς ὁ Ἀρηξίων ὁ μάντις τῶν Ἑλλήνων σφαγιάζεται, καὶ ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου καλὰ τὰ σφάγια. ἔνθα δὴ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· «Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, ἐπιτάξασθαι τῇ φάλαγγι λόχους φύλακας ἵν' ἂν που δέῃ ὧσιν οἱ ἐπιβοηθήσοντες τῇ φάλαγγι καὶ οἱ πολέμοι τεταραγμένοι ἐμπίπτωσιν εἰς τεταγμένους καὶ ἀκεραίους.» συνεδόκει ταῦτα πᾶσιν. «Ὑμεῖς μὲν τοίνυν,» ἔφη, «προηγείσθε τὴν πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους, ὥς μὴ ἐστήκωμεν, ἐπεὶ ὥφθημεν καὶ εἶδομεν τοὺς πολεμίους· ἐγὼ δὲ ἦξω τοὺς τελευταίους λόχους καταχωρίσας ἥπερ ὑμῖν δοκεῖ.»

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἥσυχoi προῆγον, ὁ δὲ τρεῖς ἀφελὼν τὰς τελευταίας τάξεις ἀνὰ διακοσίους ἄνδρας τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν ἐπέτρεψεν ἐφέπεσθαι ἀπολιπόντας ὥς πλέθρον·

καὶ πεζούς· καὶ γὰρ Σπιθριδάτης καὶ Παθίνης ἦκον παρὰ
Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν δύναμιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ |look down .οὺς

|Greek οἱ πολέμοι, ἔστησαν |ward off, drive 'off, refrain, be at some
distance

|15 σταδίου.

Ἐκ τούτου εὐθὺς ὁ Ἀρηξίων ὁ |seer τῶν |Greek

σφαγιάζεται, καὶ ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου καλὰ τὰ

|victim, . ἔνθα δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· «Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες
sacrifice

στρατηγοί, |enjoin; place τῇ |rank of |ambush, |guard; ἔν'
near battle band, sentry

ἄν που δέη ὦσιν οἱ |come to aid |child-
birth |rank of battle .

οἱ πολέμοι |mess things up ἐμπίπτωσιν εἰς τεταγμένους

καὶ |unmixed; . » |seem good also ἵτα πᾶσιν. «Ὑμεῖς μὲν
unharmmed

|well, then ἔφη, «|go first τὴν πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους, ὥς

μὴ ἐστήκωμεν, ἐπεὶ ὥφθημεν καὶ εἶδομεν τοὺς πολεμίους·

ἐγὼ δὲ ἥξω τοὺς |last, final |ambush, |emplace; record ἥπερ

ὑμῖν δοκεῖ.»
band,
child-
birth

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν |quiet |lead forward, δὲ τρεῖς |take away . ἄς
advance

|last, final τάξεις ἀνὰ |two hundred ἄνδρας τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ

δεξιὸν |entrust, de-|drive, meet, follow τόντας ὥς |30 me-
cide, allow ters or its
square

Spithridates and Rhathines, sent by Pharnabazus with their force at their backs. As soon as the enemy caught sight of the Hellenes, they stood still, about two miles distant.

Then Arexion the seer sacrificed, and at the first essay the victims were favourable. Whereupon Xenophon addressed the other generals: «I would advise, sirs, that we should detach one or more flying columns to support our main attack, so that in case of need at any point we may have reserves in readiness to assist our main body, and the enemy, in the confusion of battle, may find himself attacking the unbroken lines of troops not hitherto engaged.” These views approved themselves to all. «Do you then,” said he, «lead on the vanguard straight at the enemy. Do not let us stand parleying here, now that we have caught sight of him and he of us. I will detach the hindmost companies in the way we have decided upon and follow you.”

After that they quietly advanced, and he, withdrawing the rear-rank companies in three brigades consisting of a couple of hundred men apiece, commissioned the first on the right to follow the main body at the distance of a hundred feet.

vocabulary

ἀγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic
ἀμαχεί unresisted
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
δύσπορος hard to pass, get
ἐθελούσιος voluntary, optional
ἐνθένδε hence
ἐπιπίπτω fall upon, attack
εὐώνυμος honored; left-hand
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
ἴσκω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor
ἴσχω restrain, hold back ~ischemia
κρείσσω more powerful; better
λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
νάπος -εος (n, 3) gully
παρεγγύα command
παρεγγυάω entrust; pass an order

παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet
πορεία gait, march
πότερος which, whichever of two
πρόειμι to have been before, earlier
 ~ion
προξενέω protect, handle for
πυρρίας red haired
σπουδή zeal; (dat) with difficulty,
 hastily ~repudiate
συνέρχομαι come together
σωτηρία saving, preservation
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military
 unit
ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
χωρίζω divide; distinguish, pull down

Σαμόλας Ἀχαιοὺς ταύτης ἤρχε τῆς τάξεως· τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῷ μέσῳ ἐχώρισεν ἔπεσθαι· Πυρρίας Ἀρκὰς ταύτης ἤρχε· τὴν δὲ μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ· Φρασίας Ἀθηναῖος ταύτη ἐφειστήκει. προϊόντες δέ, ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ ἡγούμενοι ἐπὶ νάπει μεγάλῳ καὶ δυσπόρῳ, ἔστησαν ἀγνοοῦντες εἰ διαβατέον εἴη τὸ νάπος. καὶ παρεγγυῶσι στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς παριέναι ἐπὶ τὸ ἡγούμενον. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν θαυμάσας ὅ τι τὸ ἴσχον εἴη τὴν πορείαν καὶ ταχὺ ἀκούων τὴν παρεγγύην, ἐλαύνει ἢ τάχιστα. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, λέγει Σοφαίνετος, πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν στρατηγῶν, ὅτι βουλῆς οὐκ ἄξιον εἴη εἰ διαβατέον ἐστὶ τοιοῦτον νάπος.

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν σπουδῇ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν· Ἄλλ' «ἵστε μὲν με, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδένα πω κίνδυνον προξενήσαντα ὑμῖν ἐθελούσιον· οὐ γὰρ δόξης ὀρώ δεομένους ὑμᾶς εἰς ἀνδρειότητα, ἀλλὰ σωτηρίας. νῦν δὲ οὕτως ἔχει· ἀμαχεὶ μὲν ἐνθὲνδε οὐκ ἔστιν ἀπελθεῖν· ἦν γὰρ μὴ ἡμεῖς ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι ἡμῖν ὁπότεν ἀπίωμεν ἔψονται καὶ ἐπιπεσοῦνται. ὁρᾶτε δὴ πότερον κρεῖττον ἵεναι ἐπὶ τοὺς

Σαμόλας Ἀχαιὸς ταύτης ἦρχε τῆς τάξεως· τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῷ

μέσῳ |divide; distinguish, pull|red haired Ἀρκὰς ταύτης ἦρχε·
|down

τὴν δὲ μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ |honored; left-hand Ἰσὺς Ἀθηναῖος ταύτη

|set; (mp)|to have been ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ ἡγούμενοι
|come/be near,|before, earlier

|direct, stop ἐπὶ |gully· μεγάλην καὶ |hard to pass, get ,σαν |be ignorant of ἵ

|pass over, cross , τὸ |gully . καὶ |entrust; pass στρατηγούς
|an order

καὶ |captain |dangle; pass ἰ τὸ ἡγούμενον. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
|over, allow

θαυμάσας ὅ τι τὸ |hold back, τὴν |gait, καὶ ταχὺ ἀκούων
|march

τὴν παρεγγύην, ἐλαύνει ἥ τάχιστα. ἐπεὶ δὲ |come together

λέγει Σοφαίνετος, πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν στρατηγῶν, ὅτι

βουλῆς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶναι ἐπὶ |pass over, cross ἡ τοιοῦτον |gully .

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν |zeal; |take under one's support, ἅλ' «ἴστε
(dat) with|seize; speak up; imagine

μέν με, ὦ ἄνδρες, εὐθένα πῶς κίνδυνον |protect, handle
|difficulty, hastily |for

ὑμῖν |voluntary, οὐ γὰρ δόξης ὀρώ δεομένους ὑμᾶς εἰς
|optional

ἀνδριότητα, ἀλλὰ σωτηρίας. νῦν δὲ οὕτως ἔχει· |unresisted

μὲν |hence οὐκ ἔστιν ἀπελθεῖν· ἦν γὰρ μὴ ἡμεῖς |imitate, liken
|to, guess

τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι ἡμῖν ὁπότεν ἀπίωμεν εἴπονται καὶ

|fall upon, attack ὅρατε δὴ |which, . . .ρεῖπτον ἵνα ἐπὶ τοὺς
|whichever

Samolas the Achaean was in command of this brigade. The duty of the second, under the command of Pyrrhias the Arcadian, was to follow in the centre. The last was posted on the left, with Phrasias, an Athenian, in command. As they advanced, the vanguard reached a large and difficult woody glen, and halted, not knowing whether the obstacle needed to be crossed or not. They passed down the word for the generals and officers to come forward to the front. Xenophon, wondering what it was that stopped the march, and presently hearing the above order passed along the ranks, rode up with all speed. As soon as they were met, Sophaenetus, as the eldest general, stated his opinion that the question, whether a gully of that kind ought to be crossed or not, was not worth discussing.

Xenophon, with some ardour, retorted: «You know, sirs, I have not been in the habit hitherto of introducing you to danger which you might avoid. It is not your reputation for courage surely that is at stake, but your safe return home. But now the matter stands thus: It is impossible to retire from this point without a battle; if we do not advance against the enemy ourselves, he will follow us as soon as we have turned our backs and attack us. Consider, then; is it better to go

vocabulary

ἀποχωρέω go away from, retreat
ἀρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon
γούν at least then
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διαβατός crossable, fordable
διαπορεύω carry over, through
διέρχομαι pierce, traverse
διπλάσιος twofold, double
ἐλπίζω (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act)
 cause to do so (rare) ~voluptuary
ἐμποιέω make inside of ~poet
ἐπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
εὐπορος easily passed; rich
ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

ἥμισυς half ~hemisphere
θάρασος boldness, over-boldness
θεάομαι look at, behold, consider
 ~theater
μεταβάλλω alter, transform
νάπος -εος (n, 3) gully
ὄπισθεν behind, hereafter
ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
 ~hoplite
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
πόσος how many, much, far?
προβάλλω throw before; propose;
 (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate
 ~ballistic
σωτηρία saving, preservation
τοσόσδε this much
φοβερός frightful, afraid
χωρίον area; downwards

ἄνδρας προβαλλομένους τὰ ὄπλα ἢ μεταβαλλομένους
 ὄπισθεν ἡμῶν ἐπιόντας τοὺς πολεμίους θεᾶσθαι. ἵστε
 μέντοι ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἀπιέναι ἀπὸ πολεμίων οὐδενὶ καλῶ
 ἔοικε, τὸ δὲ ἐφέπεσθαι καὶ τοῖς κακίοσι θάρρος ἐμποιεῖ.
 ἐγὼ γοῦν ἥδιον ἂν σὺν ἡμίσεσιν ἐπιοίην ἢ σὺν διπλασίοις
 ἀποχωροίην. καὶ τούτους οἶδ' ὅτι ἐπιόντων μὲν ἡμῶν
 οὐδ' ὑμεῖς ἐλπίζετε δέξεσθαι ἡμᾶς, ἀπιόντων δὲ πάντες
 ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι τολμήσουσιν ἐφέπεσθαι. τὸ δὲ διαβάντας
 ὄπισθεν νάπος χαλεπὸν ποιήσασθαι μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι
 ἂρ' οὐχὶ καὶ ἀρπάσαι ἄξιον; τοῖς μὲν γὰρ πολεμίους ἐγὼ
 βουλοίμην ἂν εὖπορα πάντα φαίνεσθαι ὥστε ἀποχωρεῖν·
 ἡμᾶς δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου δεῖ διδάσκεσθαι ὅτι οὐκ ἔστι
 μὴ νικῶσι σωτηρία. θαυμάζω δ' ἔγωγε καὶ τὸ νάπος
 τοῦτο εἴ τις μᾶλλον φοβερὸν νομίζει εἶναι τῶν ἄλλων ὧν
 διαπεπορεύμεθα χωρίων. πῶς γὰρ διαβατὸν τὸ πεδίον, εἰ
 μὴ νικήσομεν τοὺς ἱππέας; πῶς δὲ ἂ διεληλύθαμεν ὄρη,
 ἣν πελτασταὶ τοσοῖδε ἐφέπωνται; ἣν δὲ δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν
 ἐπὶ θάλατταν, πόσον τι νάπος ὁ Πόντος; ἔνθα οὔτε πλοῖα
 ἔστι

ἄνδρας |throw before; propose;|tool ἢ |alter, transform
 (mp) pretend, abandon,
 |behind, |nominate
 |hereafter ἡμῶν ἐπιόντας τοὺς πολεμίους θεᾶσθαι. ἵστε
 μέντοι ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἀπιέναι ἀπὸ πολεμίων οὐδενὶ καλῶ
 ἔοικε, τὸ δὲ |drive, meet, follow οἷς κακίοσι |boldness |make inside of
 ἐγὼ |at |sweet ἂν σὺν |half ἐπιοίην ἢ σὺν |twofold,
 |least |double
 |go away then from, καὶ τούτους οἶδ' ὅτι ἐπιόντων μὲν ἡμῶν
 |retreat
 οὐδ' ὑμεῖς ἐλπίζετε δέξεσθαι ἡμᾶς, ἀπιόντων δὲ πάντες
 ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι τολμήσουσιν |drive, meet, follow ᾗ |pass over, cross
 |behind, |gully χαλεπὸν ποιήσασθαι μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι
 |hereafter
 ἄρ' οὐχὶ καὶ |carry off, seize -ν; τοῖς μὲν γὰρ πολεμίοις ἐγὼ
 βουλοίμην ἂν |easily πάντα φαίνεσθαι ὥστε |go away
 |passed; |from, retreat
 |rich ἡμᾶς δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου δεῖ διδάσκεσθαι ὅτι οὐκ ἔστι
 μὴ νικῶσι σωτηρία. θαυμάζω δ' ἔγωγε καὶ τὸ |gully
 τοῦτο εἴ τις μᾶλλον |frightful, νομίζει εἶναι τῶν ἄλλων ὧν
 |afraid
 |carry over, through ἁωρίων. πῶς γὰρ |crossable, τὸ πεδῖον, εἰ
 |fordable
 μὴ νικήσομεν τοὺς ἱππέας; πῶς δὲ ἂ |pierce, traverse ὄρη,
 ἣν |light troops τοσοῖδε |drive, meet, follow ᾗ δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν
 ἐπὶ θάλατταν, |how many|gully ὁ Πόντος; ἔνθα οὔτε πλοῖα
 |much, far?
 ἔστι

and meet the foe with arms advanced, or with arms reversed to watch him as he assails us on our rear? You know this at any rate, that to retire before an enemy has nothing glorious about it, whereas attack engenders courage even in a coward. For my part, I would rather at any time attack with half my men than retreat with twice the number. As to these fellows, if we attack them, I am sure you do not really expect them to await us; though, if we retreat, we know for certain they will be emboldened to pursue us. Nay, if the result of crossing is to place a difficult gully behind us when we are on the point of engaging, surely that is an advantage worth seizing. At least, if it were left to me, I would choose that everything should appear smooth and passable to the enemy, which may invite retreat; but for ourselves we may bless the ground which teaches us that except in victory we have no deliverance. It astonishes me that any one should deem this particular gully a whit more terrible than any of the other barriers which we have successfully passed. How impassable was the plain, had we failed to conquer their cavalry! how insurmountable the mountains already traversed by us, with all their peltasts in hot pursuit at our heels! Nay, when we have safely reached the sea, the Pontus will present a somewhat formidable gully, when we have neither vessels to convey us

vocabulary

ἄθροός grouped
αἵσιος auspicious ~etiology
ἀνάριστος (αἶ) without dinner
ἀνδρεῖος of a man, manly
ἀντιλέγω contradict, oppose
ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue
ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat
αὔριον tomorrow
γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge
δειπνέω eat, dine
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
ἐκμηρύομαι unwind
ἐννοέω consider
ἐντεῦθεν thence
ἐξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

ἴσχω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor
κρείσσων more powerful; better
λοχαγός (ἄ) captain
νάπος -εος (n, 3) gully
οἰωνός vulture, large bird, bird of prey; omen ~avis
ὁμόσε to the same spot ~homoerotic
ὄνομαστί by name
ὅπου where
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
πάντως by all means
παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage
πέραν (ἄ) on the other side, across
σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
σκηνέω camp
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
σφάγιον victim, sacrifice
φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle
 ~phalanx

τὰ ἀπάξοντα οὔτε σῖτος ᾧ θρεψόμεθα μένοντες, δεήσει
 δέ, ἣν θᾶπτον ἐκεῖ γενώμεθα, θᾶπτον πάλιν ἐξιέναι ἐπὶ
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. οὐκοῦν νῦν κρεῖττον ἡρισθηκότας μάχεσθαι
 ἢ αὔριον ἀναρίστους. ἄνδρες, τά τε ἱερὰ ἡμῖν καλὰ οἷ
 τε οἶωνοὶ αἴσιοι τά τε σφάγια κάλλιστα· ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς
 ἄνδρας. οὐδεῖ ἔτι τούτους, ἐπεὶ ἡμᾶς πάντως εἶδον, ἡδέως
 δειπνήσαι οὐδ' ὅπου ἂν θέλωσι σκηνῆσαι.»

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον, καὶ οὐδείς
 ἀντέλεγε. καὶ ὃς ἡγεῖτο, παραγγείλας διαβαίνειν ἥ
 ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανε τοῦ νάπους ὧν· θᾶπτον γὰρ ἀθρόον
 ἐδόκει ἂν οὕτω πέραν γενέσθαι τὸ στράτευμα ἢ εἰ
 κατὰ τὴν γέφυραν ἢ ἐπὶ τῷ νάπει ἦν ἐξεμηρύοντο.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, παριῶν παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἔλεγεν·
 Ἄνδρες, ἀναμμνήσκεσθε ὅσας δὴ μάχας σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς
 ὁμόσε ἰόντες νενικήκατε καὶ οἷα πάσχουσιν οἱ πολεμίους
 φεύγοντες, καὶ τοῦτο ἐννοήσατε ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις τῆς
 Ἑλλάδος ἐσμέν. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ἡγεμόνι τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ
 ἀλλήλους παρακαλεῖτε ὀνομασί. ἡδύ τοι ἀνδρεῖόν τι καὶ

τὰ |lead away, back' εἰ σῖτος ᾧ θρεψόμεθα μένοντες, δεήσει
 δέ, ἣν θάττον ἐκεῖ γενώμεθα, θάττον πάλιν ἐξιέναι ἐπὶ
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. |not so?; and so_ ἔττον |eat lunch μάχεσθαι
 ἣ |tomor- |without ἄνδρες, τά τε ἱερὰ ἡμῖν καλὰ οἷ
 |row |dinner
 τε |vulture, |auspicious' τε |victim, κάλλιστα· |imitate, liken οὐς
 |eagle, |sacrifice |to, guess
 |omen
 ἄνδρας· οὐ δεῖ ἐτι τούτους, ἐπεὶ ἡμᾶς |by all means_ ν, ἡδέως
 |eat, dine οὐδ' ὅπου ἂν θέλωσι |camp »
 |thence οἱ |captain ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον, καὶ οὐδεὶς
 |contradict, καὶ ὃς ἡγείτο, παραγγείλας |pass over, cross
 |oppose
 ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανε τοῦ |gully ὧν· θάττον γὰρ |grouped
 ἐδόκει ἂν οὕτω |across γενέσθαι τὸ |army ἣ εἰ
 κατὰ τὴν |dam, dike; bridge· τῷ |gully ἣν |unwind
 ἐπεὶ δέ |pass over, cross ριῶν παρὰ τὴν |rank of battle· ἐγεν·
 Ἄνδρες, ἀναμνησέσθε ὅσας δὴ μάχας σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς
 |to the same spot νικήκατε καὶ οἷα πάσχουσιν οἱ πολεμίους
 φεύγοντες, καὶ τοῦτο |consider ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις τῆς
 Ἑλλάδος ἐσμέν. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ἡγεμόνι τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ
 ἀλλήλους παρακαλεῖτε |by name ἡδύ τοι |of a man, manly·

away nor corn to keep us alive whilst we stop. But we shall no sooner be there than we must be off again to get provisions. Surely it is better to fight to-day after a good breakfast than to-morrow on an empty stomach. Sirs, the offerings are favourable to us, the omens are propitious, the victims more than promising; let us attack the enemy! Now that they have had a good look at us, these fellows must not be allowed to enjoy their dinners or choose a camp at their own sweet will."

After that the officers bade him lead on. None gainsaid, and he led the way. His orders were to cross the gully, where each man chanced to find himself. By this method, as it seemed to him, the troops would more quickly mass themselves on the far side than was possible, if they defiled along the bridge which spanned the gully. But once across he passed along the line and addressed the troops: «Sirs, call to mind what by help of the gods you have already done. Bethink you of the battles you have won at close quarters with the foe; of the fate which awaits those who flee before their foes. Forget not that we stand at the very doors of Hellas. Follow in the steps of Heracles, our guide, and cheer each the other onwards by name. Sweet were it surely by some brave and noble word or deed, spoken or done this day,

vocabulary

ἀλαλάζω give war cry
 βάδην step by step ~basis
 δρόμος running, racing ground
 ~hippodrome
 ἐκατέρωθεν on both sides
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐνταῦθα there, here
 ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
 ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,
 chief ~hegemony
 ἡώς ἡῶτι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene
 θέω run, run for
 καθίημι (τι) speed down upon; take
 down ~jet
 καίω burn ~caustic
 μνήμη reminder, memorial
 ὀπλίτης -ου (t, m, 1) hoplite, heavy
 infantryman ~hoplite
 παιανίζω (ᾱ) chant in victory
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,

recommend, encourage
 παρελαύνω pass, outstrip ~elastic
 πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
 πλησιάζω bring/be near; have sex
 προσβολή application, attack
 σάλπιγξ -γος (f) trumpet
 σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
 στῖφος -εος (n, 3) close array
 σύνθημα -τος (n, 3) agreed signal
 σωτήρ -ος (m) savior
 ὑπαντιάζω take a stand against
 ὑπείμι be under
 ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain
 ὑφηγέομαι lead the way
 φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle
 ~phalanx
 φθέγγομαι make a sound, utter
 ~diphthong
 χωρίον area; downwards

καλὸν νῦν εἰπόντα καὶ ποιήσαντα μνήμην ἐν οἷς ἐθέλει
παρέχειν ἑαυτοῦ.»

Ταῦτα παρελαύνων ἔλεγε καὶ ἅμα ὑφηγεῖτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος,
καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς ἐκατέρωθεν ποιησάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο
ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. παρήγγελτο δὲ τὰ μὲν δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν
δεξιὸν ὤμον ἔχειν, ἕως σημαῖνοι τῇ σάλπιγγι· ἔπειτα δὲ
εἰς προσβολὴν καθέντας ἔπεσθαι βάδην καὶ μηδένα δρόμῳ
διώκειν. ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρήει Ζεὺς σωτήρ, Ἡρακλῆς
ἡγεμών. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὑπέμενον, νομίζοντες καλὸν ἔχειν
τὸ χωρίον. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπλησίαζον, ἀλαλάξαντες οἱ Ἕλληνες
πελτασταὶ ἔθρον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν τινα κελεύειν·
οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἀντίοι ὥρμησαν, οἳ θ' ἵππεῖς καὶ τὸ στίφος
τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς πελταστὰς. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ
ὑπηντίαζεν ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ταχὺ πορευομένη καὶ
ἅμα ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγατο καὶ ἐπαιάνιζον καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα
ἠλάλαζον καὶ ἅμα τὰ δόρατα καθίεσαν, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι
ἐδέξαντο οἱ πολέμοι, ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον. καὶ Τιμασίων μὲν
ἔχων τοὺς ἵππεας ἐφείπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίννυσαν ὅσουςπερ

καλὸν νῦν εἰπόντα καὶ ποιήσαντα |reminder, ὃν οἷς ἐθέλει
|memorial
παρέχειν ἑαυτοῦ.»

Ταῦτα |pass, outstrip ἔλεγε καὶ ἅμα |lead the way... |rank of battle
καὶ τοὺς |light troops |on both sides ποιησάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο
ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. |transmit; order, ὃν ὑμῶν, ὁράτα ἐπὶ τὸν
|recommend, encourage
δεξιὸν ὤμον ἔχειν, ἕως |give orders τῷ; trumpet ἔπειτα δὲ
|show; mark
εἰς |application, καθέντας ἔπεσθαι |step by step, ἡδένα |running
|attack
διώκειν. ἐκ τούτου |agreed παρήει Ζεὺς |savior, Ἡρακλῆς
|signal
ἡγεμῶν. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὑπέμενον, νομίζοντες καλὸν ἔχειν
τὸ χωρίον. ἐπεὶ δ' |bring/be near; give war cry οἱ |Greek
|have sex
|light troops |run ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν τινα κελεύειν·
οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἀντίοι ὥρμησαν, οἳ θ' ἱππεῖς καὶ τὸ |close
|array
τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς |light troops . ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ
|take a stand |rank of battle ὀπλιτῶν ταχὺ πορευομένη καὶ
|against
ἅμα ἡ |trumpet |make a sound, ὑψ-|chant in victory... μετὰ ταῦτα
|ter
|give war cry αἱ ἅμα τὰ δόρατα |speed down|there, here ὑκέτι
|upon; take
|down
ἐδέξαντο οἱ πολέμοι, ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον. καὶ Τιμασίῳ μὲν
ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας |ἐφέπω?: drive, meet, follow; or ὅσουσπερ
|ἐφέπω?: drive, meet, follow

to leave the memory of oneself in the hearts of those one loves.”

These words were spoken as he rode past, and simultaneously he began leading on the troops in battle line; and, placing the peltasts on either flank of the main body, they moved against the enemy. Along the line the order had sped «to keep their spears at rest on the right shoulder until the bugle signal; then lower them for the charge, slow march, and even pace, no one to quicken into a run.” Lastly, the watchword was passed, «Zeus the Saviour, Heracles our Guide.” The enemy waited their approach, confident in the excellence of his position; but as they drew closer the Hellene light troops, with a loud alala! without waiting for the order, dashed against the foe. The latter, on their side, came forward eagerly to meet the charge, both the cavalry and the mass of the Bithynians; and these turned the peltasts. But when with counter-wave the phalanx of the heavy infantry rapidly advancing, faced them, and at the same time the bugle sounded, and the battle hymn rose from all lips, and after this a loud cheer rose, and at the same instant they couched their spears;—at this conjuncture the enemy no longer welcomed them, but fled. Timasion with his cavalry followed close, and, considering their scant numbers, they did great execution. It was the

vocabulary

ἀκίνδυνος (ὅ) safe
ἀναπαύω cause to cease ~pause
ἄτε as if; since
ἄω aor: to sate ~sate
διασπείρω scatter, dissipate
Ἑλλην Greek
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐντεῦθεν thence
ἐπείκειμαι impose; shut a door
εὐώνυμος honored; left-hand
θαρρέω be of good heart
θαρσέω be of good heart
ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
καταθεάομαι look down upon
λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

μέχρι as far as, until
νάπος -εος (n, 3) gully
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
παιανίζω (ᾱ) chant in victory
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
πρηνής (ᾱ) prone; precipitous
συναθροίζω assemble, gather
συνίστημι unite; confront in battle
 ~station
συντάσσω gather, assemble ~syntax
σφόδρα very much
ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
 ~doctrine
ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain

ἐδύναντο ὡς ὀλίγοι ὄντες. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν
 εὐώνυμον εὐθὺς διεσπάρη, καθ' ὃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἱππεῖς ἦσαν,
 τὸ δὲ δεξιὸν ἄτε οὐ σφόδρα διωκόμενον ἐπὶ λόφου συνέστη.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ὑπομένοντας αὐτούς, ἐδόκει
 ῥᾶστόν τε καὶ ἀκινδυνότατον εἶναι ἰέναι ἥδη ἐπ' αὐτούς.
 παιανίσαντες οὖν εὐθὺς ἐπέκειντο· οἳ δ' οὐχ ὑπέμειναν. καὶ
 ἐνταῦθα οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν διεσπάρη·
 ἀπέθανον δὲ ὀλίγοι· τὸ γὰρ ἱππικὸν φόβον παρείχε τὸ τῶν
 πολεμίων πολὺ ὄν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες τό τε Φαρναβάζου ἱππικὸν
 ἔτι συνεστηκὸς καὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἱππέας πρὸς τοῦτο
 συναθροιζομένους καὶ ἀπὸ λόφου τινὸς καταθεωμένους
 τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπειρήκεσαν μὲν, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει καὶ
 ἐπὶ τούτους ἰτέον εἶναι οὕτως ὅπως δύναιτο, ὡς
 μὴ τεθαρρηκότες ἀναπαύσαιντο. συνταξάμενοι δὴ
 πορεύονται. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμιοι ἱππεῖς φεύγουσι κατὰ
 τοῦ πρανοῦς ὁμοίως ὥσπερ ὑπὸ ἱππέων διωκόμενοι·
 νάπος γὰρ αὐτοὺς ὑπεδέχετο, ὃ οὐκ ᾔδεσαν οἱ

ἐδύναντο ὡς ὀλίγοι ὄντες. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν

|honored; left-hand|scatter, , καθ' ὃ οἱ |Greek ἵππεῖς ἦσαν,
|dissipate

τὸ δὲ δεξιὸν ἅτε οὐ|very much ὑκόμενον ἐπὶ |neck, |unite; confront
|crest |in battle

ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ |Greek |stay behind, await on a
|helmet, εἰδοὶ, ἐδόκει
|hilltop

ῥᾶστόν τε καὶ |safe εἶναι ἰέναι ἤδη ἐπ' αὐτούς.

|chant in victory ὦν εὐθὺς |impose; shut a door |stay behind, await

|there, here |light troops ἐδίωκον |as far as, until |scatter,
|dissipate

ἀπέθανον δὲ ὀλίγοι· τὸ γὰρ |of horses ῥόβον παρείχε τὸ τῶν

πολεμίων πολὺ ὄν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ |Greek τό τε Φαρναβάζου |of horses

ἔτι |unite; confront αὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἱππέας πρὸς τοῦτο
|in battle

|assemble, gather καὶ ἀπὸ |neck, crest on a καταθεωμένους
|helmet, hilltop

τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπειρήκεσαν μὲν, |anyway, nevertheless αὶ

ἐπὶ τούτους ἰτέον εἶναι οὕτως ὅπως δύναιτο, ὡς

μὴ τεθαρρηκότες |cause to cease |gather, assemble δὴ

πορεύονται. |thence οἱ πολέμοι ἱππεῖς φεύγουσι κατὰ

τοῦ |prone; precipitous ὥσπερ ὑπὸ ἱππέων διωκόμενοι·

|gully γὰρ αὐτοὺς |welcome, accept, suffer ὃ οὐκ ἤδεσαν οἱ

left wing of the enemy, in a line with which the Hellene cavalry were posted, that was so speedily scattered. But the right, which was not so hotly pursued, collected upon a knoll; and when the Hellenes saw them standing firm, it seemed the easiest and least dangerous course to go against them at once. Raising the battle hymn, they straightway fell upon them, but the others did not await their coming. Thereupon the peltasts gave chase until the right of the enemy was in its turn scattered, though with slight loss in killed; for the enemy's cavalry was numerous and threatening.

But when the Hellenes saw the cavalry of Pharnabazus still standing in compact order, and the Bithynian horsemen massing together as if to join it, and like spectators gazing down from a knoll at the occurrences below; though weary, they determined to attack the enemy as best they could, and not suffer him to recover breath with reviving courage. So they formed in compact line and advanced. Thereupon the hostile cavalry turned and fled down the steep as swiftly as if they had been pursued by cavalry. In fact they sought the shelter of a gully, the existence of which was unknown to the Hellenes.

vocabulary

ἀδελής (ἄ) fearless ~Deimos

ἀναπαύω cause to cease ~pause

ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue

ἀφθονία abundance

δημόσιος public, the state

δυσμή sunset

ἔλαιον oil, olive oil ~olive

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἑξήκοντα sixty

ἐπανερχομαι return; ascend

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

καταμένω stay; not change

κριθή (ι) barley plant

λεία booty

λείος smooth

μελίνη millet

οἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) household; house
slave

ὅποι to which place

ὄσπριον bean, legume

ὀψέ late, in evening ~epitaph

πάντοθεν from all directions

παραπλέω sail past ~float

προσμένω await, cleave to

πυρός (ῥ) wheat

στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)

στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
(pl noun) 200 meters

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

σῦκον fig

συμβολή encounter; contribution

τριήρης trireme ~row

τρόπαιον victory monument

ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote

χωρίς separately; except, other than
~heir

Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ προαπετράποντο διώκοντες· ὁψὲ γὰρ ἦν. ἐπανελθόντες δὲ ἔνθα ἡ πρώτη συμβολὴ ἐγένετο, στησάμενοι τρόπαιον ἀπῆσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν περὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς· στάδιοι δ' ἦσαν ὡς ἐξήκοντα ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

6.6

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ μὲν πολέμοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν καὶ ἀπήγοντο καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας καὶ τὰ χρήματα ὅποι ἐδύναντο προσωτάτω· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες προσέμενον μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὡς ἥξοντα, ἐξιόντες δ' ἐκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις καὶ τοῖς ἀνδραπόδοις ἐφέροντο ἀδεῶς πυροὺς καὶ κριθάς, οἶνον, ὄσπρια, μελίνας, σῦκα· ἅπαντα γὰρ ἀγαθὰ εἶχεν ἡ χώρα πλὴν ἐλαίου. καὶ ὁπότε μὲν καταμένοι τὸ στράτευμα ἀναπανόμενον, ἐξῆν ἐπὶ λείαν ἰέναι, καὶ ἐλάμβανον οἱ ἐξιόντες· ὁπότε δὲ ἐξίοι πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, εἴ τις χωρὶς ἀπελθὼν λάβοι τι, δημόσιον ἔδοξεν εἶναι. ἤδη δὲ ἦν πάντων ἀφθονία· καὶ γὰρ ἀγοραὶ πάντοθεν ἀφικνοῦντο ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων καὶ οἱ παραπλέοντες ἄσμενοι

|Greek , ἀλλὰ προαπετράποντο διώκοντες· |late γὰρ
 ἦν. |return; ascend δὲ ἔνθα ἡ πρώτη |encounter; ᾗ ἐγένετο,
 |contribution
 στησάμενοι |victory ἀπῆσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν περὶ ἡλίου
 |monument
 |sunset στάδιοι δ' ἦσαν ὡς ἑξήκοντα ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

6.6

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ μὲν πολέμοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν καὶ
 ἀπῆγοντο καὶ τοὺς |household; αἱ τὰ χρήματα |to which place
 |house slave
 ἐδύναντο προσωτάτω· οἱ δὲ |Greek |await, cleave μὲν
 |to
 Κλέανδρον καὶ τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὡς ἦξοντα,
 |go forth; ὅ ἑκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς |beast of burden ἡ τοῖς
 |is possible
 |slave ἐφέροντο |fearless |wheat καὶ |barley , οἶνον,
 |plant
 |bean, , |millet , |fig ἅπαντα γὰρ ἀγαθὰ εἶχεν ἡ χώρα
 |legume
 πλὴν |oil . καὶ ὁπότε μὲν |stay; not change στρατεύμα
 |cause to cease , ἐξῆν ἐπὶ λείαν ἵεναι, καὶ ἐλάμβανον οἱ
 |go forth; ὁπότε δὲ ἐξίοι πᾶν τὸ στρατεύμα, εἴ τις χωρὶς
 |is possible
 ἀπελθὼν λάβοι τι, |public, the state ᾧ ἐν εἶναι. ἤδη δὲ ἦν
 πάντων |abundance καὶ γὰρ ἀγοραὶ |from all directions ὕντο
 ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων καὶ οἱ |sail past |be pleased, enjoy

The latter accordingly turned aside too soon and gave up the chase, for it was too late. Returning to the point where the first encounter took place they erected a trophy, and went back to the sea about sunset. It was something like seven miles to camp.

6.6

After this the enemy confined themselves to their own concerns, and removed their households and property as far away as possible. The Hellenes, on their side, were still awaiting the arrival of Cleander with the ships of war and transports, which ought to be there soon. So each day they went out with the baggage animals and slaves and fearlessly brought in wheat and barley, wine and vegetables, millet and figs; since the district produced all good things, the olive alone excepted. When the army stayed in camp to rest, pillaging parties were allowed to go out, and those who went out appropriated the spoils; but when the whole army went out, if any one went off apart and seized anything, it was voted to be public property. Ere long there was an ample abundance of supplies of all sorts, for marketables arrived from Hellenic cities on all sides, and marts were established. Mariners coasting by, and hearing

vocabulary

ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away
ἀποδιδράσκω escape
ἀρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
δημόσιος public, the state
διασώζω preserve through
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἐρωτάω ask about something
κατάγω lead down/home; land
~demagogue
λεῖα booty
λεῖος smooth
λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge
~limnic
λοχίτης -ου (t, m, 1) comrade

οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
οἰκίζω colonize, settle
οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
ὀκνέω shrink from, hesitate; worry
πεντηκόντορος 50-oared ship
περίστημι be around; turn out
~station
περιτυγχάνω happen upon
πλησίος near, neighboring
πολίζω build a wall, city ~Minneapolis
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
mercenary ~strategy
τριήρης trireme ~row
χωρίον area; downwards

κατήγον, ἀκούοντες ὡς οἰκίζοιτο πόλις καὶ λιμὴν εἴη.
 ἔπεμπον δὲ καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἤδη οἱ πλησίον ὥκουν πρὸς
 Ξενοφῶντα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος πολίζει τὸ χωρίον,
 ἐρωτῶντες ὅ τι δέοι ποιῶντας φίλους εἶναι. ὁ δ'
 ἀπεδείκνυνεν αὐτοὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις.

Κὰν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἀφικνεῖται δύο τριήρεις ἔχων,
 πλοῖον δ' οὐδέν. ἐτύγχανε δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἔξω ὃν
 ὅτε ἀφίκετο καὶ ἐπὶ λείαν τινὲς οἰχόμενοι ἄλλοι εἰς
 τὸ ὄρος εἰλήφεσαν πρόβατα πολλά· ὀκνοῦντες δὲ μὴ
 ἀφαιρεθεῖεν, τῷ Δεξίππῳ λέγουσιν, ὡς ἀπέδρα τὴν
 πεντηκόντορον ἔχων ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος καὶ κελεύουσι
 διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς τὰ πρόβατα τὰ μὲν αὐτὸν λαβεῖν,
 τὰ δὲ σφίσιν ἀποδοῦναι. εὐθὺς δ' ἐκεῖνος ἀπελαύνει
 τοὺς περιεστῶτας τῶν στρατιωτῶν καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι
 δημόσια εἴη, καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ λέγει ἐλθὼν ὅτι ἀρπάζειν
 ἐπιχειροῦσιν. ὁ δὲ κελεύει τὸν ἀρπάζοντα ἄγειν πρὸς
 αὐτόν. καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν ἡγέτινα· περιτυχὼν δ' Ἀγασίας
 ἀφαιρεῖται· καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ ὁ ἀγόμενος λοχίτης. οἱ δ'

|lead down/home; land ὥς |colonize, πόλιν καὶ |harbor, εἴη.
|settle |refuge

ἔπεμπον δὲ καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἤδη οἱ |near |inhabit πρὸς

Ξενοφῶντα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος |build a wall,|area; downwards
|city

|ask ὅ τι δέοι ποιῶντας φίλους εἶναι. ὁ δ'

ἀπεδείκνυνεν αὐτοὺς τοῖς |soldier,
|mercenary

Κὰν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἀφικνεῖται δύο |trireme ἔχων,

πλοῖον δ' οὐδέν. ἐτύγχανε δὲ τὸ |army ἔξω ὃν

ὅτε ἀφίκετο καὶ ἐπὶ λείαν τινὲς |come, go ἄλλοι εἰς

τὸ ὄρος εἰλήφεσαν |cattle, flocks, οὐλά· |hesitate; δὲ μὴ
|herds |worry

|take away , τῷ Δεξιππῷ λέγουσιν, ὅς |escape τὴν

|50-oared ship ἔχων ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος καὶ κελεύουσι

|preserve αὐτοῖς τὰ |cattle, flocks, ἃ μὲν αὐτὸν λαβεῖν,
|through |herds

τὰ δὲ σφίσιν ἀποδοῦναι. εὐθὺς δ' ἐκείνος |expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away

τοὺς |be around; turn out |soldier, καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι
|mercenary

|public, the state καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ λέγει ἐλθὼν ὅτι |carry off, seize

|do, try, attack ὁ δὲ κελεύει τὸν |carry off, seize ἔγειν πρὸς

αὐτόν. καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν ἡγέτινα· |happen upon ὁ Ἀγασίας

|take away καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ ὁ ἀγόμενος |comrade . οἱ δ'

that a city was being founded and that there was a harbour, were glad to put in. Even the hostile tribes dwelling in the neighbourhood presently began to send envoys to Xenophon. It was he who was forming the place into a city, as they understood, and they would be glad to learn on what terms they might secure his friendship. He made a point of introducing these visitors to the soldiers.

Meanwhile Cleander arrived with two ships of war, but not a single transport. At the moment of his arrival, as it happened, the army had taken the field, and a separate party had gone off on a pillaging expedition into the hills and had captured a number of small cattle. In their apprehension of being deprived of them, these same people spoke to Dexippus (this was the same man who had made off from Trapezus with the fifty-oared galley), and urged him to save their sheep for them. «Take some for yourself,” said they, «and give the rest back to us.” So, without more ado, he drove off the soldiers standing near, who kept repeating that the spoil was public property. Then off he went to Cleander. «Here is an attempt,” said he, «at robbery.” Cleander bade him to bring up the culprit to him. Dexippus seized on some one, and was for haling him to the Spartan governor. Just then Agasias came across him and rescued the man, who was a member of his company; and the rest of

vocabulary

αἵτιος blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

αἰτίος blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

ἀνακαλέω call, summon, recall

ἀνερθείζω stir up, excite

ἀπορία difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce

ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy

ἄχθομαι be burdened with

διαβάλλω throw across; slander

~ballistic

δόγμα -τος (n, 3) belief, legal decision

ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate

Ἑλληγν Greek

ἔνιοι some

ἐνταῦθα there, here

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐξαιτέω demand ~etiology

ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral

κατακωλύω hinder from

κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon

people

προδότης -ου (m, 1) traitor, abandoner

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

συνάγω assemble; join in battle

~demagogue

τριηρίτης -ου (m, 1) trireme crewman

ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπιχειροῦσι βάλλειν τὸν Δέξιππον, ἀνακαλοῦντες τὸν προδότην. ἔδεισαν δὲ καὶ τῶν τριηριτῶν πολλοὶ καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ Κλέανδρος δ' ἔφευγε. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ κατεκώλυνόν τε καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐδὲν εἴη πρᾶγμα, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα αἴτιον εἴη τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος ταῦτα γενέσθαι. ὁ δὲ Κλέανδρος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξίππου τε ἀνερεθιζόμενος καὶ αὐτὸς ἀχθεσθεὶς ὅτι ἐφοβήθη, ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι ἔφη καὶ κηρύξειν μηδεμίαν πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὥς πολεμίους. ἦρχον δὲ τότε πάντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι.

Ἐνταῦθα πονηρὸν ἐδόκει τὸ πρᾶγμα εἶναι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, καὶ ἐδέοντο μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως ἔφη γενέσθαι, εἰ μή τις ἐκδώσει τὸν ἄρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν ἀφελόμενον. ἦν δὲ ὃν ἐξήτει Ἀγασίας διὰ τέλους φίλος τῷ Ξενοφῶντι· ἐξ οὗ καὶ διέβαλλεν αὐτὸν ὁ Δέξιππος. καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειδὴ ἀπορία ἦν, συνήγαγον τὸ στράτευμα οἱ ἄρχοντες· καὶ ἔνιοι μὲν αὐτῶν παρ'

ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες τῶν |soldier, |do, try, attack ,βάλλειν
 |mercenary
 τὸν Δέξιππον, |call, summon, τὸν |traitor, ἔδεισαν δὲ
 |recall |abandoner
 καὶ τῶν |trireme πολλοὶ καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν,
 |crewman
 καὶ Κλέανδρος δ' ἔφευγε. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
 στρατηγοὶ |hinder from τε καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ἔλεγον ὅτι
 οὐδὲν εἴη πρᾶγμα, ἀλλὰ τὸ |belief, legal |ιον εἴη τὸ τοῦ
 |decision
 |army ταῦτα γενέσθαι. ὁ δὲ Κλέανδρος ὑπὸ
 τοῦ Δεξιππου τε |stir up, excite καὶ αὐτὸς |be burdened with
 ὅτι ἐφοβήθη, ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι ἔφη καὶ |be a henchman, |ίαν
 |summon people
 πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὥς πολεμίους. ἦρχον δὲ τότε
 πάντων τῶν |Greek οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι.
 |there, here πονηρὸν ἐδόκει τὸ πρᾶγμα εἶναι τοῖς |Greek ,
 καὶ ἐδέοντο μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως ἔφη
 γενέσθαι, εἰ μὴ τις |hand over ὃν ἄρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν
 |take away . ἦν δὲ ὃν |demand' _γασίας διὰ τέλους φίλος τῷ
 Ξενοφῶντι· ἐξ οὗ καὶ |throw across; |τὸν ὁ Δέξιππος. καὶ
 |slander
 |thence ἐπειδὴ |difficulty, |bot-|join τὸ |army οἱ
 |tleneck
 ἄρχοντες· καὶ |some μὲν αὐτῶν παρ'

the soldiers present set to work to stone Dexippus, calling him «traitor.” Things looked so ill that a number of the crew of the ships of war took fright and fled to the sea, and with the rest Cleander himself. Xenophon and the other generals tried to hold the men back, assuring Cleander that the affair signified nothing at all, and that the origin of it was a decree passed by the army. That was to blame, if anything. But Cleander, goaded by Dexippus, and personally annoyed at the fright which he had experienced, threatened to sail away and publish an interdict against them, forbidding any city to receive them, as being public enemies. For at this date the Lacedaemonians held sway over the whole Hellenic world.

Thereat the affair began to wear an ugly look, and the Hellenes begged and implored Cleander to reconsider his intention. He replied that he would be as good as his word, and that nothing should stop him, unless the man who set the example of stoning, with the other who rescued the prisoner, were given up to him. Now, one of the two whose persons were thus demanded—Agasias—had been a friend to Xenophon throughout; and that was just why Dexippus was all the more anxious to accuse him. In their perplexity the generals summoned a full meeting of the soldiers, and some speakers were disposed

vocabulary

ἄνομος lawless

ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand

ἀποκλείω shut out; (+acc) close

ἀποπλέω sail away ~float

ἄρμοστής -οῦ (m, 1) governor

διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
~practice

ἐγγύς near

ναύαρχος admiral

ὅθεν whence

οὐκουν certainly not

ποιόω make of a certain quality

προίστημι put forward; (+gen) be head of, guard ~station

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy

φαῦλος trifling

ὀλίγον ἐποιούντο τὸν Κλέανδρον, τῷ δὲ Ξενοφῶντι οὐκ
 ἐδόκει φαῦλον εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν· ὦ ἄνδρες
 στρατιῶται, ἐμοὶ δὲ οὐδὲν φαῦλον δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ πρᾶγμα,
 εἰ ἡμῖν οὕτως ἔχων τὴν γνώμην Κλέανδρος ἅπεισιν ὥσπερ
 λέγει. εἰσὶ μὲν γὰρ ἐγγὺς αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις· τῆς
 δὲ Ἑλλάδος Λακεδαιμόνιοι προεστήκασιν· ἱκανοὶ δέ εἰσι
 καὶ εἰς ἕκαστος Λακεδαιμονίων ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν ὃ τι
 βούλονται διαπράττεσθαι. εἰ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἡμᾶς
 Βυζαντίου ἀποκλείσει, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀρμοσταῖς
 παραγγελεῖ εἰς τὰς πόλεις μὴ δέχεσθαι ὡς ἀπιστοῦντας
 Λακεδαιμονίοις καὶ ἀνόμους ὄντας, ἔτι δὲ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον
 τὸν ναύαρχον οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ ἡμῶν ἥξει, χαλεπὸν
 ἔσται καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀποπλεῖν· καὶ γὰρ ἐν τῇ γῇ ἄρχουσι
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ τὸν νῦν χρόνον. οὐκ οὖν
 δεῖ οὔτε ἐνὸς ἀνδρὸς ἕνεκα οὔτε δυοῖν ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους
 τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἀπέχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειστέον ὃ τι ἂν κελεύωσι·
 καὶ γὰρ αἱ πόλεις ἡμῶν ὅθεν ἐσμὲν πείθονται αὐτοῖς. ἐγὼ
 μὲν οὖν καὶ γὰρ ἀκούω Δέξιππον λέγειν πρὸς Κλέανδρον

ὀλίγον |make of a cer-`n Κλέανδρον, τῷ δὲ Ξενοφῶντι οὐκ
 |tain quality
 ἐδόκει |trifling εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν· ὦ ἄνδρες
 |soldier, , ἐμοὶ δὲ οὐδὲν |trifling δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ πρᾶγμα,
 |mercenary
 εἰ ἡμῖν οὕτως ἔχων τὴν γνώμην Κλέανδρος ἅπεισιν ὥσπερ
 λέγει. εἰσὶ μὲν γὰρ |near αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις· τῆς
 δὲ Ἑλλάδος Λακεδαιμόνιοι προεστήκασιν· ἱκανοὶ δέ εἰσι
 καὶ εἰς ἕκαστος Λακεδαιμονίων ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν ὅ τι
 βούλονται |travel over, ac- εἰ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἡμᾶς
 |comply
 Βυζαντίου ἀποκλείσει, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις |governor
 παραγγελεῖ εἰς τὰς πόλεις μὴ δέχεσθαι ὡς |disbelieve
 Λακεδαιμονίοις καὶ |lawless ὄντας, ἔτι δὲ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον
 τὸν |admiral οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ ἡμῶν ἤξει, χαλεπὸν
 ἔσται καὶ μένειν καὶ |sail away καὶ γὰρ ἐν τῇ γῇ ἄρχουσι
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ τὸν νῦν χρόνον. |certainly not
 δεῖ οὔτε ἐνὸς ἀνδρὸς ἕνεκα οὔτε δυοῖν ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους
 τῆς Ἑλλάδος |ward off, drive`off,`refrain, ἐόν ὅ τι ἂν κελεύωσι·
 |be at some distance
 καὶ γὰρ αἱ πόλεις ἡμῶν |whence μὲν πείθονται αὐτοῖς. ἐγὼ
 μὲν οὖν καὶ γὰρ ἀκούω Δέξιππον λέγειν πρὸς Κλέανδρον

to make very light of Cleander and set him at naught. But Xenophon took a more serious view of the matter; he rose and addressed the meeting thus: «Soldiers, I cannot say that I feel disposed to make light of this business, if Cleander be allowed to go away, as he threatens to do, in his present temper towards us. There are Hellenic cities close by; but then the Lacedaemonians are the lords of Hellas, and they can, any one of them, carry out whatever they like in the cities. If then the first thing this Lacedaemonian does is to close the gates of Byzantium, and next to pass an order to the other governors, city by city, not to receive us because we are a set of lawless ruffians disloyal to the Lacedaemonians; and if, further, this report of us should reach the ears of their admiral, Anaxibius, to stay or to sail away will alike be difficult. Remember, the Lacedaemonians at the present time are lords alike on land and on sea. For the sake then of a single man, or for two men's sake, it is not right that the rest of us should be debarred from Hellas; but whatever they enjoin we must obey. Do not the cities which gave us birth yield them obedience also? For my own part, inasmuch as Dexippus, I believe, keeps telling Cleander that Agasias would never have

vocabulary

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
αἷτιος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
αἰτίος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
ἄπολύω loose, free from ~loose
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
βίαιος by force
εἵργω bound, fend off; do
ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate
ἐξαρχος leader ~oligarch
ἐξάρχω take the lead in ~oligarch
ἔπαινος (noun) praise

ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
ἔσχατος farthest, last
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
καταδικάζω give judgment
λοχίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) comrade
ὄμνυμι (ō) swear
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
πετροβολία stoning
προδίδωμι betray
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand;
 submit to

ὥς οὐκ ἂν ἐποίησεν Ἀγασίας ταῦτα, εἰ μὴ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν ἐκέλευσα, ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἀπολύω καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας καὶ Ἀγασίαν, ἂν αὐτὸς Ἀγασίας φήσῃ ἐμέ τι τούτων αἴτιον εἶναι, καὶ καταδικάζω ἐμαυτοῦ, εἰ ἐγὼ πετροβολίας ἢ ἄλλον τινὸς βιαίῳ ἐξάρχω, τῆς ἐσχάτης δίκης ἄξιος εἶναι, καὶ ὑφέξω τὴν δίκην. φημὶ δὲ καὶ εἴ τινα ἄλλον αἰτιᾶται, χρῆναι ἑαυτὸν παρασχεῖν Κλεάνδρῳ κρῖναι· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίας εἴητε. ὥς δὲ νῦν ἔχει, χαλεπὸν εἰ οἰόμενοι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι καὶ ἐπαίνου καὶ τιμῆς τεύξεσθαι ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων οὐδ' ὅμοιοι τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐσόμεθα, ἀλλ' εἰρξόμεθα ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπεν Ἀγασίας· «Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὁμνυμι θεοὺς καὶ θεὰς ἢ μὴν μήτε με Ξενοφῶντα κελεῦσαι ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα μήτε ἄλλον ὑμῶν μηδένα· ἰδόντι δέ μοι ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ἀγόμενον τῶν ἐμῶν λοχιτῶν ὑπὸ Δεξίππου, ὃν ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε ὑμᾶς προδόντα, δεινὸν ἔδοξεν εἶναι· καὶ ἀφειλόμην, ὁμολογῶ. καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν μὴ ἐκδῶτέ με· ἐγὼ δὲ ἐμαυτόν, ὥσπερ Ξενοφῶν

ὥς οὐκ ἂν ἐποίησεν Ἀγασίας ταῦτα, εἰ μὴ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν
 ἐκέλευσα, ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἀπολύω καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας καὶ
 Ἀγασίαν, ἂν αὐτὸς Ἀγασίας φήσῃ ἐμέ τι τούτων αἴτιον
 εἶναι, καὶ |give judgment ἐμαντοῦ, εἰ ἐγὼ |stoning ἢ
 ἄλλον τινὸς |by force ἑξάρχω, τῆς |farthest δίκης ἄξιος εἶναι,
 καὶ |promise ἤν δίκην. φημί δὲ καὶ εἴ τινα ἄλλον |blame ,
 χρῆναι ἑαυτὸν παρασχεῖν Κλεάνδρῳ κρίναι· οὕτω γὰρ
 ἂν ὑμεῖς |loose, free from τῆς αἰτίας εἴητε. ὥς δὲ νῦν ἔχει,
 χαλεπὸν εἰ οἰόμενοι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι καὶ |(noun) praise τιμῆς
 τεύξεσθαι ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων οὐδ' ὅμοιοι τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐσόμεθα,
 ἀλλ' |bound, fend off; do Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπεν Ἀγασίας· «Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 |swear θεοὺς καὶ θεὰς ἢ μὴν μήτε με Ξενοφῶντα κελεύσαι
 |take away τὸν ἄνδρα μήτε ἄλλον ὑμῶν μηδένα· ἰδόντι
 δέ μοι ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ἀγόμενον τῶν ἐμῶν |comrade ὑπὸ
 Δεξίππου, ὃν ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε ὑμᾶς |betray , δεινὸν
 ἔδοξεν εἶναι· καὶ |take away , |agree with/to αἱ ὑμεῖς μὲν μὴ
 |hand over·· ἐγὼ δὲ ἐμαντόν, ὥσπερ Ξενοφῶν

done this had not I, Xenophon, bidden him, I absolve you of all complicity, and Agasias too, if Agasias himself states that I am in any way a prime mover in this matter. If I have set the fashion of stone-throwing or any other sort of violence I condemn myself—I say that I deserve the extreme penalty, and I will submit to undergo it. I further say that if any one else is accused, that man is bound to surrender himself to Cleander for judgement, for by this means you will be absolved entirely from the accusation. But as the matter now stands, it is cruel that just when we were aspiring to win praise and honour throughout Hellas, we are destined to sink below the level of the rest of the world, banned from the Hellenic cities whose common name we boast.”

After him Agasias got up, and said, «I swear to you, sirs, by the gods and goddesses, verily and indeed, neither Xenophon nor any one else among you bade me rescue the man. I saw an honest man—one of my own company—being taken up by Dexippus, the man who betrayed you, as you know full well. That I could not endure; I rescued him, I admit the fact. Do not you deliver me up. I will surrender myself, as Xenophon suggests, to Cleander to pass what

vocabulary

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
κρίσις -εως (f) decision, issue

ὅποι to which place
παρλείπω leave, leave out
παρέρχομαι pass, escape
προαίρέω produce; (m) prefer
στρατιά army ~strategy
συμπέμπω send with ~pomp

λέγει, παρασχίσω κρίναντι Κλέανδρῳ ὅ τι ἂν βούληται ποιῆσαι· τούτου ἔνεκα μήτε πολεμεῖτε Λακεδαιμονίοις σφύζεσθί τε ἀσφαλῶς ὅποι θέλει ἕκαστος. συμπέμψατε μέντοι μοι ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐλόμενοι πρὸς Κλέανδρον οἵτινες, ἂν τι ἐγὼ παραλίπω, καὶ λέξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ καὶ πράξουσιν.» ἐκ τούτου ἔδωκεν ἡ στρατιὰ οὕστινας βούλοιτο προελόμενον ἰέναι. ὁ δὲ προείλετο τοὺς στρατηγούς. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Κλέανδρον Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ὁ ἀφαιρεθεὶς ἀνὴρ ὑπὸ Ἀγασίου. καὶ ἔλεγον οἱ στρατηγοί· «Ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς ἡ στρατιὰ πρὸς σέ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, καὶ κελεύουσί σε, εἴτε πάντας αἰτιᾶ, κρίναντα σὲ αὐτὸν χρῆσθαι ὅ τι ἂν βούλη, εἴτε ἓνα τινὰ ἢ δύο καὶ πλείους αἰτιᾶ, τούτους ἀξιούσι παρασχεῖν σοι ἑαυτοὺς εἰς κρίσιν. εἴ τι οὖν ἡμῶν τινα αἰτιᾶ, πάρεσμέν σοι ἡμεῖς· εἴ τι δὲ ἄλλον τινά, φράσον· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἀπέσται ὅστις ἂν ἡμῖν ἐθέλῃ πείθεσθαι.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα παρελθὼν ὁ Ἀγασίας εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ εἰμι, ὦ Κλέανδρε, ὁ ἀφελόμενος Δεξίππου ἄγοντος τοῦτον

λέγει, παρασχήσω κρίναντι Κλεάνδρω ὅ τι ἂν βούληται
 ποιῆσαι· τούτου ἔνεκα μήτε πολεμεῖτε Λακεδαιμονίοις
 σῶζεσθέ τε ἀσφαλῶς |to which place...αστος. |συμπέμπω?: send with; or
 |συμπέμπω?: send with
 μέντοι μοι ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐλόμενοι πρὸς Κλεάνδρον οἵτινες,
 ἂν τι ἐγὼ |leave, leave, καὶ λέξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ καὶ
 |out
 πράξουσιν.» ἐκ τούτου ἔδωκεν ἡ στρατιὰ οὐστίνας
 βούλοιτο |produce; (m) prefer ...ι. ὁ δὲ |produce; (m) prefer
 στρατηγούς. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Κλεάνδρον
 Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ὁ |take away ἀνὴρ ὑπὸ
 Ἀγασίου. καὶ ἔλεγον οἱ στρατηγοί· «Ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς ἡ
 στρατιὰ πρὸς σέ, ὦ Κλεάνδρε, καὶ κελεύουσί σε, |if, whenever; ei-
 |ther/or
 πάντας |blame κρίναντα σὲ αὐτὸν χρῆσθαι ὅ τι ἂν βούλη,
 |if, whenever; ἂ ἢ δύο καὶ πλείους |blame, τούτους ἀξιούσι
 |either/or
 παρασχεῖν σοι ἑαυτοὺς εἰς |decision, εἴ τι οὖν ἡμῶν τινα
 |issue
 |blame, πάρεσμέν σοι ἡμεῖς· εἴ τι δὲ ἄλλον τινά, φράσον·
 οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἀπέσται ὅστις ἂν ἡμῖν ἐθέλη πείθεσθαι.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα |pass, escape ὁ Ἀγασίας εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ εἰμι, ὦ
 Κλεάνδρε, ὁ |take away Δεξίππου ἄγοντος τοῦτον

verdict on me he thinks right. Do not, for the sake of such a matter, make foes of the Lacedaemonians; rather God grant that each of you may safely reach the goal of his desire. Only do you choose from among yourselves and send with me to Cleander those who, in case of any omission on my part, may by their words and acts supply what is lacking.”

Thereupon the army granted him to choose for himself whom he would have go with him and to go; and he at once chose the generals. After this they all set off to Cleander—Agasias and the generals and the man who had been rescued by Agasias—and the generals spoke as follows: «The army has sent us to you, Cleander, and this is their bidding: ‘If you have fault to find with all, they say, you ought to pass sentence on all, and do with them what seems best; or if the charge is against one man or two, or possibly several, what they expect of these people is to surrender themselves to you for judgement.’ Accordingly, if you lay anything to the charge of us generals, here we stand at your bar. Or do you impute the fault to some one not here? tell us whom. Short of flying in the face of our authority, there is no one who will absent himself.”

At this point Agasias stepped forward and said: «It was I, Cleander, who rescued the man before you yonder from Dexippus, when the latter was carrying him off, and it was

vocabulary

αἰτέω ask for ~etiology

ἀποδιδράσκω escape

ἄπορος impassable, difficult

ἀποστερέω despoil, defraud

ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy

δειλός wretched, poor, cowardly

~Deimos

διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis

ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise

παίω hit

παμπόνηρος depraved

πεντηκόντορος 50-oared ship

προδίδωμι betray

στρατιά army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ παίειν κελεύσας Δέξιππον. τοῦτον μὲν γὰρ οἶδα ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ὄντα, Δέξιππον δὲ οἶδα αἰρεθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἄρχειν τῆς πεντηκοντόρου ἣς ἡγησάμεθα παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων ἐφ' ὥτε πλοῖα συλλέγειν ὡς σωζόμεθα, καὶ ἀποδράντα Δέξιππον καὶ προδόντα τοὺς στρατιώτας μεθ' ὧν ἐσώθη. καὶ τοὺς τε Τραπεζουντίους ἀπεστερήκαμεν τὴν πεντηκόντορον καὶ κακοὶ δοκοῦμεν εἶναι διὰ τοῦτον, αὐτοὶ τε τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἀπολώλαμεν. ἤκουε γάρ, ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς, ὡς ἄπορον εἶη πέλῃ ἀπιόντας τοὺς ποταμούς τε διαβῆναι καὶ σωθῆναι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. τοῦτον οὖν τοιοῦτον ὄντα ἀφειλόμην. εἰ δὲ σὺ ἦγες ἢ ἄλλος τις τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μὴ τῶν παρ' ἡμῶν ἀποδράντων, εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων ἐποίησα. νόμιζε δέ, ἂν ἐμὲ νῦν ἀποκτείνης, δι' ἄνδρα δειλὸν τε καὶ πονηρὸν ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ἀποκτείνων.»

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν ὅτι Δέξιππον μὲν οὐκ ἐπαινοίη, εἰ ταῦτα πεποιηκὼς εἶη· οὐ μέντοι ἔφη νομίζειν οὐδ' εἰ παμπόνηρος ἦν Δέξιππος βία χρῆναι πάσχειν

τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ |hit κελεύσας Δέξιππον. τοῦτον
 μὲν γὰρ οἶδα ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ὄντα, Δέξιππον δὲ οἶδα
 αἰρεθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς |army ἄρχειν τῆς |50-oared ship
 ἧς |ask for παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων ἐφ' ὥτε πλοῖα
 |collect, ὥς σωζοίμεθα, καὶ |escape Δέξιππον καὶ
 |assemble
 |betray τοὺς |soldier, μεθ' ὧν ἐσώθη. καὶ τοὺς τε
 |mercenary
 Τραπεζουντίους |despoil, defraud τὴν |50-oared ship καὶ
 κακοὶ δοκοῦμεν εἶναι διὰ τοῦτον, αὐτοὶ τε τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ
 ἀπολώλαμεν. ἤκουε γάρ, ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς, ὥς |impassable, |
 |difficult
 πέζῃ ἀπιόντας τοὺς ποταμούς τε |pass over, cross ἰωθῆναι
 εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. τοῦτον οὖν τοιοῦτον ὄντα |take away . εἰ
 δὲ σὺ ἦγες ἢ ἄλλος τις τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μὴ τῶν παρ'
 ἡμῶν |escape , εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων ἐποίησα.
 νόμιζε δέ, ἂν ἐμὲ νῦν ἀποκτείνης, δι' ἄνδρα |wretched καὶ
 πονηρὸν ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ἀποκτείνων.»

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν ὅτι Δέξιππον μὲν οὐκ
 |concur , εἰ ταῦτα πεποιηκὼς εἴη· οὐ μέντοι ἔφη νομίζειν
 οὐδ' εἰ |depraved ἦν Δέξιππος βίᾳ χρῆναι πάσχειν

I who gave the order to strike Dexippus. My plea is that I know the prisoner to be an honest man. As to Dexippus, I know that he was chosen by the army to command a fifty-oared galley, which we had obtained by request from the men of Trapezus for the express purpose of collecting vessels to carry us safely home. But this same Dexippus betrayed his fellow-soldiers, with whom he had been delivered from so many perils, and made off into hiding like a runaway slave, whereby we have robbed the Trapezuntines of their frigate, and must needs appear as knaves in their eyes for this man's sake. As to ourselves, as far as he could, he has ruined us; for, like the rest of us, he had heard how all but impossible it was for us to retreat by foot across the rivers and to reach Hellas in safety. That is the stamp of man whom I robbed of his prey. Now, had it been you yourself who carried him off, or one of your emissaries, or indeed any one short of a runaway from ourselves, be sure that I should have acted far otherwise. Be assured that if you put me to death at this time you are sacrificing a good, honest man for the sake of a coward and a scamp."

When he had listened to these remarks, Cleander replied that if such had been the conduct of Dexippus, he could not congratulate him. «But still," he added, turning to the generals, «were Dexippus ever so great a scamp he ought not to suffer violence; but in the language of

vocabulary

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
 ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat
 ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
 δημόσιος public, the state
 διασώζω preserve through
 δόγμα -τος (n, 3) belief, legal decision
 ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
 καταμένω stay; not change
 κρίσις -εως (f) decision, issue
 λήζομαι plunder ~lucre
 ληιστής -οῦς (m, 3) bandit
 ληιστός lootable ~lucre
 ληστής -οῦ (m, 1) bandit

ὁμολογέω agree with/to
 παίω hit
 πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
 ῥήτρα agreement, bargain ~rhetoric
 στρατιά army ~strategy
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
 συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult
 ~volunteer
 συνάγω assemble; join in battle
 ~demagogue
 τοίνυν well, then
 φθέγγομαι make a sound, utter
 ~diphthong

αὐτόν, «ἀλλὰ κριθέντα, ὥσπερ καὶ ὑμεῖς νῦν ἀξιούτε, τῆς δίκης τυχεῖν. νῦν οὖν ἄπιτε καταλιπόντες τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ κελεύσω, πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. αἰτιῶμαι δὲ οὔτε τὴν στρατιὰν οὔτε ἄλλον οὐδένα ἔτι, ἐπεὶ οὗτος αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖ ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα.»

Ὁ δὲ ἀφαιρεθεὶς εἶπεν· «Ἐγώ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, εἰ καὶ οἶκι με ἀδικοῦντά τι ἄγεσθαι, οὔτε ἔπαιον οὐδένα οὔτε ἔβαλλον, ἀλλ' εἶπον ὅτι δημόσια εἴη τὰ πρόβατα· ἦν γὰρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν δόγμα, εἴ τις ὁπότε ἡ στρατιὰ ἐξίοι ἰδίᾳ λήζοιτο, δημόσια εἶναι τὰ ληφθέντα. ταῦτα εἶπον· ἐκ τούτου με λαβὼν οὗτος ἦγεν, ἵνα μὴ φθέγγοιτο μηδεὶς, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος διασώσειε τοῖς λησταῖς παρὰ τὴν ρήτραν τὰ χρήματα.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· «Ἐπεὶ τοῖνυν[...] εἰ, κατάμενε, ἵνα καὶ περὶ σοῦ βουλευσώμεθα.»

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον ἡρίστων· τὴν δὲ στρατιὰν συνήγαγε Ξενοφῶν καὶ συνεβούλευε πέμψαι

αὐτόν, «ἀλλὰ κριθέντα, ὥσπερ καὶ ὑμεῖς νῦν ἀξιοῦτε,
 τῆς δίκης τυχεῖν. νῦν οὖν ἄπιτε |leave behind, |τόνδε τὸν
 |abandon
 ἄνδρα· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ κελεύσω, πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν |decision,
 |issue
 |blame δὲ οὔτε τὴν |army οὔτε ἄλλον οὐδένα ἔτι, ἐπεὶ
 οὗτος αὐτὸς |agree |take away τὸν ἄνδρα.»
 |with/to

Ὁ δὲ |take away εἶπεν· «Ἐγώ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, εἰ καὶ οἶμι με
 ἀδικοῦντά τι ἄγεσθαι, οὔτε |hit οὐδένα οὔτε ἔβαλλον,
 ἀλλ' εἶπον ὅτι |public, the state . . . |cattle, flocks, |τὴν γὰρ τῶν
 |herds
 |soldier, |belief, legal |τις ὁπότε ἡ στρατιὰ ἐξίοι ἰδία
 |mercenary |decision
 |ληίζομαι?: |public, the state τὰ ληφθέντα. ταῦτα εἶπον· ἐκ
 |plun-
 |der; or
 |ληίζομαι?: λαβὼν οὗτος ἦγεν, ἵνα μὴ |make a sound, |utter,
 |plunder
 ἀλλ' αὐτὸς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος |preserve τοῖς λησταῖς παρὰ
 |through
 τὴν |agreement, |χρήματα.»
 |bargain

Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· «Ἐπεὶ |well, then] εἰ,
 |stay; not change :αὶ περὶ σοῦ βουλευσώμεθα.»

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον |eat lunch τὴν δὲ
 |army |join Ξενοφῶν καὶ |give advice; |πέμψαι
 |consult
 |(mid)

your own demand he was entitled to a fair trial, and so to obtain his deserts. What I have to say at present therefore is: leave your friend here and go your way, and when I give the order be present at the trial. I have no further charge against the army or any one, since the prisoner himself admits that he rescued the man.”

Then the man who had been rescued said: «In behalf of myself, Cleander, if possibly you think that I was being taken up for some misdeed, it is not so; I neither struck nor shot; I merely said, ‘The sheep are public property;’ for it was a resolution of the soldiers that whenever the army went out as a body any booty privately obtained was to be public property. That was all I said, and thereupon yonder fellow seized me and began dragging me off. He wanted to stop our mouths, so that he might have a share of the things himself, and keep the rest for these buccaneers, contrary to the ordinance.”

In answer to that Cleander said: «Very well, if that is your disposition you can stay behind too, and we will take your case into consideration also.”

Thereupon Cleander and his party proceeded to breakfast; but Xenophon collected the army in assembly, and advised their sending a deputation

vocabulary

αἰτέω ask for ~etiology
 ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῶ) display, exhibit
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
 ἔλεως propitious, gracious
 κατακαίνω kill
 κόσμιος well-behaved
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
 μοχθέω be afflicted
 νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend
 ~genus
 παραιτέομαι entreat; beg for; decline
 πείρα an attempt
 πείρω pierce, run through ~pierce
 στρατιά army ~strategy
 ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do
 ~ischemia
 ὑφίημι lower; admit; slack off ~jet

ἄνδρας πρὸς Κλέανδρον παραιτησομένους περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν. ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς πέμψαντας στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς καὶ Δρακόντιον τὸν Σπαρτιάτην καὶ τῶν ἄλλων οἱ ἑδόκουν ἐπιτήδευοι εἶναι δεῖσθαι Κλεάνδρου κατὰ πάντα τρόπον ἀφείναι τῷ ἄνδρῃ.

Ἐλθὼν οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· «Ἔχεις μὲν, ὦ Κλέανδρε, τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ σοι ὑφείτο ὅ τι ἐβούλου ποιῆσαι καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ αὐτῶν ἀπάντων. νῦν δέ σε αἰτοῦνται καὶ δέονται δοῦναι σφίσι τῷ ἄνδρῃ καὶ μὴ κατακαίνειν· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ περὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ἐμοχθησάτην. ταῦτα δέ σου τυχόντες ὑπισχνοῦνταί σοι ἀντὶ τούτων, ἣν βούλη ἡγείσθαι αὐτῶν καὶ ἣν οἱ θεοὶ ἴλεω ᾧσιν, ἐπιδείξειν σοι καὶ ὥς κόσμοί εἰσι καὶ ὥς ἱκανοὶ τῷ ἄρχοντι πειθόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μὴ φοβεῖσθαι. δέονται δέ σου καὶ τοῦτο, παραγενόμενον καὶ ἄρξαντα ἐαυτῶν πείραν λαβεῖν καὶ Δεξίππου καὶ σφῶν τῶν ἄλλων οἷος ἕκαστός ἐστι, καὶ τὴν ἀξίαν ἐκάστοις νεῖμαι.»

ἄνδρας πρὸς Κλέανδρον |entreat; beg for; de- | κline
 περὶ τῶν
 ἀνδρῶν. ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς πέμψαντας στρατηγούς
 καὶ |captain καὶ Δρακόντιον τὸν Σπαρτιάτην καὶ τῶν
 ἄλλων οἱ ἐδόκουν |fit, suitable εἶναι δεῖσθαι Κλεάνδρου κατὰ
 πάντα τρόπον ἀφεῖναι τῷ ἄνδρῃ.

Ἐλθὼν οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· «Ἔχεις μέν, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
 τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἡ στρατιά σοι |lower; admit; | ἐβούλου
 |slack off
 ποιῆσαι καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ αὐτῶν ἀπάντων. νῦν
 δέ σε |ask for καὶ δέονται δοῦναι σφίσι τῷ ἄνδρῃ
 καὶ μὴ |kill πολλὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν
 χρόνῳ περὶ τὴν |army |be afflicted . ταῦτα δέ
 σου τυχόντες |promise, agree σοι ἀντὶ τούτων, ἣν βούλη
 ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτῶν καὶ ἣν οἱ θεοὶ |propitiōus, ', |display,
 |gracious |exhibit
 σοι καὶ ὥς |well-behaved καὶ ὥς ἱκανοὶ τῷ ἄρχοντι
 πειθόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μὴ φοβεῖσθαι.
 δέονται δέ σου καὶ τοῦτο, |be beside, attend καὶ ἄρξαντα
 ἑαυτῶν πείραν λαβεῖν καὶ Δεξίππου καὶ σφῶν τῶν ἄλλων
 οἷος ἕκαστός ἐστι, καὶ τὴν ἀξίαν ἐκάστοις |distribute

to Cleander to intercede in behalf of the men. Accordingly it was resolved to send some generals and officers with Dracontius the Spartan, and of the rest those who seemed best fitted to go. The deputation was to request Cleander by all means to release the two men.

Accordingly Xenophon came and addressed him thus: «Cleander, you have the men; the army has bowed to you and assented to do what you wished with respect to these two members of their body and themselves in general. But now they beg and pray you to give up these two men, and not to put them to death. Many a good service have these two wrought for our army in past days. Let them but obtain this from you, and in return the army promises that, if you will put yourself at their head and the gracious gods approve, they will show you how orderly they are, how apt to obey their general, and, with heaven's help, to face their foes unflinchingly. They make this further request to you, that you will present yourself and take command of them and make trial of them. 'Test us ourselves,' they say, 'and test Dexippus, what each of us is like, and afterwards assign to

*vocabulary***ἀθυμέω** (ῥ) be disheartened**ἐκεῖσε** thither**ἐκκομίζω** remove; bury a corpse**ἔνιοι** some**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe

~hegemony

ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπιθυμέω** (ῥ) wish, covet**εὐτακτος** orderly, disciplined**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony

θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ναί** yea**ξενία** hospitality ~xenophobe**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe**ξυμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:

meet, fall in with

ξύνειμι be with; have sex**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,

recommend, encourage

πορεία gait, march**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

συγκαλέω call together ~gallo**τελέθω** turn out, come around

~apostle

φιλικός friendly

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος· «Ἄλλὰ ναὶ τὼ σιώ,» ἔφη,
 «ταχύ τοι ὑμῖν ἀποκρινοῦμαι. καὶ τώ τε ἄνδρε ὑμῖν
 δίδωμι καὶ αὐτὸς παρέσομαι· καὶ ἦν οἱ θεοὶ παραδιδῶσιν,
 ἐξηγήσομαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. καὶ πολὺ οἱ λόγοι οὗτοι
 ἀντίοι εἰσὶν ἢ οὓς ἐγὼ περὶ ὑμῶν ἐνίων ἤκουον ὥς τὸ
 στράτευμα ἀφίστατε ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων.»

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐπαινοῦντες ἀπήλθον, ἔχοντες τὼ ἄνδρε·
 Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐθύετο ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ καὶ ξυνῆν Ξενοφῶντι
 φιλικῶς καὶ ξενίαν ξυνεβάλλοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρα αὐτοὺς
 τὸ παραγγελλόμενον εὐτάκτως ποιοῦντας, καὶ μᾶλλον ἔτι
 ἐπεθύμει ἡγεμῶν γενέσθαι αὐτῶν. ἐπεὶ μέντοι θυομένῳ
 αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά, συγκαλέσας
 τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπεν· «Ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ τελέθει τὰ ἱερά
 ἐξάγειν· ὑμεῖς μέντοι μὴ ἀθυμεῖτε τούτου ἔνεκα· ὑμῖν γάρ,
 ὥς ἔοικε, δέδοται ἐκκομίσαι τοὺς ἄνδρας· ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε.
 ἡμεῖς δὲ ὑμᾶς, ἐπειδὰν ἐκείσε ἤκητε, δεξόμεθα ὥς ἂν
 δυνώμεθα κάλλιστα.»

Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι αὐτῷ τὰ

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος· «Ἄλλὰ |yea τὸν σιώ,» ἔφη,
 «ταχύ τοι ὑμῖν ἀποκρινοῦμαι. καὶ τῷ τε ἄνδρῳ ὑμῖν
 δίδωμι καὶ αὐτὸς παρέσομαι· καὶ ἦν οἱ θεοὶ παραδιδῶσιν,
 |lead forth; set εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. καὶ πολὺ οἱ λόγοι οὗτοι
 |out, describe
 ἀντίοι εἰσὶν ἢ οὓς ἐγὼ περὶ ὑμῶν |some ἤκουον ὥς τὸ
 |army ἀφίστατε ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων.»

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν |concur ἰπῆλθον, ἔχοντες τὸν ἄνδρῃ·
 Κλέανδρος δὲ |rush; sacrifice ἠ |gait, καὶ ξυνηγὴν Ξενοφῶντι
 |march
 |friendly καὶ ξενίαν ξυνεβάλλοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρα αὐτοὺς
 τὸ |transmit; order, sum-|orderly, ποιοῦντας, καὶ μᾶλλον ἔτι
 |mon, recommend, en-|disciplined
 |wish, |courage |leader γενέσθαι αὐτῶν. ἐπεὶ μέντοι |rush; sacrifice
 |covet
 αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά, |call together
 τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπεν· «Ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ |turn out τὰ ἱερά
 |lead out ὑμεῖς μέντοι μὴ |be disheartened ἔνεκα· ὑμῖν γάρ,
 ὥς ἔοικε, δέδοται |remove; τοὺς ἄνδρας· ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε.
 |inter
 ἡμεῖς δὲ ὑμᾶς, |when, |thither ἤκητε, δεξόμεθα ὥς ἂν
 |after
 δυνώμεθα κάλλιστα.»

Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξε τοῖς |soldier, δοῦναι αὐτῷ τὰ
 |mercenary

each his due.’”

When Cleander heard these things, he answered: «Nay, by the twin gods, I will answer you quickly enough. Here I make you a present of the two men, and I will as you say present myself, and then, if the gods vouchsafe, I will put myself at your head and lead you into Hellas. Very different is your language from the tale I used to hear concerning you from certain people, that you wanted to withdraw the army from allegiance to the Lacedaemonians.”

After this the deputation thanked him and retired, taking with them the two men; then Cleander sacrificed as a preliminary to marching and consorted friendlyly with Xenophon, and the two struck up an alliance. When the Spartan saw with what good discipline the men carried out their orders, he was still more anxious to become their leader. However, in spite of sacrifices repeated on three successive days, the victims steadily remained unfavourable. So he summoned the generals and said to them: «The victims smile not on me, they suffer me not to lead you home; but be not out of heart at that. To you it is given, as it would appear, to bring your men safe home. Forwards then, and for our part, whenever you come yonder, we will bestow on you as warm a welcome as we may.”

Then the soldiers resolved to make him a present of

vocabulary

ἀνάβασις -τος (f) going up, mounting,
going inland
ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
δημόσιος public, the state
διατίθημι arrange; set out goods for
sale ~thesis
ἐκπλέω sail away ~float
ἐκπορεύω bring/go out
ἑκταῖος on the 6th day
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἔμπαλιν backwards, on the contrary
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
λαφυροπωλέω (ὑ) sell booty

μέχρι as far as, until
ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
~orthogonal
πορεία gait, march
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
mercenary ~strategy
συγχομίζω gather
τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle
ὑποστρέφω turn around, go back
~atrophy
φιλία friendship ~philanthropy
φίλιος friendly

δημόσια πρόβατα· ὁ δὲ δεξάμενος πάλιν αὐτοῖς ἀπέδωκε.
καὶ οὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλει. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται διαθέμενοι τὸν
σῆτον ὃν ἦσαν συγκεκομισμένοι καὶ τᾶλλα ἃ εἰλήφεσαν
ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βιθυνῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδενὶ ἐνέτυχον
πορευόμενοι τὴν ὀρθὴν ὁδόν, ὥστε ἔχοντές τι εἰς τὴν
φιλίαν ἐλθεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς τοῦμπαλιν ὑποστρέψαντας
ἐλθεῖν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσαντες
ἔλαβον πολλὰ καὶ ἀνδράποδα καὶ πρόβατα· καὶ ἀφίκοντο
ἐκταῖοι εἰς Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν
ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ λαφυροπωλοῦντες.

7

7.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου ἔπραξαν
οἱ Ἕλληνες μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κῦρος
ἐτελεύτησεν ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ μέχρι εἰς τὸν Πόντον ἀφίκοντο,
καὶ ὅσα ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου περὶ ἐξιόντες καὶ ἐκπλέοντες
ἐποιοῦν μέχρι ἔξω τοῦ στόματος ἐγένοντο ἐν Χρυσοπόλει

|public, the|cattle, flocks, ἔδ' δεξάμενος πάλιν αὐτοῖς ἀπέδωκε.
state |herds

καὶ οὗτος μὲν |sail away οἱ δὲ |soldier, |arrange; set out
|mercenary |goods for sale

|grain, ὃν ἦσαν |συγχομίζω?: gather; or ἑτάλλα ἃ εἰλήφεσαν
bread, |συγχομίζω?: gather
food

ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βιθυνῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδενὶ ἐνέτυχον

πορευόμενοι τὴν |upright, ἑστράight; |τε ἔχοντές τι εἰς τὴν
|correct, just

φιλίαν ἐλθεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς |backwards, |go back
|on the
|contrary

ἐλθεῖν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσαντες

ἔλαβον πολλὰ καὶ |slave καὶ |cattle, flocks, αἱ ἀφίκοντο
|herds

|on the 6th day, ὑσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν

ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ |sell booty

7

7.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ |going up, mount- τὰ Κύρου ἔπραξαν
|ing, going inland

οἱ |Greek |as far as, until, ἄχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κῦρος

|bring about, ἐν τῇ |gait, |as far as, until Πόντον ἀφίκοντο,
|finish |march

καὶ ὅσα ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου περὶ |go forth; is pòs-|sail away
|sible

ἐποίουσαν |as far as, until ὁ στόματος ἐγένοντο ἐν Χρυσόπολει

the public cattle, which he accepted, but again gave back to them. So he sailed away; but the soldiers made division of the corn which they had collected and of the other captured property, and commenced their homeward march through the territory of the Bithynians.

At first they confined themselves to the main road; but not chancing upon anything whereby they might reach a friendly territory with something in their pockets for themselves, they resolved to turn sharp round, and marched for one day and night in the opposite direction. By this proceeding they captured many slaves and much small cattle; and on the sixth day reached Chrysopolis in Chalcedonia. Here they halted seven days while they disposed of their booty by sale.

7

7.1

Detailed history of the fortunes of the Hellenes during their march up country with Cyrus down to the date of the battle; and, subsequently to his death, until they reached the Euxine; as also of all their doings in their efforts to escape from the Euxine, partly by land marches and partly under sail by sea, until they found themselves outside the mouth of the Black Sea (south of the

vocabulary

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
δηλόω show, disclose
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διαβιβάζω carry over
ἐπειδάν when, after
λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
μεταμέλομαι (impers.+dat.) cause regret to; (mp) regret
μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon

~pomp

μισθοφορά payment of wages
ναύαρχος admiral
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατεύω make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
συμπροθυμέομαι (υῦ) share in eagerness with
συνδιαβαίνω cross together
ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do
 ~ischemia

τῆς Ἀσίας, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβούμενος τὸ στράτευμα μὴ ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν στρατεύηται, πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον ὁ δ' ἔτυχεν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ὧν, ἐδεῖτο διαβιβάσαι τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο πάντα ποιήσῃν αὐτῷ ὅσα δέοι. καὶ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος μετεπέμψατο τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς εἰς Βυζάντιον, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ διαβαῖεν, μισθοφορὰν ἔσσεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι ἔφασαν βουλευσάμενοι ἀπαγγελεῖν, Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἤδη ἀπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ βούλοιτο ἀποπλεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν συνδιαβάντα ἔπειτα οὕτως ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. ἔφη οὖν ταῦτα ποιήσῃν.

Σεύθης δὲ ὁ Θρᾶξ πέμπει Μηδοσάδην καὶ κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα συμπροθυμείσθαι ὅπως διαβῇ τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ ταῦτα συμπροθυμηθέντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν στράτευμα διαβήσεται· τούτου ἕνεκα μηδὲν τελείτω μήτε ἐμοὶ μήτε ἄλλῳ μηδενί· ἐπειδὴν

τῆς Ἀσίας, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ |show,
|disclose

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβούμενος τὸ |army

μὴ ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν |make an expedition, |pass
|war, campaign

Ἀναξίβιον τὸν |admiral ὁ δ' ἔτυχεν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ὧν,

ἐδεῖτο |carry over τὸ |army ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ

|promise, πάντα ποιήσειν αὐτῷ ὅσα δέοι. καὶ ὁ
|agree

Ἀναξίβιος |send; (mid) summon στρατηγούς καὶ |captain

εἰς Βυζάντιον, καὶ |promise, , εἰ |pass over, |payment of wages
|agree |cross

ἔσεσθαι τοῖς |soldier,
|mercenary οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι ἔφασαν

βουλευσάμενοι |announce, or-
|der, promise Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπεν αὐτῷ

ὅτι ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἤδη ἀπὸ τῆς |army καὶ βούλοιτο

|sail away ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν |cross together

ἔπειτα οὕτως |free from, remove; ἔφη οὖν ταῦτα ποιήσειν.
|be freed, depart

Σεύθης δὲ ὁ Θρᾶξ πέμπει Μηδοσάδην καὶ κελεύει

Ξενοφῶντα |share in eagerness ὅπως |pass over, |army
|with |cross

καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ ταῦτα |συμπροθυμέομαι?: "share" in eagerness with; or
|συμπροθυμέομαι?: share in eagerness with

ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν |army |pass over, cross νύτου

ἐνεκα μηδὲν τελείτω μήτε ἐμοὶ μήτε ἄλλῳ μηδενί· |when,
|after

Bosphorus) at Chrysopolis in Asia.)

At this point Pharnabazus, who was afraid that the army might undertake a campaign against his satrapy, sent to Anaxibius, the Spartan high admiral, who chanced to be in Byzantium, and begged him to convey the army out of Asia, undertaking to comply with his wishes in every respect. Anaxibius accordingly sent to summon the generals and officers to Byzantium, and promised that the soldiers should not lack pay for service, if they crossed the strait. The officers said that they would deliberate and return an answer. Xenophon individually informed them that he was about to quit the army at once, and was only anxious to set sail. Anaxibius pressed him not to be in so great a hurry: «Cross over with the rest,” he said, «and then it will be time enough to think about quitting the army.” This the other undertook to do.

Now Seuthes the Thracian sent Medosades and begged Xenophon to use his influence to get the army across. «Tell Xenophon, if he will do his best for me in this matter, he will not regret it.” Xenophon answered: «The army is in any case going to cross; so that, as far as that is concerned, Seuthes is under no obligation to me or to any one else; but as soon as it is once across, I personally shall be

vocabulary

ἀθυμέω (ῥ) be disheartened
αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
αἷτιος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἀργύριον small coin
ἀριθμός number
ἀρμοστής -οῦ (m, 1) governor
ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
ἄχθομαι be burdened with
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διαμένω continue, persevere
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξέρπω creep out
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
ἐξοδος (f) leaving, way out

ἐπικαίριος at a fitting time; serious; vital
ἐπισιτίζομαι (ῡι) take supplies
ἐπισιτισμός (ῡι) resupply, forage
 ~parasite
ἐχθω (mp) be hated ~external
κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon people
μισθός reward, wages
ὀκνηρός timid; hesitating
ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
 ~hoplite
πορεία gait, march
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender, come in
προσφέρω present; resemble; add
σκεῦος -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
συσκευάζω pack up

δὲ διαβῆ, ἐγὼ μὲν ἀπαλλάξομαι, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς διαμένοντας καὶ ἐπικαιρίους ὄντας προσφερέσθω ὥς ἂν αὐτῷ δοκῇ ἀσφαλές.»

Ἐκ τούτου διαβαίνουσι πάντες εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον οἱ στρατιῶται. καὶ μισθὸν μὲν οὐκ ἐδίδου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος, ἐκήρυξε δὲ λαβόντας τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξιέναι, ὥς ἀποπέμψων τε ἅμα καὶ ἀριθμὸν ποιήσων. ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἤχθοντο, ὅτι οὐκ εἶχον ἀργύριον ἐπισιτίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνδρῳ τῷ ἀρμοστῇ ξένος γεγεννημένος προσελθὼν ἡσπάζετο αὐτὸν ὥς ἀποπλευσούμενος ἤδη. ὁ δὲ αὐτῷ λέγει· Μὴ ποιήσης ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μή,» ἔφη, «αἰτίαν ἔξεις, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινὲς ἤδη σὲ αἰτιῶνται ὅτι οὐ ταχὺ ἐξέρπει τὸ στράτευμα.»

Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ' αἴτιος μὲν ἔγωγε οὐκ εἰμὶ τούτου, οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται αὐτοὶ ἐπισιτισμοῦ δεόμενοι διὰ τοῦτο ἀθυμοῦσι πρὸς τὴν ἔξοδον.»

δὲ |pass over, cross |free from, remove; |ὅς δὲ τοὺς |continue,
|be freed, depart |persevere

καὶ |at a fitting time; seri- |present; resem- ὡς ἂν αὐτῷ δοκῇ
|ous; vital |ble; add

|safe, easy,
|steady, careful

Ἐκ τούτου |pass over, cross ..άντες εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον οἱ

στρατιῶται. καὶ |reward, μὲν οὐκ ἐδίδου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος,
|wages

|be a henchman, αβόντας τὰ |tool καὶ τὰ |thing, tool, vessel
|summon people

στρατιώτας ἐξιέναι, ὡς |send away τε ἅμα καὶ |number

ποιήσων. |there, here ἵ στρατιῶται ἤχθοντο, ὅτι οὐκ

εἶχον |small coin |take supplies εἰς τὴν |gait, , καὶ
|march

|timid; |pack up . καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνδρῳ τῷ
|hesitating

|governor ξένος γεγενημένος |come forward, greet, αὐτὸν
|surrender, |salute
|come in

ὡς ἀποπλευσούμενος ἦδη. ὁ δὲ αὐτῷ λέγει· Μὴ ποιήσης

ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μή,» ἔφη, «αἰτίαν ἔξεις, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινὲς

ἦδη σὲ |blame ὅτι οὐ ταχὺ |creep out . ὁ |army »

Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ' |blameworthy; ἔγωγε οὐκ εἰμὶ
|the cause

τούτου, οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται αὐτοὶ |resupply,
|forage

δεόμενοι διὰ τοῦτο ἀθνημοῦσι πρὸς τὴν |leaving, way out

quit of it. Let Seuthes, therefore, as far as he may deem consistent with prudence, apply to those who are going to remain and will have a voice in affairs.”

After this the whole body of troops crossed to Byzantium. But Anaxibius, instead of proceeding to give pay, made proclamation that, «The soldiers were to take up their arms and baggage and go forth,” as if all he wished were to ascertain their numbers and bid them god-speed at the same moment. The soldiers were not well pleased at that, because they had no money to furnish themselves with provisions for the march; and they sluggishly set about getting their baggage together. Xenophon meanwhile, being on terms of intimacy with the governor, Cleander, came to pay his host a final visit, and bid him adieu, being on the point of setting sail. But the other protested; «Do not do so, or else,” said he, «you will be blamed, for even now certain people are disposed to hold you to account because the army is so slow in getting under weigh.”

The other answered, «Nay, I am not to blame for that. It is the men themselves, who are in want of provisions; that is why they are out of heart at their exodus.”

«All the same,” he replied,

vocabulary

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἄρδην completely; all at once
ἀριθμός number
αὐτόθι on the spot
διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish ~practice
ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic
ἐντεῦθεν thence
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξέτασις scrutiny
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
ἐπειδάν when, after

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
κριθή (ι) barley plant
κώμη village
λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
μοχλός beam, lever
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
πύλη gate ~Thermopylae
πυρός (υ) wheat
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συγκαλέω call together ~gallo
συγκλείω hem in, connect, conclude
συμβουλεύω give advice; (mid) consult ~volunteer
συσκευάζω pack up
τοίνυν well, then

«Ἄλλ' ὅμως,» ἔφη, «ἐγὼ σοι συμβουλεύω ἐξελθεῖν μὲν ὡς πορευσόμενον, ἐπειδὰν δ' ἔξω γένηται τὸ στράτευμα, τότε ἀπαλλάττεσθαι.»

«Ταῦτα τοίνυν,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον διαπραξόμεθα.»

Οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευεν οὕτω ποιεῖν καὶ ἐξιέναι τὴν ταχίστην συσκευασαμένους, καὶ προσανείπεν, ὃς ἂν μὴ παρῇ εἰς τὴν ἐξέτασιν καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀριθμόν, ὅτι αὐτὸς αὐτὸν αἰτιάσεται. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξῆσαν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ πρῶτοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. καὶ ἄρδην πάντες πλὴν ὀλίγων ἔξω ἦσαν, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος εἰστήκει παρὰ τὰς πύλας ὡς ὁπότε ἔξω γένοιτο πάντες συγκλείσων τὰς πύλας καὶ τὸν μοχλὸν ἐμβαλῶν.

Ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἔλεγεν· «Τὰ μὲν ἐπιτήδεια,» ἔφη, «λαμβάνετε ἐκ τῶν Θρακίων κωμῶν· εἰσὶ δὲ αὐτόθι πολλαὶ κριθαὶ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ τᾶλλα ἐπιτήδεια· λαβόντες δὲ πορεύεσθε

«Ἄλλ' |anyway, nevertheless' σοι |give advice; ἐξελθεῖν μὲν ὥς
|(mid) consult

πορευσόμενον, |when, δ' ἔξω γένηται τὸ |army , τότε
|after

|free from, remove; >
|be freed, depart

«Ταῦτα |well, then ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «ἐλθόντες πρὸς

Ἀναξίβιον |travel over, ac- >>
|comply

Οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευεν οὕτω

ποιεῖν καὶ ἐξιέναι τὴν ταχίστην |pack up , καὶ

προσανεῖπεν, ὃς ἂν μὴ παρῇ εἰς τὴν |scrutiny καὶ εἰς τὸν

|number , ὅτι αὐτὸς αὐτὸν αἰτιάσεται. |thence |go forth;'
|is possible

τε στρατηγοὶ πρῶτοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. καὶ |completely; γες πλὴν
|all at once

ὀλίγων ἔξω ἦσαν, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος εἰσθήκει παρὰ τὰς |gate

ὥς ὁπότε ἔξω γένοιτο πάντες |συγκλείω?: hem in |gate καὶ
|connect, conclude;

τὸν |beam, |throw in; inspire
|lever |in, connect, con-
clude

Ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος |call together τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς

|captain ἔλεγεν· «Τὰ μὲν |fit, suitable >» ἔφη, «λαμβάνετε

ἐκ τῶν Θρακίων |village εἰσὶ δὲ |on the spot `λαὶ |barley καὶ
|plant

|wheat καὶ τὰλλα |fit, suitable λαβόντες δὲ πορεύεσθε

«I advise you to go out, as if you intended to march with them, and when you are well outside, it will be time enough to take yourself off.”

«Well then,” said Xenophon, «we will go and arrange all this with Anaxibius.”

They went and stated the case to the admiral, who insisted that they must do as he had said, and march out, bag and baggage, by the quickest road; and as an appendix to the former edict, he added, «Any one absenting himself from the review and the muster will have himself to blame for the consequences.” This was peremptory. So out marched, the generals first, and then the rest; and now, with the exception of here a man and there, they were all outside; it was a «clean sweep”; and Eteonicus stood posted near the gates, ready to close them, as soon as the men were fairly out, and to thrust in the bolt pin.

Then Anaxibius summoned the generals and captains, and addressed them: «Provisions you had better get from the Thracian villages; you will find plenty of barley, wheat, and other necessities in them; and when you have got them, off with you to the Chersonese,

vocabulary

ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad

ἀναπετάννυμι (ῥ) open wide

ἀναρπάζω carry off ~harpoon

ἀνοίγνυμι (ῥ) open

ἄξινη (ι) war-axe

διαγγέλλω send news, proclaim

διακόπτω cut through, interrupt

διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion

δρόμος running, racing ground

~hippodrome

εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion

ἐκβάλλω throw out, fell, let fall

~ballistic

ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily

ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic

ἐνδον in the house of; within

ἐπακούω hear, listen to ~acoustic

θέω run, run for

κατασχίζω split

κόπτω beat, cut, strike

κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle

λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company

λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain

μισθοδοτέω pay wages

μοχλός beam, lever

ὀπλίτης -ου (ι, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite

πότερος which, whichever of two

προσθέω run to

πύλη gate ~Thermopylae

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy

συγκλείω hem in, connect, conclude

ὑπερβαίνω pass, transgress ~basis

χηλή hoof

εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίσκος ὑμῖν μισθοδοτήσῃ.»
 ἐπακούσαντες δέ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ταῦτα, ἣ καὶ
 τῶν λοχαγῶν τις διαγγέλλει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ
 οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύθου πότερα
 πολέμιος εἴη ἢ φίλος, καὶ πότερα διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους δέοι
 πορεύεσθαι ἢ κύκλῳ διὰ μέσης τῆς Θράκης.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο οἱ στρατιῶται ἀναρπάσαντες
 τὰ ὄπλα θέουσι δρόμῳ πρὸς τὰς πύλας, ὥς πάλιν εἰς τὸ
 τεῖχος εἰσιόντες. ὁ δὲ Ἑτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὥς εἶδον
 προσθέοντας τοὺς ὀπλίτας, συγκλείουσι τὰς πύλας καὶ
 τὸν μοχλὸν ἐμβάλλουσιν. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἔκοπτον τὰς
 πύλας καὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι ἀδικώτατα πάσχοιεν ἐκβαλλόμενοι
 εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· κατασχίσειν τε τὰς πύλας ἔφασαν, εἰ
 μὴ ἐκόντες ἀνοίξουσιν. ἄλλοι δὲ ἔθεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν καὶ
 παρὰ τὴν χηλὴν τοῦ τεύχους ὑπερβαίνουσιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν,
 ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ ἐτύγχανον ἔνδον ὄντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὥς
 ὁρῶσι τὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πύλαις πράγματα, διακόπτοντες ταῖς
 ἀξίναῖς τὰ κλείθρα ἀναπεταννύουσι τὰς πύλας, οἱ δ'

εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίσκος ὑμῖν |pay wages >>
 |hear δέ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ταῦτα, ἣ καὶ
 τῶν λοχαγῶν τις |send news, proclaim |army καὶ
 οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύθου |which,
 πολέμιος εἷη ἢ φίλος, καὶ |which, ὃ ἀ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους δέοι
 πορεύεσθαι ἣ |circle, |wheel διὰ μέσης τῆς Θράκης.
 Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα |go through, debate ,ατιῶται |carry off
 τὰ ὄπλα |run |running πρὸς τὰς |gate , ὡς πάλιν εἰς τὸ
 τεῖχος |go in . ὁ δὲ Ἐτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὡς εἶδον
 |run to τοὺς ὀπλίτας, |hem in, con- τὰς |gate καὶ
 |nect, conclude τὸν |beam, ἐμβάλλουσιν. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται |beat, cut, strike
 |lever |gate καὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι ἀδικώτατα πάσχοιεν ἐκβαλλόμενοι
 εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους* |split τε τὰς |gate ἔφασαν, εἰ
 μὴ |willingly ἀνοίξουσιν. ἄλλοι δὲ |run ἐπὶ θάλατταν καὶ
 παρὰ τὴν |hoof τοῦ τεύχους |pass, transgress εἰς τὴν πόλιν,
 ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ ἐτύγγανον ἔνδον ὄντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὡς
 ὁρῶσι τὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς |gate πράγματα, |cut through, in- ταῖς
 |interrupt |axe τὰ κλείθρα |open wide τὰς |gate , οἱ δ'

where Cyniscus will take you into his service.” Some of the soldiers overheard what was said, or possibly one of the officers was the medium of communication; however it was, the news was handed on to the army. As to the generals, their immediate concern was to try and gain some information as to Seuthes: «Was he hostile or friendly? also, would they have to march through the Sacred mountain, or round about through the middle of Thrace?”

While they were discussing these points, the soldiers snatched up their arms and made a rush full speed at the gates, with the intention of getting inside the fortification again. But Eteonicus and his men, seeing the heavy infantry coming up at a run promptly closed the gates and thrust in the bolt pin. Then the soldiers fell to battering the gates, exclaiming that it was iniquitous to thrust them forth in this fashion into the jaws of their enemies. «If you do not of your own accord open the gates,” they cried, «we will split them in half”; and another set rushed down to the sea, and so along the break-water and over the wall into the city; while a third set, consisting of those few who were still inside, having never left the city, seeing the affair at the gates, severed the bars with axes and flung the portals wide open; and the rest came pouring

vocabulary

ἄκρα at the edge, extreme ~acute

ἀκρόπολις -εως (f) citadel, high part of a city ~acute

ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute

ἀλιευτικός of or for fishing

ἄλίσκομαι be captured ~helix

ἀνήκεστος not to be cured, soothed, appeased

ἀποφεύγω avoid, escape, go free

ἄρπαγή seizure; rape

ἄρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon

ἔθος ἔθεος (n, 3) custom, habit

~ethology

εἰσπίπτω fall into, rush in

ἐνδον in the house of; within

ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion

θέω run, run for

καθέλκω launch; carry down

κατατρέχω overrun; trash talk

μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon

~pomp

οἴκαδε homeward ~economics

περιπλέω sail around ~float

προσπίπτω attack; befall; kow-tow

πύλη gate ~Thermopylae

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

συνεισπίπτω rush in with

τριήρης trireme ~row

φρουρός watcher, guard

εἰσπίπτουσιν.

Ὁ Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὥς εἶδε τὰ γιγνόμενα, δείσας μὴ ἐφ' ἀρπαγὴν τράποιτο τὸ στράτευμα καὶ ἀνήκεστα κακὰ γένοιτο τῇ πόλει καὶ ἐαυτῷ καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἔθει καὶ συνεισπίπτει εἴσω τῶν πυλῶν σὺν τῷ ὄχλῳ. οἱ δὲ Βυζάντιοι ὥς εἶδον τὸ στράτευμα βία εἰσπίπτον, φεύγουσιν ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ οἴκαδε, ὅσοι δὲ ἔνδον ἐτύγχανον ὄντες, ἔξω, οἱ δὲ καθεῖλκον τὰς τριήρεις, ὥς ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι σῶζονται, πάντες δὲ ὥντο ἀπολωλέναι, ὥς ἐαλωκυίας τῆς πόλεως. ὁ δὲ Ἑτεόνικος εἰς τὴν ἄκραν ἀποφεύγει. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος καταδραμὼν ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἐν ἀλιευτικῷ πλοίῳ περιέπλει εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν, καὶ εὐθὺς μεταπέμπεται ἐκ Καλχηδόνας φρουρούς· οὐ γὰρ ἱκανοὶ ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει σχεῖν τοὺς ἄνδρας.

Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ὥς εἶδον Ξενοφῶντα, προσπίπτουσι πολλοὶ αὐτῷ καὶ λέγουσι· «Νῦν σοι ἔξεστιν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἀνδρὶ γενέσθαι. ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις χρήματα,

|fall into, rush in

Ὁ Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὥς εἶδε τὰ γιγνόμενα, δείσας μὴ ἐφ'
 ἄρπαγὴν τράποιτο τὸ |army καὶ |incurable κακὰ
 γένοιτο τῇ πόλει καὶ ἐαυτῷ καὶ τοῖς |soldier,
 |mercenary, ἔθει
 καὶ |rush in with εἶσω τῶν πυλῶν σὺν τῷ ὄχλῳ. οἱ
 δὲ Βυζάντιοι ὥς εἶδον τὸ |army βία |fall into, rush in
 φεύγουσιν ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ |homeward
 ὅσοι δὲ |in the house |of; within λανον ὄντες, ἔξω, οἱ δὲ |launch;
 |carry down τὰς
 |trireme, ὥς ἐν ταῖς |trireme σώζονται, πάντες δὲ ὥντο
 ἀπολωλέναι, ὥς |be captured τῆς πόλεως. ὁ δὲ Ἑτεόνικος
 εἰς τὴν ἄκραν |avoid, escape, ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος |overrun; trash
 |go free |talk
 ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἐν |of or for fishing ἰάω |sail around εἰς τὴν
 |citadel, καὶ εὐθὺς |send; (mid) summon Καλχηδόνος
 |watcher,
 |guard οὐ γὰρ ἱκανοὶ ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ ἐν τῇ |citadel
 σχεῖν τοὺς ἄνδρας.

Οἱ δὲ |soldier, ὥς εἶδον Ξενοφῶντα, |attack; befall;
 |mercenary |kow-tow
 πολλοὶ αὐτῷ καὶ λέγουσι· «Νῦν σοι ἔξεστιν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν,
 ἀνδρὶ γενέσθαι. ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις |trireme, ἔχεις χρήματα,

in.

Xenophon, seeing what was happening, was seized with alarm lest the army betake itself to pillage, and ills incurable be wrought to the city, to himself, and to the soldiers. Then he set off, and, plunging into the throng, was swept through the gates with the crowd. The Byzantines no sooner saw the soldiers forcibly rushing in than they left the open square, and fled, some to the shipping, others to their homes, while those already indoors came racing out, and some fell to dragging down their ships of war, hoping possibly to be safe on board these; while there was not a soul who doubted but that the city was taken, and that they were all undone. Eteonicus made a swift retreat to the citadel. Anaxibius ran down to the sea, and, getting on board a fisherman's smack, sailed round to the acropolis, and at once sent off to fetch over the garrison troops from Chalcedon, since those already in the acropolis seemed hardly sufficient to keep the men in check.

The soldiers, catching sight of Xenophon, threw themselves upon him, crying: «Now, Xenophon, is the time to prove yourself a man. You have got a city, you have got triremes, you have got money, you have got men;

vocabulary

διαρπάζω make prey of ~harpoon

ἐκάτερος each of two

ἐκτάσσω muster

ἐνθυμέομαι (ῥ) take to heart

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus

ἐπιθυμέω (ῥ) wish, covet

ἐρῆμος empty

κατηρεμίζω calm, appease

κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit

~ceratopsia

ὀκτώ eight ~octopus

ὀνίνημι help, please, be available

ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman ~hoplite

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

ὀργίζω anger, provoke, annoy

παρατρέχω run past

παρεγγυάω entrust; pass an order

πεδινός flat

πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops

~pelt

στρατιά army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

συγκαλέω call together ~gallo

τιμωρέω (ī) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma

χωρίον area; downwards

ἔχεις ἄνδρας τοσούτους. νῦν ἄν, εἰ βούλοιο, σύ τε ἡμᾶς
 ὀνήσαιο καὶ ἡμεῖς σὲ μέγαν ποιήσαιμεν.»

Ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· «Ἄλλ' εὖ γε λέγετε καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα·
 εἰ δὲ τούτων ἐπιθυμεῖτε, θέσθε τὰ ὄπλα ἐν τάξει ὡς
 τάχιστα·» βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς κατηρεμίσαι· καὶ αὐτός τε
 παρηγγύα ταῦτα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευε παρεγγυᾶν καὶ
 τίθεσθαι τὰ ὄπλα. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν ταπτόμενοι
 οἷ τε ὀπλῖται ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ εἰς ὀκτὼ ἐγένοντο καὶ οἱ
 πελτασταὶ ἐπὶ τὸ κέρας ἐκάτερον παρεδεδραμήκεσαν. τὸ
 δὲ χωρίον οἶον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαί ἐστι τὸ Θράκιον
 καλούμενον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ πεδινόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔκειτο
 τὰ ὄπλα καὶ κατηρεμίσθησαν, συγκαλεῖ ὁ Ξενοφῶν τὴν
 στρατιὰν καὶ λέγει τάδε.

«Ὅτι μὲν ὀργίζεσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, καὶ νομίζετε
 δεινὰ πάσχειν ἐξαπατῶμενοι οὐ θαυμάζω. ἦν δὲ τῷ θυμῷ
 χαριζόμεθα καὶ Λακεδαιμονίους τε τοὺς παρόντας τῆς
 ἐξαπάτης τιμωρησώμεθα καὶ τὴν πόλιν τὴν οὐδὲν αἰτίαν
 διαρπάσωμεν, ἐνθυμείσθε ἃ ἔσται ἐντεῦθεν. πολέμοι

ἔχεις ἄνδρας τοσούτους. νῦν ἄν, εἰ βούλοιο, σύ τε ἡμᾶς

|help, please, ἡμεῖς σέ μέγαν ποιήσαιμεν.»
|be available

Ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· «Ἄλλ' εὖ γε λέγετε καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα·

εἰ δὲ τούτων |wish, covet , θέσθε τὰ |tool ἐν τάξει ὡς

τάχιστα·» βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς |calm, appease καὶ αὐτός τε

|entrust; pass αὐτα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευε |entrust; pass καὶ
|an order |an order

τίθεσθαι τὰ |tool . οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν ταττόμενοι

οἱ τε |hoplite, heavy ἄλγῳ χρόνῳ εἰς |eight ἐγένοντο καὶ οἱ
|infantryman

|light troops ἐπὶ τὸ |horn; |each of two|run past . τὸ
|military

δὲ |area; downwards |unit λίστον |muster ἔστι τὸ Θράκιον

καλούμενον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ |flat . ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔκειτο

τὰ |tool καὶ |calm, appease , |call together Ξενοφῶν τὴν

|army καὶ λέγει τάδε.

«Ὅτι μὲν |anger, pro- ὧ ἄνδρες |soldier, καὶ νομίζετε
|voke, annoy |mercenary

δεινὰ πάσχειν |trick, cheat οὐ θαυμάζω. ἦν δὲ τῷ θυμῷ

|gratify καὶ Λακεδαιμονίους τε τοὺς παρόντας τῆς

ἐξαπάτης |take vengeance, καὶ τὴν πόλιν τὴν οὐδὲν αἰτίαν
|punish, aid

|make prey of , |take to heart ἵ ἔσται |thence . πολέμοι

to-day, if you only chose, you can do us a good turn, and we will make you a great man.”

He replied: «Nay, I like what you say, and I will do it all; but if that is what you have set your hearts on, fall into rank and take up position at once.” This he said, wishing to quiet them, and so passed the order along the lines himself, while bidding the rest to do the same: «Take up position; stand easy.” But the men themselves, by a species of self-marshalling, fell into rank, and were soon formed, the heavy infantry eight deep, while the light infantry had run up to cover either wing. The Thracian Square, as it is called, is a fine site for manouvering, being bare of buildings and level. As soon as the arms were stacked and the men’s tempers cooled, Xenophon called a general meeting of the soldiers, and made the following speech.

«Soldiers, I am not surprised at your wrath, or that you deem it monstrous treatment so to be cheated; but consider what will be the consequences if we gratify our indignation, and in return for such deception, avenge ourselves on the Lacedaemonians here present, and plunder an innocent city. We shall

vocabulary

ἀναμνησῶ (+2 acc) remind
 someone ~mnemonic
ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
βάρβαρος non-Greek
εἰκάζω liken; conjecture
ἐλαχὺς small; comp.: less ~light
ἐνδημος internal, endemic
ἐνιαυτός cycle of a year
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station
καταπολεμέω defeat in war
μείων less, smaller
νεώριον dockyard
ὅπου where
προσγίγνομαι become ally to
πρόσδος (f) approach, procession; a
 rent
τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight
 ~talent
τριακόσιοι three hundred ~three
τριήρης trireme ~row
ὑπερορία foreign
ὑπερόριος foreign
χίλιοι (ti) thousand ~kilo-

μὲν ἐσόμεθα ἀποδεδειγμένοι Λακεδαιμονίοις καὶ τοῖς συμμάχοις. οἷος δὲ πόλεμος ἂν γένοιτο εἰκάζειν δὴ πάρεστιν, ἑορακότας καὶ ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ νῦν δὴ γεγενημένα. ἡμεῖς γὰρ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἤλθομεν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους ἔχοντες τριήρεις τὰς μὲν ἐν θαλάττῃ τὰς δ' ἐν τοῖς νεωρίοις οὐκ ἐλάττους τριακοσίων, ὑπαρχόντων δὲ πολλῶν χρημάτων ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ προσόδου οὔσης κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν ἀπὸ τε τῶν ἐνδήμων καὶ τῆς ὑπερορίας οὐ μείον χιλίων ταλάντων· ἄρχοντες δὲ τῶν νήσων ἀπασῶν καὶ ἐν τε τῇ Ἀσίᾳ πολλὰς ἔχοντες πόλεις καὶ ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ ἄλλας τε πολλὰς καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο τὸ Βυζάντιον, ὅπου νῦν ἐσμεν, ἔχοντες κατεπολεμήθημεν οὕτως ὥς πάντες ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε.

«Νῦν δὲ δὴ τί ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν, Λακεδαιμονίοις μὲν καὶ τῶν ἀρχαίων συμμάχων ὑπαρχόντων, Ἀθηναίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκείνοις τότε ἦσαν σύμμαχοι πάντων προσγεγενημένων, Τισσαφέρνους δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἄλλων βαρβάρων

μὲν ἐσόμεθα |show, point out; ap-^Α ακεδαιμονίοις καὶ τοῖς
 |point; (mid) declare
 συμμάχοις. οἷος δὲ πόλεμος ἂν γένοιτο |likened; ὃν
 |conjecture
 πάρεστιν, ἐορακότας καὶ ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ νῦν δὴ
 γεγενημένα. ἡμεῖς γὰρ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἦλθομεν εἰς τὸν
 πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους
 ἔχοντες |trireme τὰς μὲν ἐν θαλάττῃ τὰς δ' ἐν τοῖς
 |dockyard οὐκ |small |three
 |hundred, ὑπαρχόντων δὲ
 πολλῶν χρημάτων ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ |approach, pro-^Ψ ἤς κατ'
 |cession; a rent
 |cycle of a year ἔτε τῶν |internal, καὶ τῆς ὑπερορίας οὐ |less,
 |endemic |smaller
 χιλίων |scale, a unit ἄρχοντες δὲ τῶν νήσων ἀπασῶν καὶ
 |of weight
 ἔν τε τῇ Ἀσίᾳ πολλὰς ἔχοντες πόλεις καὶ ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ
 ἄλλας τε πολλὰς καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο τὸ Βυζάντιον, |where ἣν
 ἐσμεν, ἔχοντες |defeat in war οὕτως ὥς πάντες ὑμεῖς
 ἐπίστασθε.

«Νῦν δὲ δὴ τί ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν, Λακεδαιμονίοις μὲν καὶ
 τῶν |ancient, from μάχων ὑπαρχόντων, Ἀθηναίων δὲ καὶ οἱ
 |the beginning
 ἐκείνοις τότε ἦσαν σύμμαχοι πάντων |become ally to
 Τισσαφέρνους δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἄλλων |non-Greek

be declared enemies of the Lacedaemonians and their allies; and what sort of war that will be, we need not go far to conjecture. I take it, you have not forgotten some quite recent occurrences. We Athenians entered into war against the Lacedaemonians and their allies with a fleet consisting of not less than three hundred line of battle ships, including those in dock as well as those afloat. We had vast treasures stored up in the city, and a yearly income which, derived from home or foreign sources, amounted to no less than a thousand talents. Our empire included all the islands, and we were possessed of numerous cities both in Asia and in Europe. Amongst others, this very Byzantium, where we are now, was ours; and yet in the end we were vanquished, as you all very well know.

«What, must we anticipate, will now be our fate? The Lacedaemonians have not only their old allies, but the Athenians and those who were at that time allies of Athens are added to them. Tissaphernes and all the rest of the Asiatics on the

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
upwards, out to sea**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**ἄφρων** senseless, unthinking ~frenzy**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**βίαιος** by force**γούν** at least then**Ἕλλην** Greek**ἐξαλαπάζω** sack, destroy**ἐπιδέω** fasten; lack**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad**μυρίος** (ἰ) 10,000 ~myriad**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**ὄργυια** fathom, arm's length ~reach**ὄργυιά** fathom, arm's length**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain
~genus**προίστημι** put forward; (+gen) be
head of, guard ~station**προσδοκάω** expect**στέρομαι** lack, lose**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,
campaign ~strategy**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult
~volunteer**τοίνυν** well, then

πάντων πολεμίων ἡμῖν ὄντων, πολεμιωτάτου δὲ αὐτοῦ
 τοῦ ἄνω βασιλέως, ὃν ἤλθομεν ἀφαιρησόμενοι τὴν
 ἀρχὴν καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεθα; τούτων δὴ
 πάντων ὁμοῦ ὄντων ἔστι τις οὕτως ἄφρων ὅστις
 οἶεται ἂν ἡμᾶς περιγενέσθαι; μὴ πρὸς θεῶν μαινώμεθα
 μηδ' αἰσχροῶς ἀπολώμεθα πολέμοι ὄντες καὶ ταῖς
 πατρίσι καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις αὐτῶν φίλοις τε καὶ
 οἰκείοις. ἐν γὰρ ταῖς πόλεσίν εἰσι πάντες ταῖς ἐφ' ἡμᾶς
 στρατευσομέναις, καὶ δικαίως, εἰ βάρβαρον μὲν πόλιν
 οὐδεμίαν ἠθελήσαμεν κατασχεῖν, καὶ ταῦτα κρατοῦντες,
 Ἑλληνίδα δὲ εἰς ἣν πρώτην ἤλθομεν πόλιν, ταύτην
 ἐξαλαπάξομεν. ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν εὖχομαι πρὶν ταῦτα ἐπιδεῖν
 ὑφ' ὑμῶν γενόμενα μυρίας ἐμέ γε κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὀργυιὰς
 γενέσθαι. καὶ ὑμῖν δὲ συμβουλεύω Ἑλλήνας ὄντας τοῖς
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων προεστηκόσι πειθομένους πειρᾶσθαι τῶν
 δικαίων τυγχάνειν. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ δύνησθε ταῦτα, ἡμᾶς δεῖ
 ἀδικουμένους τῆς γοῦν Ἑλλάδος μὴ στέρεσθαι. καὶ νῦν μοι
 δοκεῖ πέμψαντας Ἀναξιβίῳ εἰπεῖν ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐδὲν βίαιον

πάντων πολεμίων ἡμῖν ὄντων, πολεμιωτάτου δὲ αὐτοῦ
 τοῦ ἄνω βασιλέως, ὃν ἤλθομεν |take away τὴν
 ἀρχὴν καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεθα; τούτων δὴ
 πάντων ὁμοῦ ὄντων ἔστι τις οὕτως |senseless, |itis
 |unthinking
 οἶεται ἂν ἡμᾶς |surpass; sur-, μὴ πρὸς θεῶν |be berserk
 |vive; attain
 μῆδ' |shameful ἀπολώμεθα πολέμοι ὄντες καὶ ταῖς
 πατρίσι καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις αὐτῶν φίλοις τε καὶ
 οἰκείοις. ἐν γὰρ ταῖς πόλεσιν εἰσι πάντες ταῖς ἐφ' ἡμᾶς
 |make an expedition, καὶ δικαίως, εἰ |non-Greek μὲν πόλιν
 |war, campaign
 οὐδεμίαν ἠθελήσαμεν κατασχεῖν, καὶ ταῦτα κρατοῦντες,
 Ἑλληνίδα δὲ εἰς ἣν πρώτην ἤλθομεν πόλιν, ταύτην
 |sack, destroy . ἐγὼ μὲν |well, then ἔχομαι πρὶν ταῦτα ἐπιδεῖν
 ὑφ' ὑμῶν γενόμενα |10,000 ἐμέ γε κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὀργυιὰς
 γενέσθαι. καὶ ὑμῖν δὲ |give advice;|Greek ὄντας τοῖς
 |(mid) consult
 τῶν |Greek προεστηκόσι πειθομένους πειρᾶσθαι τῶν
 δικαίων τυγχάνειν. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ δύνησθε ταῦτα, ἡμᾶς δεῖ
 ἀδικουμένους τῆς |at least then ὅς μὴ |lack, lose . καὶ νῦν μοι
 δοκεῖ πέμψαντας Ἀναξιβίῳ εἰπεῖν ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐδὲν |by force

seaboard are our foes, not to speak of our arch-enemy, the king himself, up yonder, whom we came to deprive of his empire, and to kill, if possible. I ask then, with all these banded together against us, is there any one so insensate as to imagine that we can survive the contest? For heaven's sake, let us not go mad or loosely throw away our lives in war with our own native cities—nay, our own friends, our kith and our kin; for in one or other of the cities they are all included. Every city will march against us, and not unjustly, if, after refusing to hold one single barbarian city by right of conquest, we seize the first Hellenic city that we come to and make it a ruinous heap. For my part, my prayer is that before I see such things wrought by you, I, at any rate, may lie ten thousand fathoms under ground! My counsel to you, as Hellenes, is to try and obtain your just rights, through obedience to those who stand at the head of Hellas; and if so be that you fail in those demands, why, being more sinned against than sinning, need we rob ourselves of Hellas too? At present, I propose that we should send to Anaxibius and tell him that we have made an entrance

vocabulary

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
ἀφθονία abundance
βλώσκω come, go
δέλτος writing tablet
δηλόω show, disclose
ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
ἔρπω be able to move ~serpent
ἐτοιμός ready; fulfilled
μεταμέλομαι (impers.+dat.) cause
 regret to; (mp) regret
μολίσκω come, go
οἴκοι at home ~economics

οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
παρέρχομαι pass, escape
περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
ποτή flight? ~petal
ποτός potable
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
σιτίον (ῠ) grain, bread, food ~parasite
στρατηγία office of command, strategy
 ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy

ποιήσοντες παρεληλύθαμεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἀλλ' ἦν μὲν
 δυνώμεθα παρ' ὑμῶν ἀγαθόν τι εὐρίσκεσθαι, εἰ δὲ μή,
 ἀλλὰ δηλώσοντες ὅτι οὐκ ἐξαπατῶμενοι ἀλλὰ πειθόμενοι
 ἐξερχόμεθα.»

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε τὸν Ἡλείον
 ἐροῦντα ταῦτα καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ Φιλήσιον
 Ἀχαιόν. οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ὥχοντο ἐροῦντες.

Ἔτι δὲ καθημένων τῶν στρατιωτῶν προσέρχεται
 Κοιρατάδας Θηβαῖος, ὃς οὐ φεύγων τὴν Ἑλλάδα περιήρει
 ἀλλὰ στρατηγιῶν καὶ ἐπαγγελλόμενος, εἴ τις ἢ πόλις
 ἢ ἔθνος στρατηγοῦ δέοιτο· καὶ τότε προσελθὼν ἔλεγεν
 ὅτι ἔτοιμος εἶη ἡγείσθαι αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον
 τῆς Θράκης, ἔνθα πολλὰ κάγαθὰ λήψοιντο· ἔστε δ' ἂν
 μολῶσιν, εἰς ἀφθονίαν παρέξειν ἔφη καὶ σιτία καὶ ποτά.

Ἀκούουσι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ τὰ παρὰ Ἀναξιβίου
 ἅμα ἀπαγγελλόμενα ἀπεκρίνατο γὰρ ὅτι πειθομένους
 αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλὰ τοῖς τε οἴκοι τέλεσι ταῦτα

ποιήσονται |pass, escape εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἀλλ' ἦν μὲν
 δυνώμεθα παρ' ὑμῶν ἀγαθόν τι εὐρίσκεσθαι, εἰ δὲ μή,
 ἀλλὰ |show, disclose ὅτι οὐκ |trick, cheat ἀλλὰ πειθόμενοι
 ἐξερχόμεθα.»

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε τὸν Ἡλείον
 ἐροῦντα ταῦτα καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ Φιλήσιον
 Ἀχαιόν. οἱ μὲν ταῦτα |come, go ἐροῦντες.

Ἦτι δὲ καθημένων τῶν |soldier, |come forward, sur-
 |mercenary |render, come in
 Κοιρατάδας Θηβαῖος, ὃς οὐ φεύγων τὴν Ἑλλάδα |be superior to; be
 |left over; still exist
 ἀλλὰ στρατηγιῶν καὶ ἐπαγγελλόμενος, εἴ τις ἢ πόλις
 ἢ ἔθνος στρατηγοῦ δέοιτο· καὶ τότε |come forward, |sur- |ν
 |render, come in
 ὅτι ἕτοιμος εἴη ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον
 τῆς Θράκης, ἔνθα πολλὰ καγαθὰ λήψονται· ἔστε δ' ἂν
 μόλωσιν, εἰς |abundance παρέξειν ἔφη καὶ |grain, καὶ ποτά.
 |bread,
 |food
 Ἀκούουσι ταῦτα τοῖς |soldier, καὶ τὰ παρὰ Ἀναξιβίου
 |mercenary
 ἅμα |announce, order, ἀπεκρίνατο γὰρ ὅτι πειθομένοις
 |promise
 αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλὰ τοῖς τε |at home |λεσι ταῦτα

into the city, not meditating violence, but merely to discover if he and his will show us any good; for if so, it is well; but of otherwise, at least we will let him see that he does not shut the door upon us as dupes and fools. We know the meaning of discipline; we turn our backs and go.”

This resolution was passed, and they sent Hieronymus an Eleian, with two others, Eurylochus an Arcadian and Philesius an Achaean, to deliver the message. So these set off on their errand.

But while the soldiers were still seated in conclave, Coeratadas, of Thebes, arrived. He was a Theban not in exile, but with a taste for generalship, who made it his business to see if any city or nation were in need of his services. Thus, on the present occasion, he presented himself, and begged to state that he was ready to put himself at their head, and lead them into the Delta of Thrace, as it is called, where they would find themselves in a land of plenty; but until they got there, he would provide them with meat and drink enough and to spare.

While they were still listening to this tale, the return message from Anaxibius came. His answer was: «The discipline, they had spoken of, was not a thing they would regret; indeed he would report their behaviour to the authorities at home; and for himself,

vocabulary

ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix

ἄλφιτον barley meal

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
~angel

ἀποπλέω sail away ~float

δάσμευσις divvying up

διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
~practice

ἐλάα olive, olive tree ~olive

ἐνδον in the house of; within

θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

ἱερεῖον animal victim ~hieroglyph

κατατίθηναι put down, deposit, lay
aside ~thesis

κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon
people

κλείω tell of; close

κρόμμυον onion

μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis

μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon
~pomp

μόλις with difficulty, barely

πέρνημι export, sell as a slave ~porno

πιπράσκω export, sell as a slave

~porno

ποτή flight? ~petal

ποτός potable

πύλη gate ~Thermopylae

σιτίον (ι) grain, bread, food ~parasite

σχόροδον garlic

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιά army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
mercenary ~strategy

συντίθηναι hearken, mark ~thesis

ὕστεραίος the next; later

φορτίον burden, load

ἀπαγγελεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς βουλευσοῖτο περὶ αὐτῶν ὅ τι δύναιτο ἀγαθόν, ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν τε Κοιρατάδαν δέχονται στρατηγὸν καὶ ἔξω τοῦ τείχους ἀπῆλθον. ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδας συντίθεται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν παρέσεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἔχων καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ μάντιν καὶ σιτία καὶ ποτὰ τῇ στρατιᾷ.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐξῆλθον, ὁ Ἀναξίβιος ἔκλεισε τὰς πύλας καὶ ἐκήρυξεν ὡς ἂν ἀλῶ ἔνδον ὧν τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅτι πεπράσεται. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ Κοιρατάδας μὲν ἔχων τὰ ἱερεῖα καὶ τὸν μάντιν ἦκε καὶ ἄλφιστα φέροντες εἶποντο αὐτῷ εἴκοσιν ἄνδρες καὶ οἶνον ἄλλοι εἴκοσι καὶ ἐλαῶν τρεῖς καὶ σκοροδῶν ἀνὴρ ὅσον ἐδύνατο μέγιστον φορτίον καὶ ἄλλος κρομμύων. ταῦτα δὲ καταθέμενος ὡς ἐπὶ δάσμευσιν ἐθύετο.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ μεταπεμφάμενος Κλέανδρον ἐκέλευε διαπραῖξαι ὅπως εἰς τὸ τεῖχος εἰσέλθοι καὶ ἀποπλεύσαι ἐκ Βυζαντίου. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Κλέανδρος, Μάλα μόλις, ἔφη, διαπραξάμενος ἦκω· λέγειν γὰρ Ἀναξίβιον ὅτι

ἀπαγγελεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς βουλευέσαιοτο περὶ αὐτῶν ὅ τι δύναιτο

ἀγαθόν, ἐκ τούτου οἱ

soldier,	τόν τε Κοιρατάδαν
mercenary	

δέχονται στρατηγὸν καὶ ἔξω τοῦ τείχους ἀπήλθον. ὁ

δὲ Κοιρατάδας |hearken, mark... ὑποῖς εἰς τὴν |the next; later

παρέσεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ |army ἔχων καὶ |animal καὶ |seer
victims

καὶ |grain, καὶ ποτὰ τῇ |army
bread,
food

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐξῆλθον, ὁ Ἀναξίβιος |tell of; close |gate καὶ

be a henchman, sum-	be	in the house τῶν	soldier, ὅτι
mon people	cap-	of; within	mercenary

πεπράσεται. τῇ ^{tured} ^{the next; later} ἑρατάδας μὲν ἔχων τὰ

|animal καὶ τὸν |seer ἦκε καὶ |barley meal ῥοντες εἶποντο
|victim

αὐτῷ εἴκοσιν ἄνδρες καὶ οἶνον ἄλλοι εἴκοσι καὶ |olive

τρεῖς καὶ |garlic ἀνὴρ ὅσον ἐδύνατο μέγιστον |burden, load

καὶ ἄλλος |onion ταῦτα δὲ |put down ὡς ἐπὶ

|divvyng up |rush; sacrifice

Ξενοφῶν δὲ |send; (mid) summon Κλέανδρον ἐκέλευε

travel over, ὅπως εἰς τὸ τεῖχος εἰσέλθοι καὶ | sail away
accomplish

ἐκ Βυζαντίου. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Κλέανδρος, Μάλα with difficulty,
barely

travel over, accomplish

he would take advice and do the best he could for them.” Thereupon the soldiers accepted Coeratadas as their general, and retired without the walls. Their new general undertook to present himself to the troops next day with sacrificial beasts and a soothsayer, with eatables also and drinkables for the army.

Now, as soon as they were gone out, Anaxibius closed the gates and issued a proclamation to the effect that «any of the soldiers caught inside should be knocked down to the hammer and sold at once.” Next day, Coeratadas arrived with the victims and the soothsayer. A string of twenty bearers bearing barleymeal followed at his heels, succeeded by other twenty carrying wine, and three laden with a supply of olives, and two others carrying, the one about as much garlic as a single man could lift, and the other a similar load of onions. These various supplies he set down, apparently for distribution, and began to sacrifice.

Now Xenophon sent to Cleander, begging him to arrange matters so that he might be allowed to enter the walls, with a view to starting from Byzantium on his homeward voyage. Cleander came, and this is what he said: «I have come; but I was barely able to arrange what you

vocabulary

ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume
 ἀπείπον refuse, renounce, declare
 ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute
 βωμός altar; stand, pedestal
 διαμετρέω measure ~metric
 εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to
 mind ~ion
 εἰσίημι (mid) speed to ~jet
 ἐκπλέω sail away ~float
 ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack
 ἐνδον in the house of; within
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
 θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
 ἱερεῖον animal victim ~hieroglyph

καλλιερέω have good signs
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
 πλησίος near, neighboring
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
 σῖτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
 στασιάζω revolt, be divided
 στεφανώ crown
 στρατηγία office of command, strategy
 ~strategy
 στρατιά army ~strategy
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later

οὐκ ἐπιτήδειον εἶη τοὺς μὲν στρατιώτας πλησίον εἶναι τοῦ τείχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ἔνδον· τοὺς Βυζαντίους δὲ στασιάζειν καὶ πονηροὺς εἶναι πρὸς ἀλλήλους· ὅμως δὲ εἰσιέναι, ἔφη, ἐκέλευεν, εἰ μέλλεις σὺν αὐτῷ ἐκπλεῖν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν ἀσπασάμενος τοὺς στρατιώτας εἶσω τοῦ τείχους ἀπήει σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ.

Ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδας τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐκαλλιέρει οὐδὲ διεμέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις· τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ τὰ μὲν ἱερεῖα εἰστήκει παρὰ τὸν βωμὸν καὶ Κοιρατάδας ἐστεφανωμένος ὥς θύσων· προσελθὼν δὲ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς καὶ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος καὶ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἔλεγον Κοιρατάδα μὴ θύειν, ὥς οὐχ ἡγησόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ κελεύει διαμετρεῖσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πολλῶν ἐνέδει αὐτῷ ὥστε ἡμέρας σῖτον ἐκάστῳ γενέσθαι τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἀναλαβὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα ἀπήει καὶ τὴν στρατηγίαν ἀπειπών.

οὐκ |fit, suitable εἴη τοὺς μὲν |soldier, |near εἶναι
 |mercenary
 τοῦ τείχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ |in the house; |Βυζαντίους δὲ
 |of; within
 |revolt, be divided ἵκνησθαι εἶναι πρὸς ἀλλήλους· |anyway, nevertheless
 εἰσιέναι, ἔφη, ἐκέλευεν, εἰ μέλλεις σὺν αὐτῷ |sail away ὁ
 μὲν δὲ Ξενοφῶν |greet, salute τοὺς |soldier, εἴσω τοῦ
 |mercenary
 τείχους ἀπῆι σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ.

Ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδας τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ |have good signs
 οὐδὲ διεμέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοῖς |soldier, τῇ δ' |the next; later
 |mercenary
 τὰ μὲν |animal εἰστίκει παρὰ τὸν |altar καὶ Κοιρατάδας
 |victim
 |crown ὥς |rush; sac-|come forward, σὺν-Τιμασίῳ
 |rifice |render, come in
 ὁ Δαρδανεύς καὶ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναιῖς καὶ Κλεάνωρ
 ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἔλεγον Κοιρατάδα μὴ |rush; sacrifice ὑχ
 ἡγησόμενον τῇ |army . εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ |fit, suitable ὁ
 δὲ κελεύει |measure . ἐπεὶ δὲ πολλῶν |tie to αὐτῷ
 ὥστε ἡμέρας |grain, ἐκάστῳ γενέσθαι τῶν |soldier,
 |bread, |mercenary
 |take up, recover, food ἰπῆι καὶ τὴν |office of com-|refuse, re-
 |resume |victim |mand, strategy|nounce, declare

want. Anaxibius insisted: 'It was not convenient that Xenophon should be inside while the soldiers are close to the walls without; the Byzantines at sixes and sevens moreover; and no love lost between the one party of them and the other.' Still, he ended by bidding you to come inside, if you were really minded to leave the town by sea with himself." Accordingly Xenophon bade the soldiers good-bye, and returned with Cleander within the walls.

To return to Coeratadas. The first day he failed to get favourable signs at the sacrifice, and never a dole of rations did he make to the soldiers. On the second day the victims were standing ready near the altar, and so was Coeratadas, with chaplet crowned, all ready to sacrifice, when up comes Timasion the Dardanian, with Neon the Asinaean, and Cleanor of Orchomenus, forbidding Coeratadas to sacrifice: «He must understand there was an end to his generalship, unless he gave them provisions." The other bade them measure out the supplies, «Pray, dole them out." But when he found that he had a good deal short of a single day's provisions for each man, he picked up his paraphernalia of sacrifice and withdrew. As to being general, he would have nothing more to say to it.

vocabulary

ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διατρίβω (ι) wear down, delay
 ~tribology
ἐπιμένω wait, stay ~remain
καταμίγνυμι mix in
κατέρχομαι come down, out from
κώμη village
οἴκαδε homeward ~economics
ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
 ~hoplite

πέραν (ᾱ) on the other side, across
προέρχομαι proceed, come out
προίστημι put forward; (+gen) be
 head of, guard ~station
στασιάζω revolt, be divided
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up
 station ~strategy
χῶρος place ~heir

7.2

Νέων δὲ ὁ Ἀσιναῖος καὶ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ Φιλήσιος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ Ξανθικλῆς ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς ἐπέμενον ἐπὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ εἰς κόμας τῶν Θρακῶν προελθόντες τὰς κατὰ Βυζάντιον ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο. καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐστασίαζον, Κλεάνωρ μὲν καὶ Φρυνίσκος πρὸς Σεύθην βουλόμενοι ἄγειν· ἔπειθε γὰρ αὐτούς, καὶ ἔδωκε τῷ μὲν ἵππον, τῷ δὲ γυναῖκα· Νέων δὲ εἰς Χερρόνησον, οἰόμενος, εἰ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίοις γένοιτο, παντὸς ἂν προεστάναι τοῦ στρατεύματος·

Τιμασίων δὲ προθυμεῖτο πέραν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν πάλιν διαβῆναι, οἰόμενος ἂν οἴκαδε κατελθεῖν. καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ταῦτα ἐβούλοντο. διατριβομένου δὲ τοῦ χρόνου πολλοὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν τὰ ὄπλα ἀποδιδόμενοι κατὰ τοὺς χώρους ἀπέπλεον ὥς ἐδύναντο, οἱ δὲ καὶ εἰς τὰς πόλεις κατεμίγνυντο. Ἀναξίβιος δ' ἔχαιρε ταῦτα ἀκούων, διαφθειρόμενον τὸ στράτευμα· τούτων γὰρ γιγνομένων

7.2

Νέων δὲ ὁ Ἀσιναῖος καὶ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ
 Φιλήσιος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ Ξανθικλῆς ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ
 Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεύς |wait, stay ἐπὶ τῇ |army , καὶ εἰς
 |village τῶν Θρακῶν |proceed, come out ` κατὰ Βυζάντιον
 |encamp or take up καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ |revolt, be divided
 station
 Κλεάνωρ μὲν καὶ Φρυνίσκος πρὸς Σεύθην βουλόμενοι
 ἄγειν· ἔπειθε γὰρ αὐτούς, καὶ ἔδωκε τῷ μὲν ἵππον,
 τῷ δὲ γυναῖκα· Νέων δὲ εἰς Χερρόνησον, οἰόμενος, εἰ
 ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίοις γένοντο, παντὸς ἂν προεστάναι τοῦ
 |army
 Τιμασίων δὲ προυθυμεῖτο |across εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν πάλιν
 |pass over, cross εἰς τὸν ἄν |home- |come down, ... out |soldier,
 ward |from |mercenary
 ταῦτα ἐβούλοντο. |wear down, delay ἔξ τοῦ χρόνου πολλοὶ
 τῶν |soldier, οἱ μὲν τὰ |tool ἀποδιδόμενοι κατὰ
 |mercenary
 τοὺς |place |sail away ὥς ἐδύναντο, οἱ δὲ καὶ εἰς τὰς
 πόλεις |mix in Ἀναξίβιος δ' ἔχαιρε ταῦτα ἀκούων,
 διαφθειρόμενον τὸ |army τούτων γὰρ γιγνομένων

7.2

Now these five were left—Neon the Asinaean, Phryniscus the Achaean, Philesius the Achaean, Xanthicles the Achaean, Timasion the Dardanian—at the head of the army, and they pushed on to some villages of the Thracians facing Byzantium, and there encamped. Now the generals could not agree. Cleanor and Phryniscus wished to march to join Seuthes, who had worked upon their feelings by presenting one with a horse and the other with a woman to wife. But Neon's object was to come to the Chersonese: «When we are under the wing of the Lacedaemonians,” he thought, «I shall step to the front and command the whole army.”

Timasion's one ambition was to cross back again into Asia, hoping to be reinstated at home and end his exile. The soldiers shared the wishes of the last general. But, as time dragged on, many of the men sold their arms at different places and set sail as best they could; others (actually gave away their arms, some here, some there, and) became absorbed in the cities. One man rejoiced. This was Anaxibius, to whom the break-up of the army was a blessing. «That is

vocabulary

ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
ἀναγκάζω force, compel
ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
ἀρμοστής -οῦ (m, 1) governor
διάδοχος being successor
διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
 ~practice
ἐλαχύς small; comp.: less ~light
ἐπιστέλλω send to, order
θεραπεύω help, serve ~therapy
κάμνω toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be
 troubled; be sick
μηχανή machine; mechanism, way
ναυαρχέω be admiral
ναύαρχος admiral
οἰκτείρω pity

ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how
 great
παραπλέω sail past ~float
πέρνημι export, sell as a slave ~porno
πιπράσκω export, sell as a slave
 ~porno
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
σύγκειμαι be composed of, agreed on
συναντάω encounter
τετρακόσιοι 400
τέχνη craft, art, plan, contrivance
 ~technology
ὑπολείπω leave as a leftover; leave a
 person behind ~eclipse
χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma

ᾧετο μάλιστα χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζω.

Ἀποπλέοντι δὲ Ἀναξιβίῳ ἐκ Βυζαντίου συναντᾷ Ἀρίσταρχος ἐν Κυζίκῳ διάδοχος Κλεάνδρῳ Βυζαντίου ἁρμοστής· ἐλέγετο δὲ ὅτι καὶ ναύαρχος διάδοχος Πῶλος ὅσον οὐ παρείη ἤδη εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον. καὶ Ἀναξίβιος τῷ μὲν Ἀριστάρχῳ ἐπιστέλλει ὁπόσους ἂν εὖρῃ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ τῶν Κύρου στρατιωτῶν ὑπολελειμμένους ἀποδόσθαι· ὁ δὲ Κλέανδρος οὐδένα ἐπεπράκει, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς κάμνοντας ἐθεράπευεν οἰκτίρων καὶ ἀναγκάζων οἰκία δέχεσθαι· Ἀρίσταρχος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθε τάχιστα, οὐκ ἐλάττους τετρακοσίων ἀπέδοτο. Ἀναξίβιος δὲ παραπλεύσας εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον κατὰ τὰ συγκείμενα. ὁ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο Ἀρίσταρχόν τε ἦκοντα εἰς Βυζάντιον ἁρμοστὴν καὶ Ἀναξίβιον οὐκέτι ναυαρχοῦντα, Ἀναξιβίου μὲν ἡμέλησε, πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον δὲ διεπράττετο τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ Κύρου στρατεύματος ἅπερ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα κελεύει πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ πλεῦσαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ὥς τάχιστα,

ᾧετο μάλιστα |gratify Φαρναβάζω.

|sail away δὲ Ἀναξιβίω ἐκ Βυζαντίου |encounter

Ἀρίσταρχος ἐν Κυζίκω |being successor ἄνδρῳ Βυζαντίου

|governor ἐλέγετο δὲ ὅτι καὶ |admiral |being successor ὅς

ὅσον οὐ παρείη ἤδη εἰς Ἑλλήσποντον. καὶ Ἀναξίβιος τῷ

μὲν Ἀριστάρχῳ |send to, or-as/how many/great, ἐν Βυζαντίῳ
|der

τῶν Κύρου |soldier, |leave (food, person) ἀποδόσθαι
|mercenary

ὁ δὲ Κλέανδρος οὐδένα ἐπεπράκει, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς

|toil, acquire,|help, serve οἰκτίρων καὶ |force, compel οἰκία
|be tired

δέχεσθαι Ἀρίσταρχος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθε τάχιστα, οὐκ |small

|400 ἀπέδοτο. Ἀναξίβιος δὲ |sail past εἰς

Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον κατὰ τὰ |be composed
|of, agreed on

ὁ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο Ἀρίσταρχόν τε ἦκοντα εἰς Βυζάντιον

|governor καὶ Ἀναξίβιον οὐκέτι |be admiral Ἀναξιβίου

μὲν |disregard, πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον δὲ |travel over, ac- τὰ αὐτὰ
|comply

περὶ τοῦ Κύρου |army ἅπερ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα κελεύει πάσῃ

|craft καὶ |machine; mecha- u ἐπὶ τὸ |army ὥς τάχιστα,
|nism, way

the way," he said to himself, «I can best gratify Pharnabazus.»

But Anaxibius, while prosecuting his voyage from Byzantium, was met at Cyzicus by Aristarchus, the new governor, who was to succeed Cleander at Byzantium; and report said that a new admiral, Polus, if he had not actually arrived, would presently reach the Hellespont and relieve Anaxibius. The latter sent a parting injunction to Aristarchus to be sure and sell all the Cyreian soldiers he could lay hands on still lingering in Byzantium; for Cleander had not sold a single man of them; on the contrary, he had made it his business to tend the sick and wounded, pitying them, and insisting on their being received in the houses. Aristarchus changed all that, and was no sooner arrived in Byzantium than he sold no less than four hundred of them. Meanwhile Anaxibius, on his coasting voyage, reached Parium, and, according to the terms of their agreement, he sent to Pharnabazus. But the latter, learning that Aristarchus was the new governor at Byzantium, and that Anaxibius had ceased to be admiral, turned upon him a cold shoulder, and set out concocting the same measures concerning the Cyreian army with Aristarchus, as he had lately been at work upon with Anaxibius.

Anaxibius thereupon summoned Xenophon and bade him, by every manner of means, sail to the army with the utmost

vocabulary

ἀποσπάω tear/drag away
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διαβιβάζω carry over
διαπλέω sail through
διασπείρω scatter, dissipate
Ἕλληγν Greek
ἐπιστολή message, letter
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
ὀκτακόσιοι 800
παράγω deflect; bring forward
προπέμπω send, send ahead ~pomp
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up station ~strategy
συγχέω entangle, destroy, confound
συμπέμπω send with ~pomp
συναθροίζω assemble, gather
συνέχω keep together, constrain
τριακόντορος (f) 30-oared ship
ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do ~ischemia
χωρίς separately; except, other than ~heir

καὶ συνέχειν τε αὐτὸ καὶ συναθροίζειν τῶν διεσπαρμένων
ὥς ἂν πλείστους δύνηται, καὶ παραγαγόντα εἰς τὴν
Πέρινθον διαβιβάζειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα· καὶ
δίδωσιν αὐτῷ τριακόντορον καὶ ἐπιστολὴν καὶ ἄνδρα
συμπέμπει κελεύοντα τοὺς Περινθίους ὥς τάχιστα
Ξενοφῶντα προπέμψαι τοῖς ἵπποις ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ
ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα·
οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐδέξαντο ἡδέως καὶ εὐθὺς εἶποντο
ἄσμενοι ὥς διαβησόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.

Ὁ Δὲ Σεύθης ἀκούσας ἤκοντα πάλιν πέμψας πρὸς
αὐτὸν κατὰ θάλατταν Μηδοσάδην ἐδεῖτο τὴν στρατιὰν
ἄγειν πρὸς ἑαυτόν, ὑπισχνούμενος αὐτῷ ὅ τι ᾔετο
λέγων πείσειν. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδὲν οἶόν τε
εἶη τούτων γενέσθαι. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἀκούσας
ᾔχετο. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρινθον,
Νέων μὲν ἀποσπάσας ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο χωρὶς ἔχων
ὥς ὀκτακοσίους ἀνθρώπους· τὸ δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα
πᾶν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Περινθίων ἦν.

καὶ συνέχειν τε αὐτὸ καὶ ^{|assemble, gather} τῶν ^{|scatter, dissipate}
ὥς ἂν πλείστους δύνηται, καὶ ^{|deflect; bring forward} εἰς τὴν
Πέρινθον ^{|carry over} εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα· καὶ
δίδωσιν αὐτῷ ^{|30-oared ship} καὶ ^{|message, letter} καὶ ἄνδρα
^{|send with} κελεύσοντα τοὺς Περινθίους ὥς τάχιστα
Ξενοφῶντα ^{|send, send ahead} ἵπποις ἐπὶ τὸ ^{|army} . καὶ
ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ^{|sail through} ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ ^{|army}
οἱ δὲ ^{|soldier, mercenary} ἐδέξαντο ^{|sweet} καὶ εὐθὺς εἶποντο
^{|be pleased, enjoy} ^{|pass over, cross} ἐκ τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.
Ὁ Δὲ Σεύθης ἀκούσας ἤκοντα πάλιν πέμψας πρὸς
αὐτὸν κατὰ θάλατταν Μηδοσάδην ἐδείτο τὴν ^{|army}
ἄγειν πρὸς ἑαυτόν, ^{|promise, agree} αὐτῷ ὅ τι ᾔετο
λέγων πείσειν. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδὲν οἶόν τε
εἶη τούτων γενέσθαι. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἀκούσας
^{|come, go} οἱ δὲ ^{|Greek} ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρινθον,
Νέων μὲν ^{|tear/drag away} ^{|encamp or take up station} ^{|separately; - except, other than}
ὥς ^{|800} ἀνθρώπους· τὸ δ' ἄλλο ^{|army}
πάν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Περινθίων ἦν.

speed, and keep it together. «He was to collect the scattered fragments and march them down to Perinthus, and thence convey them across to Asia without loss of time.” And herewith he put a thirty-oared galley at his service, and gave him a letter of authority and an officer to accompany him, with an order to the Perinthians «to escort Xenophon without delay on horseback to the army.” So it was that Xenophon sailed across and eventually reached the army. The soldiers gave him a joyous welcome, and would have been only too glad to cross from Thrace into Asia under his leadership.

But Seuthes, hearing that Xenophon had arrived, sent Medosades again, by sea to meet him, and begged him to bring the army to him; and whatever he thought would make his speech persuasive, he was ready to promise him. But the other replied, that none of these things were open to him to do; and with this answer Medosades departed, and the Hellenes proceeded to Perinthus. Here on arrival Neon withdrew his troops and encamped apart, having about eight hundred men; while the remainder of the army lay in one place under the walls of Perinthus.

After this, Xenophon set himself

vocabulary

ἀπεῖπον refuse, renounce, declare

ἀπολέγω pick; decline

ἄρμοστής -οῦ (m, 1) governor

διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis

διάγω lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion

ἐνθάδε here, hither

ἐξαγγέλλω bring news out ~angel

θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

καταδύω enter, sink

λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain

μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon

~pomp

ναύαρχος admiral

ναύκληρος ship master, landlord

οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

περαιόω carry across ~pierce

προπέμπω send, send ahead ~pomp

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy

συλλαμβάνω seize, capture; understand ~epilepsy

τοῖνον well, then

τριήρης trireme ~row

ὑστεραίῳς the next; later

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἔπραττε περὶ πλοίων, ὅπως ὅτι τάχιστα διαβαῖεν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἀφικόμενος Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἁρμοστής, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπεισμένος ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου τοῖς τε ναυκλήροις ἀπέειπε μὴ διάγειν ἐλθὼν τε ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοῖς στρατιώταις εἶπε μὴ περαιουῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσε «καὶ ἐμὲ πρὸς τοῦτο ἔπεμψεν ἐνθάδε.»

Πάλιν δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἔλεξεν· «Ἀναξίβιος μὲν τοίνυν οὐκέτι ναύαρχος, ἐγὼ δὲ τῇδε ἁρμοστής· εἰ δέ τινα ὑμῶν λήψομαι ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, καταδύσω.» ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ὄχρετο εἰς τὸ τεῖχος.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ μεταπέμπεται τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἤδη δὲ ὄντων πρὸς τῷ τείχει ἐξαγγέλλει τις τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι εἰ εἴσεισι, συλληφθήσεται καὶ ἢ αὐτοῦ τι πείσεται ἢ καὶ Φαρναβάζω παραδοθήσεται. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα τοὺς μὲν προπέμπεται, αὐτὸς δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι θύσαί τι βούλοιτο. καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐθύετο εἰ παρεῖεν αὐτῷ οἱ θεοὶ πειρᾶσθαι

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἔπραττε περὶ πλοίων, ὅπως ὅτι
 τάχιστα |pass over, cross| τούτῳ ἀφικόμενος Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ
 ἐκ Βυζαντίου |governor| , ἔχων δύο |trireme| , πεπεισμένος
 ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου τοῖς τε |ship master, ἀπείπε μὴ |lead through; pass a
 |landlord| time
 ἐλθὼν τε ἐπὶ τὸ |army| τοῖς |soldier, εἶπε μὴ
 |mercenary|
 |carry across| εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι
 Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσε «καὶ ἐμὲ πρὸς τοῦτο ἔπεμψεν |here, .»
 |hither|
 Πάλιν δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἔλεξεν· «Ἀναξίβιος μὲν |well, then| .έτι
 |admiral| , ἐγὼ δὲ τῇδε |governor| εἰ δέ τινα ὑμῶν λήψομαι
 ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, καταδύσω.» ταῦτ' εἰπὼν |come, go| ἰς τὸ
 τεῖχος.

Τῇ δ' |the next; |send; (mid) summon| ἰς στρατηγοὺς καὶ
 |later|
 |captain| τοῦ |army| . ἥδη δὲ ὄντων πρὸς
 τῷ τείχει |bring news out| ἰς τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι εἰ |go in| ,
 |seize, capture; un-| καὶ ἡ αὐτοῦ τι πείσεται ἢ καὶ Φαρναβάζῳ
 |derstand|
 παραδοθήσεται. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα τοὺς μὲν
 |send, send ahead| ὑτὸς δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι |rush; sacrifice| ᾔλειτο. καὶ
 ἀπελθὼν |rush; sacrifice| , ῥεῖεν αὐτῷ οἱ θεοὶ πειρᾶσθαι

to find vessels, so as to lose no time in crossing. But in the interval Aristarchus, the governor from Byzantium, arrived with a couple of war-ships, being moved to do so by Pharnabazus. To make doubly sure, he first forbade the skippers and shipmasters to carry the troops across, and then he visited the camp and informed the soldiers that their passage into Asia was forbidden. Xenophon replied that he was acting under the orders of Anaxibius, who had sent him thither for this express purpose; to which Aristarchus retorted, «For the matter of that, Anaxibius is no longer admiral, and I am governor in this quarter; if I catch any of you at sea, I will sink you.” With these remarks he retired within the walls of Perinthus.

Next day, he sent for the generals and officers of the army. They had already reached the fortification walls, when some one brought word to Xenophon that if he set foot inside, he would be seized, and either meet some ill fate there or more likely be delivered up to Pharnabazus. On hearing this Xenophon sent forward the rest of the party, but for himself pleaded that there was a sacrifice which he wished to offer. In this way he contrived to turn back and consult the victims, «Would the gods allow

vocabulary

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
 ἄρμοστής -οῦ (m, 1) governor
 ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
 δείλη afternoon ~diem
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
 ἐγγύς near
 ἑξήκοντα sixty
 ἐπιβουλή a plot, scheme ~volunteer
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
 ἐπιτυγχάνω meet, attain
 ἐρημος empty
 θόρυβος noise, clamor
 κατακλείω enclose; shut up
 κωλύω (ῥ) hinder, prevent

λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
 μεταχωρέω go, migrate
 οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
 παραλαμβάνω receive, undertake,
 associate with
 ποῖ whither? how long?
 πυρός (ῥ) wheat
 πυρόω burn something
 σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
 σπάνις -εως (f) scarcity, rarity
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
 τριήρης trireme ~row

πρὸς Σεύθην ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα. ἑώρα γὰρ οὔτε διαβαίνειν ἀσφαλὲς ὃν τριήρεις ἔχοντας τοῦ κωλύσοντος, οὔτ' ἐπὶ Χερρόνησον ἐλθὼν κατακλεισθῆναι ἐβούλετο καὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐν πολλῇ σπάνει πάντων γενέσθαι ἔνθα πείθεσθαι μὲν ἀνάγκη τῷ ἐκεί ἀρμοσθῇ, τῶν δὲ ἐπιτηδείων οὐδὲν ἔμελλεν ἔξειν τὸ στράτευμα.

Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀμφὶ ταῦτ' εἶχεν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἤκουτες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι σφᾶς κελεύει, τῆς δειλῆς δὲ ἤκειν· ἔνθα καὶ δῆλη μᾶλλον ἐδόκει ἢ ἐπιβουλή. ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἀσφαλῶς πρὸς Σεύθην ἰέναι, παραλαβὼν Πολυκράτην τὸν Ἀθηναῖον λοχαγὸν καὶ παρὰ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἑκάστου ἄνδρα πλὴν παρὰ Νέωνος ᾧ ἕκαστος ἐπίστευεν ὥχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τὸ Σεύθου στράτευμα ἐξήκοντα στάδια.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἦσαν αὐτοῦ, ἐπιτυχᾶναι πυροῖς ἐρήμοις. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ὥετο μετακεχωρηκέναι ποὶ τὸν Σεύθην· ἐπεὶ δὲ θορύβου τε ἦσθετο καὶ σημαινόντων

πρὸς Σεύθην ἄγειν τὸ |army . . . ἑώρα γὰρ οὐτε

|pass over, safe, easy, trireme ἔχοντος τοῦ |hinder, ,
|cross |steady, careful |prevent
οὐτ' ἐπὶ Χερρόνησον ἐλθὼν |enclose; shut up ἐβούλετο καὶ

τὸ |army ἐν πολλῇ |scarcity, πάντων γενέσθαι ἔνθα
|rarity

πείθεσθαι μὲν ἀνάγκη τῷ ἐκεῖ |governor , τῶν δὲ |fit, suitable

οὐδὲν ἔμελλεν ἔξειν τὸ |army .

Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀμφὶ ταῦτ' εἶχεν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ

|captain ἦγοντες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου |announce, or- ὅτι
|der, promise

νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι σφᾶς κελεύει, τῆς |afternoon ἦκειν· ἔνθα

καὶ |visible, ὁπλῶν ἐδόκει ἡ |a plot, scheme ὅν Ξενοφῶν,
|conspicuous

ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ |army

ἀσφαλῶς πρὸς Σεύθην ἰέναι, |receive, undertake, |υκράτην
|associate with

τὸν Ἀθηναῖον |captain καὶ παρὰ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐκάστου

ἄνδρα πλὴν παρὰ Νέωνος ᾧ ἕκαστος ἐπίστευεν |come, go ἦς

νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τὸ Σεύθου |army |sixty στάδια.

Ἐπεὶ δ' |near ἦσαν αὐτοῦ, |meet, attain πυροῖς ἐρήμοις.

καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ᾤετο |go, migrate ποι τὸν

Σεύθην· ἐπεὶ δὲ |noise, τε ἤσθετο καὶ |give orders to;
|clamor |show; mark

him to try and bring the army over to Seuthes?" On the one hand it was plain that the idea of crossing over to Asia in the face of this man with his ships of war, who meant to bar the passage, was too dangerous. Nor did he altogether like the notion of being blocked up in the Chersonese with an army in dire need of everything; where, besides being at the beck and call of the governor of the place, they would be debarred from the necessities of life.

While Xenophon was thus employed, the generals and officers came back with a message from Aristarchus, who had told them they might retire for the present, but in the afternoon he would expect them. The former suspicions of a plot had now ripened to a certainty. Xenophon meantime had ascertained that the victims were favourable to his project. He personally, and the army as a whole, might with safety proceed to Seuthes, they seemed to say. Accordingly, he took with him Polycrates, the Athenian captain, and from each of the generals, not including Neon, some one man whom they could in each case trust, and in the night they set off to visit the army of Seuthes, sixty furlongs distant.

As they approached, they came upon some deserted watch-fires, and their first impression was that Seuthes had shifted his position; but presently perceiving a confused sound (the voices of Seuthes' people signalling to

vocabulary

ἀναπηδάω leap up, start up
ἄρνημαι get, win
διακόσιοι (ἄ) two hundred
ἐκχαλινώω unbridle
ἐρμηνεύς -ος (m) interpreter
ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go
 searching through
καίω burn ~caustic
καταμανθάνω examine, observe
καταφανής clearly seen
κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
νυκτοφύλαξ night-watchman
ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how
 great
ὅπου where
παραλαμβάνω receive, undertake,
 associate with
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops

~pelt
πρόγονος elder, ancestor ~genus
προπέμπω send, send ahead ~pomp
πρόσεμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
προσίημι be allowed near
πυρά pyre ~pyre
σκευοφόρος pack animal, porter
σκότος darkness, shadow ~shadow
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συγγίγνομαι associate with, meet, have
 sex ~genus
τύρσις tower, castle
φάος φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl)
 eyes ~photon
φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery
χιλώω (i) graze

ἀλλήλοις τῶν περὶ Σεύθην, κατέμαθεν ὅτι τούτου ἔνεκα τὰ πυρὰ κεκαυμένα εἶη τῷ Σεύθῃ πρὸ τῶν νυκτοφυλάκων, ὅπως οἱ μὲν φύλακες μὴ ὀρῶντο ἐν τῷ σκότει ὄντες μήτε ὅπόσοι μήτε ὅπου εἶεν, οἱ δὲ προσιόντες μὴ λανθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ φῶς καταφανεῖς εἶεν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθετο, προπέμπει τὸν ἐρμηνέα ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων, καὶ εἰπεῖν κελεύει Σεύθῃ ὅτι Ξενοφῶν πάρεστι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ ἤροντο εἰ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος ὁ ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔφη οὗτος εἶναι, ἀναπηδήσαντες ἐδίωκον· καὶ ὀλίγον ὕστερον παρήσαν πελτασταὶ ὅσον διακόσιοι, καὶ παραλαβόντες Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ ἦγον πρὸς Σεύθην. ὁ δ' ἦν ἐν τύρσει μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ἵπποι περὶ αὐτὴν κύκλῳ ἐγκεχαλινωμένοι· διὰ γὰρ τὸν φόβον τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας ἐχίλου τοὺς ἵππους, τὰς δὲ νύκτας ἐγκεχαλινωμένοις ἐφυλάττετο. ἐλέγετο γὰρ καὶ πρόσθεν Τήρης ὁ τούτου πρόγονος ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ πολὺ ἔχων στρατεύμα ὑπὸ τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν πολλοὺς ἀπολέσαι καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα

ἀλλήλοις τῶν περὶ Σεύθην, |examine, observe ὅτι τούτου ἔνεκα τὰ

|pyre |burn εἷη τῷ Σεύθῃ πρὸ τῶν |night-watchman ,

ὅπως οἱ μὲν |guard; sentry μὴ ὀρώντο ἐν τῷ |darkness ὄντες

μήτε |as/how many/great |where εἶεν, οἱ δὲ προσιόντες μὴ

λανθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ φῶς |clearly seen εἶεν· ἐπεὶ δὲ

ἤσθετο, |send, send ahead |interpreter ἔν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων, καὶ

εἰπεῖν κελεύει Σεύθῃ ὅτι Ξενοφῶν πάρεστι βουλόμενος

|associate with, meet, have sex αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ ἤροντο εἰ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος ὁ

ἀπὸ τοῦ |army ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔφη οὗτος εἶναι,

|leap up, start up εδίων· καὶ ὀλίγον ὕστερον παρήσαν

|light troops ὅσον |two hundred |receive, undertake, associate with

καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ ἤγον πρὸς Σεύθην. ὁ δ' ἦν ἐν

|tower, castle μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ἵπποι περὶ αὐτὴν |circle, wheel

|unbridle διὰ γὰρ τὸν φόβον τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας

|graze τοὺς ἵππους, τὰς δὲ νύκτας |unbridle

ἐφυλάττετο. ἐλέγετο γὰρ καὶ πρόσθεν Τήρης ὁ τούτου

|elder, ancestor ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ πολὺ ἔχων |army ὑπὸ

τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν πολλοὺς ἀπολέσαι καὶ τὰ |pack animal, porter

one another), the explanation dawned on him: Seuthes kept his watch-fires kindled in front of, instead of behind, his night pickets, in order that the outposts, being in the dark, might escape notice, their numbers and position thus being a mystery; whilst any party approaching from the outside, so far from escaping notice, would, through the glare of the fire, stand out conspicuously. Perceiving how matters stood, Xenophon sent forward his interpreter, who was one of the party, and bade him inform Seuthes that Xenophon was there and craved conference with him. The others asked if he were an Athenian from the army yonder, and no sooner had the interpreter replied, «Yes, the same,” than up they leapt and galloped off; and in less time than it takes to tell a couple of hundred peltasts had come up who seized and carried off Xenophon and those with him and brought them to Seuthes. The latter was in a tower right well guarded, and there were horses round it in a circle, standing all ready bitted and bridled; for his alarm was so great that he gave his horses their provender during the day, and during the nights he kept watch and ward with the brutes thus bitted and bridled. It was stated in explanation that in old days an ancestor of his, named Teres, had been in this very country with a large army, several of whom he had lost at the hands of the native inhabitants, besides being robbed of his baggage

vocabulary

ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
ἐγγύς near
ἐνδον in the house of; within
ἐπέρομαι ask as well; ask then
κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit
 ~ceratopsia
πάντοσε in all directions

πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic
πρεσβεύω be the elder, be an
 ambassador
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συμπροθυμέομαι (υῦ) share in
 eagerness with
ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do
 ~ischemia
χωρίον area; downwards

ἀφαιρεθῆναι· ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Θυνοί, πάντων λεγόμενοι εἶναι
μάλιστα νυκτὸς πολεμκώτατοι.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἦσαν, ἐκέλευσεν εἰσελθεῖν Ξενοφῶντα
ἔχοντα δύο οὓς βούλοιτο. ἐπειδὴ δ' ἔνδον ἦσαν, ἡσπάζοντο
μὲν πρῶτον ἀλλήλους καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον
κέρατα οἴνου προύπινον· παρῆν δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης τῷ
Σεύθῃ, ὅσπερ ἐπρέσβευεν αὐτῷ πάντοσε. ἔπειτα δὲ
Ξενοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν·

«Ἐπεμψας πρὸς ἐμέ, ὦ Σεύθῃ, εἰς Καλχηδόνα πρῶτον
Μηδοσάδην τουτονί, δεόμενός μου συμπροθυμηθῆναι
διαβῆναι τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνούμενός
μοι, εἰ ταῦτα πράξαιμι, εὖ ποιήσεις, ὥς ἔφη Μηδοσάδης
οὗτος.» ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπήρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἀληθῇ
ταῦτα εἶη. ὁ δ' ἔφη. «Αὐθις ἦλθε Μηδοσάδης οὗτος
ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ διέβην πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ Παρίου,
ὑπισχνόμενος, εἰ ἄγοιμι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς σέ, τᾶλλα τέ
σε φίλω μοι χρήσεσθαι καὶ ἀδελφῷ καὶ τὰ παρὰ θαλάττῃ
μοι χωρία ὧν σὺ κρατεῖς ἔσεσθαι παρὰ σοῦ.» ἐπὶ τούτοις

|take away ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Θυνοί, πάντων λεγόμενοι εἶναι
 μάλιστα νυκτὸς |warlike, hostile .

Ἐπεὶ δ' |near ἦσαν, ἐκέλευσεν εἰσελθεῖν Ξενοφῶντα
 ἔχοντα δύο οὓς βούλοιτο. ἐπειδὴ δ' |in the ἡ|house|greet, salute
 |of; within
 μὲν πρῶτον ἀλλήλους καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον

|horn; οἶνου προύπινον· παρῆν δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης τῷ
 |military
 |unit
 Σεύθῃ, ὅσπερ |be the elder, be an ἁm-|in all directions'..εἰτα δὲ
 |bassador
 Ξενοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν·

«Ἐπεμψας πρὸς ἐμέ, ὦ Σεύθῃ, εἰς Καλχηδόνα πρῶτον

Μηδοσάδην τουτονί, δεόμενός μου |συμπροθυμέομαι?: share
 |in eagerness with; or
 |pass over, cross|army ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ |συμπροθυμέομαι?: share in
 |eagerness with

μοι, εἰ ταῦτα πράξαιμι, εὖ ποιήσῃς, ὥς ἔφη Μηδοσάδης

οὗτος.» ταῦτα εἰπὼν |ask as well; ὃν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἀληθῇ
 |ask then

ταῦτα εἶη. ὁ δ' ἔφη. «Αὐθις ἦλθε Μηδοσάδης οὗτος

ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ |pass over, cross ἐπὶ τὸ |army ἐκ Παρίου,

|promise, agree , εἰ ἄγοιμι τὸ |army πρὸς σέ, τὰλλα τέ

σε φίλῳ μοι χρήσεσθαι καὶ ἀδελφῷ καὶ τὰ παρὰ θαλάττῃ

μοι |area; downwards, ιτεῖς ἔσεσθαι παρὰ σοῦ.» ἐπὶ τούτοις

train. The inhabitants of the country are Thynians, and they are reputed to be far the most warlike set of fighters—especially at night.

When they drew near, Seuthes bade Xenophon enter, and bring with him any two he might choose. As soon as they were inside, they first greeted one another warmly, and then, according to the Thracian custom, pledged themselves in bowls of wine. There was further present at the elbow of Seuthes, Medosades, who on all occasions acted as his ambassador in chief. Xenophon took the initiative and spoke as follows: «You have sent to me, Seuthes, once and again. On the first occasion you sent Medosades yonder, to Chalcedon, and you begged me to use my influence in favour of the army crossing over from Asia. You promised me, in return for this conduct on my part, various kindnesses; at least that is what Medosades stated”; and before proceeding further he turned to Medosades and asked, «Is not that so?” The other assented. «Again, on a second occasion, the same Medosades came when I had crossed over from Parium to rejoin the army; and he promised me that if I would bring you the army, you would in various respects treat me as a friend and brother. He said especially with regard to certain seaboard places of which you are the owner and lord, that you were minded to make me a present of

*vocabulary***ἄρнуμαι** get, win**ἀφηγέομαι** lead; tell, relate**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through**ἴσκω** imitate, liken to, guess ~victor**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**λοχαγέω** (ἄ) lead a company**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

πιστός faithful; trustworthy**πράξις** -εως (f) result, business

~practice

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**σύμφημι** assent, concede**τοίνυν** well, then

πάλιν ἤρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἔλεγε ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ συνέφη καὶ ταῦτα. «Ἵθι νυν,» ἔφη, «ἀφήγησαι τούτῳ τί σοι ἀπεκρινάμην ἐν Καλχηδόνι πρῶτον.»

«Ἀπεκρίνω ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσοιτο εἰς Βυζάντιον καὶ οὐδὲν τούτου ἔνεκα δέοι τελεῖν οὔτε σοὶ οὔτε ἄλλῳ· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπεί διαβαίης, ἀπιέναι ἔφησθα· καὶ ἐγένετο οὕτως ὥσπερ σὺ ἔλεγες.»

«Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον,» ἔφη, «ὅτε κατὰ Σηλυμβρίαν ἀφίκου;»

«Οὐκ ἔφησθα οἷόν τε εἶναι, ἀλλ' εἰς Πέρινθον ἐλθόντας διαβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.»

«Νῦν τοίνυν,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «πάρειμι καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οὗτος Φρυνίσκος εἰς τῶν στρατηγῶν καὶ Πολυκράτης οὗτος εἰς τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἔξω εἰσὶν ἀπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν ὁ πιστότατος ἐκάστῳ πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ. εἰ οὖν βούλει πιστοτέραν εἶναι τὴν πρᾶξιν, καὶ ἐκείνους κάλεσαι. τὰ δὲ ὄπλα σὺ ἐλθὼν εἰπέ, ὦ Πολύκρατες, ὅτι ἐγὼ κελεύω καταλιπεῖν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖ καταλιπὼν τὴν

πάλιν ἤρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἔλεγε ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ [|]assent,
[|]concede
καὶ ταῦτα. «[|]imitate, liken[|]φη, «ἀφήγησαι τούτῳ τί σοι
[|]to, guess
ἀπεκρινάμην ἐν Καλχηδόνι πρῶτον.»

«Ἀπεκρίνω ὅτι τὸ [|]army [|]pass over, cross[|]. Βυζάντιον
καὶ οὐδὲν τούτου ἔνεκα δέοι τελεῖν οὔτε σοὶ οὔτε ἄλλῳ·
αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπεὶ [|]pass over, cross[|] ἵνα ἔφησθα· καὶ ἐγένετο οὕτως
ὥσπερ σὺ ἔλεγες.»

«Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον,» ἔφη, «ὅτε κατὰ Σηλυμβρίαν ἀφίκου;»

«Οὐκ ἔφησθα οἷόν τε εἶναι, ἀλλ' εἰς Πέρινθον ἐλθόντας
[|]pass over, cross[|] τὴν Ἀσίαν.»

«Νῦν [|]well, then[|] ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «πάρειμι καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ
οὗτος Φρυγίσκος εἰς τῶν στρατηγῶν καὶ Πολυκράτης
οὗτος εἰς τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἔξω εἰσὶν ἀπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν
ὁ [|]faithful;
[|]trustworthy[|] ἐκάστω πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ. εἰ
οὖν βούλει [|]faithful;
[|]trustworthy[|] εἶναι τὴν [|]result,
[|]business[|] καὶ ἐκείνους
κάλεσαι. τὰ δὲ [|]tool[|] σὺ ἐλθὼν εἰπέ, ὦ Πολύκρατες, ὅτι
ἐγὼ κελεύω [|]leave behind,
[|]abandon[|] καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖ [|]leave behind,
[|]abandon[|] τὴν

them.” At this point he again questioned Medosades, «Whether the words attributed to him were exact?” and Medosades once more fully assented. «Come now,” proceeded Xenophon, «recount what answer I made you, and first at Chalcedon.” «You answered that the army was, in any case, about to cross over to Byzantium; and as far as that went, there was no need to pay you or any one else anything; and for yourself, you added, that once across you were minded to leave the army, which thing came to pass even as you said.” «Well! what did I say,” he asked, «at your next visit, when you came to me in Selybria?” «You said that the proposal was impossible; you were all going to Perinthus to cross into Asia.” «Good,” said Xenophon, «and in spite of it all, at the present moment, here I am myself, and Phryniscus, one of my colleagues, and Polycrates yonder, a captain; and outside, to represent the other generals (all except Neon the Laconian), the trustiest men they could find to send. So that if you wish to give these transactions the seal of still greater security, you have nothing to do but to summon them also; and do you, Polycrates, go and say from me, that I bid them leave their arms outside, and you can leave

vocabulary

ἄλλότριος someone else's; alien ~alien
ἀποβλέπω stare at, adore
εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion
εἰσίημι (mid) speed to ~jet
ἐκβάλλω throw out, fell, let fall
 ~ballistic
ἐκπίπτω fall out of ~petal
ἐκτρέφω raise, rear
ἐνδίφριος sitting on the same seat
ἐπειδάν when, after
ἐπέρομαι ask as well; ask then
εὖνοος kindly; favorable
ἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee
καθέζομαι act: set, seat; pass: sit

down, sit up
ληίζομαι plunder ~lucre
μάχαιρα knife, dagger
νεανίσκος (ᾱ) young man
νοσέω be sick, be mad, suffer
νόσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
ὀπόσος as many as, how many, how great
ὄρφανός orphan
πατρῷος of the father(s), ancestral
 ~paternal
πατρῷος of the father(s), ancestral
στρατιά army ~strategy
συγγενεύς inborn, kin to
συγγενής inborn, kin to
τράπεζα a table ~trapezoid

μάχαιραν εἴσιθι.»

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδενὶ ἂν ἀπιστήσειεν Ἀθηναίων· καὶ γὰρ ὅτι συγγενεῖς εἶεν εἰδέναι καὶ φίλους εὖνους ἔφη νομίζειν. μετὰ ταῦτα δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλθον οὓς ἔδει, πρῶτον Ξενοφῶν ἐπήρετο Σεύθην ὃ τι δέοιτο χρήσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὦδε. Μαισάδης ἦν πατήρ μοι, ἐκείνου δὲ ἦν ἀρχὴ Μελανδίται καὶ Θυνοὶ καὶ Τρανύβαι. ἐκ ταύτης οὖν τῆς χώρας, ἐπεὶ τὰ Ὀδρυσῶν πράγματα ἐνόησεν, ἐκπεσὼν ὁ πατήρ αὐτὸς μὲν ἀποθνήσκει νόσῳ, ἐγὼ δ' ἐξετράφην ὀρφανὸς παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ νεανίσκος ἐγενόμην, οὐκ ἐδυνάμην ζῆν εἰς ἀλλοτρίαν τράπεζαν ἀποβλέπων· καὶ ἐκαθεζόμην ἐνδίφριος αὐτῷ ἱκέτης δοῦναί μοι ὅπόσους δυνατὸς εἴη ἄνδρας, ὅπως καὶ τοὺς ἐκβαλόντας ἡμᾶς εἴ τι δυναίμην κακὸν ποιοίην καὶ ζῆην μὴ εἰς τὴν ἐκείνου τράπεζαν ἀποβλέπων. ἐκ τούτου μοι δίδωσι τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους οὓς ὑμεῖς ὄψεσθε ἐπειδὰν ἡμέρα γένηται. καὶ νῦν ἐγὼ ζῶ τούτους ἔχων, ληζόμενος τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ πατρώαν χώραν. εἰ δέ μοι ὑμεῖς

|knife εἴσιθι.»

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδενὶ ἂν ἀπιστήσκειν Ἀθηναίων· καὶ γὰρ ὅτι συγγενεῖς εἶεν εἰδέναι καὶ φίλους εὖνους ἔφη νομίζειν. μετὰ ταῦτα δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλθον οὓς ἔδει,

πρῶτον Ξενοφῶν |ask as well; |εύθην ὅ τι δέοιτο χρῆσθαι τῇ
|ask then

|army ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὦδε. Μαισάδης ἦν πατήρ μοι, ἐκείνου δὲ ἦν ἀρχὴ Μελανδίται καὶ Θυνοὶ καὶ Τρανύβαι. ἐκ ταύτης

οὖν τῆς χώρας, ἐπεὶ τὰ Ὀδρυσῶν πράγματα |be sick, be
|mad, suffer

|fall out of ὁ πατήρ αὐτὸς μὲν ἀποθνήσκει |plague ἐγὼ δ'

|raise, rear |orphan παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. ἐπεὶ

δὲ |young man ἐγενόμην, οὐκ ἐδυνάμην ζῆν εἰς |someone
|else's; alien

|a table |stare at, adore καὶ ἐκαθεζόμην |sitting on the ὑπὸ
|same seat

|suppliant, |ὑναί μοι |as/how many/great ἔϊν ἄνδρας, ὅπως καὶ
|refugee

τοὺς |throw out, ἡμᾶς εἴ τι δυναίμην κακὸν ποιοίην καὶ
|fell, let fall

ζήην μὴ εἰς τὴν ἐκείνου |a table |stare at, adore. ἐκ τούτου

μοι δίδωσι τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους οὓς ὑμεῖς ὄψεσθε

|when, |ἡμέρα γένηται. καὶ νῦν ἐγὼ ζῶ τούτους ἔχων,
|after

|λῆίζομαι?: plunder; or τοῦ πατρώαν χώραν. εἰ δέ μοι ὑμεῖς
|λῆίζομαι?: plunder

your own sword outside before you enter with them on your return.”

When Seuthes had heard so far, he interposed: «I should never mistrust an Athenian, for we are relatives already, I know; and the best of friends, I believe, we shall be.” After that, as soon as the right men entered, Xenophon first questioned Seuthes as to what use he intended to make of the army, and he replied as follows: «Maesades was my father; his sway extended over the Melanditae, the Thynians, and the Tranipsae. Then the affairs of the Odrysians took a bad turn, and my father was driven out of this country, and later on died himself of sickness, leaving me to be brought up as an orphan at the court of Medocus, the present king. But I, when I had grown to man’s estate, could not endure to live with my eyes fixed on another’s board. So I seated myself on the seat by him as a suppliant, and begged him to give me as many men as he could spare, that I might wreak what mischief I could on those who had driven us forth from our land; that thus I might cease to live in dependence upon another’s board, like a dog watching his master’s hand. In answer to my petition, he gave me the men and the horses which you will see at break of day, and nowadays I live with these, pillaging my own ancestral land. But if you would join me, I think, with the help of heaven, we might easily recover my empire. That

vocabulary

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
ἀπολαμβάνω receive, recover, take
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy
διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
 ~practice
διμοιρία double share; 2/3
ἐνδίφριος sitting on the same seat
ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals
 ~zygote
κοινωνός partner
κυζικηνός unit of currency
λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company
λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain

οἶκησις -εως (f) habitation
ὀπόσος as many as, how many, how
 great
παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend
 ~genus
σεαυτοῦ yourself
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
τειχίζω build
τετραμοιρία quadruple share
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand;
 submit to
χωρίον area; downwards
ὠνέομαι buy

παραγένοισθε, οἶμαι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ῥαδίως ἀπολαβεῖν τὴν ἀρχήν. ταῦτ' ἐστὶν ἃ ἐγὼ δέομαι.

Τί ἂν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺ δύναιο, εἰ ἔλθοιμεν, τῇ τε στρατιᾷ διδόναι καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς καὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς; λέξον, ἵνα οὗτοι ἀπαγγέλλωσιν. ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο τῷ μὲν στρατιώτῃ κυζικηνόν, τῷ δὲ λοχαγῷ διμοιρίαν, τῷ δὲ στρατηγῷ τετραμοιρίαν, καὶ γῆν ὁπόσῃν ἂν βούλωνται καὶ ζεύγη καὶ χωρίον ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ τετειχισμένον. Ἐὰν δέ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ταῦτα πειρώμενοι μὴ διαπράξωμεν, ἀλλὰ τις φόβος ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ἦ, δέξῃ εἰς τὴν σεαυτοῦ, ἐάν τις ἀπιέναι βούληται παρὰ σέ; ὁ δ' εἶπε· Καὶ ἀδελφούς γε ποιήσομαι καὶ ἐνδιφρίους καὶ κοινωνοὺς ἀπάντων ὧν ἂν δυνώμεθα κτᾶσθαι. σοὶ δέ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ θυγατέρα δώσω καὶ εἴ τις σοὶ ἔστι θυγάτηρ, ὠνήσομαι Θρακίῳ νόμῳ, καὶ Βισάνθην οἴκησιν δώσω, ὅπερ ἐμοὶ κάλλιστον χωρίον ἐστὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ.»

|be beside, attend, ῥίμαι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ῥαδίως |receive, recover, take
|aside, cut off

τὴν ἀρχήν. ταῦτ' ἐστὶν ἃ ἐγὼ δέομαι.

Τί ἂν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺ δύναιο, εἰ ἔλθοιμεν, τῇ τε

|army διδόναι καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς καὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς;

λέξον, ἵνα οὗτοι |announce, order, ὁ δ' |promise τῷ μὲν
|promise

|soldier, |unit of currency, δὲ |captain |double , τῷ δὲ
|mercenary |share; 2/3

στρατηγῷ |quadruple share , καὶ γῆν |as/how many/great ...νται

καὶ |team καὶ |area; downwards ἑστῇ |build . Ἐὰν δέ,

ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ταῦτα πειρώμενοι μὴ |travel over, ac-, ἀλλὰ
|comply

τις φόβος ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ᾗ, δέξῃ εἰς τὴν |yourself , ἐάν

τις ἀπιέναι βούληται παρὰ σέ; ὁ δ' εἶπε· Καὶ ἀδελφούς

γε ποιήσομαι καὶ |sitting on the same|partner ἀπάντων ὧν
|seat

ἂν δυνώμεθα κτᾶσθαι. σοὶ δέ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ θυγατέρα

δώσω καὶ εἴ τις σοὶ ἔστι θυγάτηρ, |buy Θρακίῳ

νόμῳ, καὶ Βισάνθην |habitation ὥσω, ὅπερ ἐμοὶ κάλλιστον

|area; downwards ἑπὶ θαλάττῃ.»

is what I want of you.” «Well then,” said Xenophon, «supposing we came, what should you be able to give us? the soldiers, the officers, and the generals? Tell us that these witnesses may report your answer.” And he promised to give «to the common soldiers a cyzicene, to a captain twice as much, and to a general four times as much, with as much land as ever they liked, some yoke of oxen, and a fortified place upon the seaboard.” «But now supposing,” said Xenophon, «we fail of success, in spite of our endeavours; suppose any intimidation on the part of the Lacedaemonians should arise; will you receive into your country any of us who may seek to find a refuge with you?” He answered: «Nay, not only so, but I shall look upon you as my brothers, entitled to share my seat, and the joint possessors of all the wealth which we may be able to acquire. And to you yourself, O Xenophon! I will give my daughter, and if you have a daughter, I will buy her in Thracian fashion; and I will give you Bisanthe as a dwelling-place, which is the fairest of all my possessions on the seaboard.”

7.3

After

vocabulary

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off;
 (intrans) ride away
ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at
 some distance
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
διαπλέω sail through
ἐκεῖσε thither
ἐμβαίνω step on, board ~basis
ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἴσκω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor

κωλύω (ὄ) hinder, prevent
μισθός reward, wages
περιοράω look around; watch; permit
πότερος which, whichever of two
πωλέω sell
σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptic
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συγκαλέω call together ~gallo
συνέρχομαι come together
τριήρης trireme ~row

7.3

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ δεξιὰς δόντες καὶ λαβόντες ἀπήλαννον· καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ στρατοπέδῳ καὶ ἀπήγγειλαν ἕκαστοι τοῖς πέμψασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ὁ μὲν Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγούς· τοῖς δ' ἔδοξε τὴν μὲν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον ὁδὸν εἶσαι, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα συγκαλέσαι. καὶ συνήλθον πάντες πλην οἱ Νέωνος· οὗτοι δὲ ἀπείχον ὥς δέκα στάδια. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν εἶπε τάδε. «Ἄνδρες, διαπλεῖν μὲν ἔνθα βουλόμεθα Ἀρίσταρχος τριήρεις ἔχων κωλύει· ὥστε εἰς πλοῖα οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐμβαίνειν· οὗτος δὲ αὐτὸς κελεύει εἰς Χερρόνησον βία διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους πορεύεσθαι· ἣν δὲ κρατήσαντες τούτου ἐκείσε ἔλθωμεν, οὔτε πωλήσειν ἔτι ὑμᾶς φησιν ὥσπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, οὔτε ἐξαπατήσεσθαι ἔτι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι μισθόν, οὔτε περιόψεσθαι ἔτι ὥσπερ νυνὶ δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. οὗτος μὲν ταῦτα λέγει· Σεύθης δὲ φησιν, ἂν πρὸς ἐκείνον ἴητε, εὖ ποιήσειν ὑμᾶς. νῦν οὖν σκέψασθε πότερον

7.3

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ δεξιὰς δόντες καὶ λαβόντες

|expel, exclude, ward off; ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ στρατοπέδῳ
(intrans) ride away

καὶ |announce, or- ἕκαστοι τοῖς πέμψασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα
|der, promise

ἐγένετο, ὁ μὲν Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγούς·

τοῖς δ' ἔδοξε τὴν μὲν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον ὁδὸν εἶσαι, τὸ

δὲ |army |call together . καὶ |come together ἄντες πλὴν

οἱ Νέωνος· οὗτοι δὲ |ward off, drive off, refrain, ἴδια. ἐπεὶ
|be at some distance

δὲ |come together ἵαστὰς Ξενοφῶν εἶπε τάδε. «Ἄνδρες,

|sail through ἔνθα βουλόμεθα Ἀρίσταρχος |trireme ἔχων

|hinder, ὥστε εἰς πλοῖα οὐκ |safe, easy|step on, board ἔτος δὲ
|prevent |steady,
careful

αὐτὸς κελεύει εἰς Χερρόνησον βῆα διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους

πορεύεσθαι· ἣν δὲ κρατήσαντες τούτου |thither ἔλθωμεν,

οὔτε |sell ἔτι ὑμᾶς φησιν ὥσπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, οὔτε

|trick, cheat ἔτι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι |reward, , οὔτε
|wages

|look around; ἔτι ὥσπερ νυνὶ δεομένους τῶν |fit, suitable .
|watch; permit

οὗτος μὲν ταῦτα λέγει· Σεύθης δὲ φησιν, ἂν πρὸς ἐκείνων

|imitate, ἴκλειν ἴσειν ὑμᾶς. νῦν οὖν |look, look|which,
to, guess |at, watch |whichever

listening to these proposals, they gave and accepted pledges of good faith; and so the deputation rode off. Before day they were back again in camp, and severally rendered a report to those who sent them. At dawn Aristarchus again summoned the generals and officers, but the latter resolved to have done with the visit to Aristarchus, and to summon a meeting of the army. In full conclave the soldiers met, with the exception of Neon's men, who remained about ten furlongs off. When they were met together Xenophon rose, and made the following announcement: «Men, Aristarchus with his ships of war hinders us from sailing where we fain would go; it is not even safe to set foot on board a vessel. But if he hinders us here, he hastens us there. 'Be off to the Chersonese,' says he, 'force a passage through the Sacred mountain.' If we master it and succeed in getting to that place, he has something in store for us. He promises that he will not sell you any more, as he did at Byzantium; you shall not be cheated again; you shall have pay; he will no longer, as now, suffer you to remain in want of provisions. That is his proposal. But Seuthes says that if you will go to him he will treat you well. What you have now to consider is, whether you will stay to debate this question,

vocabulary

ἀγοράζω do commerce ~agora
ἀνατείνω lift, reach out, threaten
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀπαντάω encounter, come upon
ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy
ἀργύριον small coin
ἐνθάδε here, hither
ἐπανερχομαι return; ascend
ἐπειδὴν when, after
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
κράτιστος best
κώμη village
ὅθεν whence
ὅπου where

παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,
 recommend, encourage
προέρχομαι proceed, come out
προσελαύνω go to, approach ~elastic
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear
συσκευάζω pack up
τοίνυν well, then
τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy
ὕπακούω listen, reply ~acoustic

ἐνθάδε μένοντες τοῦτο βουλευέσθε ἢ εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπανελθόντες. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ, ἐπεὶ ἐνθάδε οὔτε ἀργύριον ἔχομεν ὥστε ἀγοράζειν οὔτε ἄνευ ἀργυρίου ἐῷσι λαμβάνειν, ἐπανελθόντας εἰς τὰς κώμας ὅθεν οἱ ἥττους ἐῷσι λαμβάνειν, ἐκεῖ ἔχοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀκούοντας ὅτι τις ἡμῶν δέεται, αἰρεῖσθαι ὅτι ἂν ἡμῖν δοκῇ κράτιστον εἶναι. καὶ ὅτω γε,» ἔφη, «ταῦτα δοκεῖ, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα.» ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. «Ἀπιδόντες τοίνυν,» ἔφη, «συσκευάζεσθε, καὶ ἐπειδὴν παραγγέλλῃ τις, ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἡγείτο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο. Νέων δὲ καὶ παρ' Ἀριστάρχου ἄλλοι ἔπειθον ἀποτρέπεσθαι· οἱ δ' οὐχ ὑπήκουον. ἐπεὶ δ' ὅσον τριάκοντα στάδια προεληλύθεσαν, ἀπαντᾷ Σεύθης. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτὸν προσελάσαι ἐκέλευσεν, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστων ἀκουόντων εἴποι αὐτῷ ἃ ἐδόκει συμφέρειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ προσῆλθεν, εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· «Ἡμεῖς πορευόμεθα ὅπου μέλλει ἔξειν τὸ στράτευμα τροφήν· ἐκεῖ δ' ἀκούοντες καὶ

|here, μένοντες τοῦτο βουλευέσθε ἢ εἰς τὰ |fit, suitable
|hither

|return; ascend . ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ, ἐπεὶ |here, οὔτε
|hither

|small coin ἔχομεν ὥστε |do commerce ᾗτε |away |small coin ἐῶσι
from;

λαμβάνειν, |return; ascend εἰς τὰς |village, |whence ἥττους
not
hav-
ing;

ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν, ἐκεῖ ἔχοντας τὰ |fit, suitable ἀκούοντας ὅ
not
need-
ing

τι τις ἡμῶν δέεται, αἰρεῖσθαι ὅ τι ἂν ἡμῖν δοκῇ |best

εἶναι. καὶ ὅτω γε,» ἔφη, «ταῦτα δοκεῖ, ἀράτω τὴν

χείρα.» |lift, reach"παντες. «Ἀπιόντες |well, then ἔφη,
|out, threaten

<|pack up , καὶ |when, |transmit; order, summon, |ε τῷ
|after |recommend, encourage

ἡγουμένῳ.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἡγείτο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο. Νέων

δὲ καὶ παρ' Ἀριστάρχου ἄλλοι ἔπειθον |divert from

οἱ δ' οὐχ |listen,
|reply

|proceed, come out, |encounter, come upon καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν

ιδὼν αὐτὸν |go to, approach ἐλέυσεν, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστων

ἀκουόντων εἶποι αὐτῷ ἃ ἐδόκει |bring together; be expedient; agree;
(mp) happen

|come forward, sur- Ξενοφῶν· «Ἡμεῖς πορευόμεθα |where
|render, come in

μέλλει ἔξειν τὸ |army |food, ἐκεῖ δ' ἀκούοντες καὶ
|upkeep

or leave its settlement till we have gone up into a land of provisions. If you ask me my opinion, it is this: Since here we have neither money to buy, nor leave to take without money what we need, why should we not go up into these villages where the right to help ourselves is conferred by might? There, unhampered by the want of bare necessities, you can listen to what this man and the other wants of you and choose whichever sounds best. Let those," he added, «who agree to this, hold up their hands." They all held them up. «Retire then," said he, «and get your kit together, and at the word of command, follow your leader."

After this, Xenophon put himself at the head and the rest followed. Neon, indeed, and other agents from Aristarchus tried to turn them from their purpose, but to their persuasions they turned a deaf ear. They had not advanced much more than three miles, when Seuthes met them; and Xenophon, seeing him, bade him ride up. He wished to tell him what they felt to be conducive to their interests, and in the presence of as many witnesses as possible. As soon as he had approached, Xenophon said: «We are going where the troops will have enough to live upon; when we are there, we will listen to

vocabulary

ἄθροός grouped
ἁλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at
 some distance
ἀποδιδράσκω escape
δείλη afternoon ~diem
διατίθημι arrange; set out goods for
 sale ~thesis
διέρχομαι pierce, traverse
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
κράτιστος best
κυζικηνός unit of currency
κώμη village
λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company
λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
μαστεύω crave
μισθός reward, wages
ξενίζω be host, treat as a guest

~xenophobe
ὀπόσος as many as, how many, how
 great
ὅπου where
πορίζω bring about, provide
ποτή flight? ~petal
ποτός potable
σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
στρατεύω make an expedition, war,
 campaign ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
συνέρχομαι come together
τιμάω (ι) honor, exalt
τοίνυν well, then
τοιόσδε such
ὕπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do
 ~ischemia
χειρόω dominate, subdue

σοῦ καὶ τῶν τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ αἵρησόμεθα ἃ ἂν κράτιστα δοκῇ εἶναι. ἦν οὖν ἡμῖν ἡγήσῃ ὅπου πλείστα ἐστὶν ἐπιτήδεια, ὑπὸ σοῦ νομιοῦμεν ξενίζεσθαι.»

Καὶ ὁ Σεύθης ἔφη· «Ἄλλὰ οἶδα κόμας πολλὰς ἀθρόας καὶ πάντα ἐχούσας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀπεχούσας ἡμῶν ὅσον διελθόντες ἂν ἡδέως ἀριστήητε.»

«Ἦγοῦ τοίνυν,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς δειλῆς, συνήλθον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ εἶπε Σεύθης τοιάδε. «Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δέομαι ὑμῶν στρατεῦσθαι σὺν ἐμοί, καὶ ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν δώσειν τοῖς στρατιώταις κυζικηνόν, λοχαγοῖς δὲ καὶ στρατηγοῖς τὰ νομιζόμενα· ἔξω δὲ τούτων τὸν ἄξιον τιμήσω. σῖτα δὲ καὶ ποτὰ ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐκ τῆς χώρας λαμβάνοντες ἔξετε· ὅποσα δ' ἂν ἀλίσκηται ἀξιώσω αὐτὸς ἔχειν, ἵνα ταῦτα διατιθέμενος ὑμῖν τὸν μισθὸν πορίζω. καὶ τὰ μὲν φεύγοντα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα ἡμεῖς ἱκανοὶ ἐσόμεθα διώκειν καὶ μαστεύειν· ἂν δέ τις ἀνθιστήται, σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι.»

σοῦ καὶ τῶν τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ αἵρησόμεθα ἂ ἂν |best

δοκῇ εἶναι. ἦν οὖν ἡμῖν ἡγήσῃ |where πλείστα ἐστίν

|fit, suitable , ὑπὸ σοῦ νομιούμεν |be host .»

Καὶ ὁ Σεύθης ἔφη· «Ἄλλα οἶδα |village πολλὰς |grouped

καὶ πάντα ἐχούσας τὰ |fit, suitable |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

|pierce, ἂν |sweet ἀριστήητε.»
|traverse

«Ἦγοῦ |well, then ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο

εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς |afternoon |come together ἑ |soldier, , καὶ
|mercenary

εἶπε Σεύθης |such . «Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δέομαι ὑμῶν

|make an expedition, ἑμοί, καὶ |promise, agree ὑμῖν δώσειν
|war, campaign

τοῖς |soldier, |unit of currency, χροῖς δὲ καὶ στρατηγοῖς
|mercenary

τὰ νομιζόμενα· ἔξω δὲ τούτων τὸν ἄξιον |honor .

|grain, δὲ καὶ ποτὰ ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐκ τῆς χώρας
|bread,

|food λαμβάνοντες ἔξετε· |as/how ὅς ᾧ |be captured ἀξιώσω
|many/great

αὐτὸς ἔχειν, ἵνα ταῦτα |arrange; set out ὑμῖν τὸν |reward,
|goods for sale |wages

|bring , καὶ τὰ μὲν φεύγοντα καὶ |escape
|about,

|provide ἡμεῖς ἱκανοὶ ἐσόμεθα διώκειν καὶ |crave ἂν δέ

τις ἀνθιστῆται, σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα |χειρώ?: dominate, sub-
|due; or χειρώ?: dominate, subdue

you and to the emissaries of the Laconian, and choose between you both whatever seems best. If then you will lead us where provisions are to be got in plenty, we shall feel indebted to you for your hospitality.”

And Seuthes answered: «For the matter of that, I know many villages, close-packed and stocked with all kinds of provisions, just far enough off to give you a good appetite for your breakfasts.”

«Lead on then!” said Xenophon. When they had reached the villages in the afternoon, the soldiers met, and Seuthes made the following speech: «My request to you, sirs, is that you will take the field with me, and my promise to you is that I will give every man of you a cyzicene, and to the officers and generals at the customary rate; besides this I will honour those who show special merit. Food and drink you shall get as now for yourselves from the country; but whatever is captured, I shall claim to have myself, so that by distribution of it I may provide you with pay. Let them flee, let them creep into hiding-places, we shall be able to pursue after them, we will track them out; or if they resist, along with you we

vocabulary

ἀντιλέγω contradict, oppose
 ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
 ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
 δεῖπνον meal, food
 δεῖπνος meal, food
 διαγίγνομαι go through; subsist
 ~genus
 διατρίβω (ι) wear down, delay
 ~tribology
 ἐπέρομαι ask as well; ask then
 ἐπιψηφίζω put to a vote
 εὔρημα invention; windfall
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain

μείων less, smaller
 μισθός reward, wages
 οἶκαδε homeward ~economics
 οὐδαμῇ nowhere
 πολλαχῇ in many places or ways
 πολλαχῇ in many places or ways
 πόσος how many, much, far?
 σκηνέω camp
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
 συνέπομαι go along with ~sequel
 συστρατεύω join in an expedition
 φίλιος friendly
 χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm
 ὠνέομαι buy

Ἐπήρετο ὁ Ξενοφῶν· «Πόσον δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀξιώσεις
συνέπεσθαί σοι τὸ στράτευμα;»

Ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· «Οὐδαμῇ πλείον ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν, μείον δὲ
πολλαχῇ.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδδοτο λέγειν τῷ βουλομένῳ· καὶ ἔλεγον
πολλοὶ κατὰ ταῦτα ὅτι παντὸς ἄξια λέγει Σεύθης· χειμῶν
γὰρ εἴη καὶ οὔτε οἴκαδε ἀποπλεῖν τῷ τοῦτο βουλομένῳ
δυνατὸν εἴη, διαγενέσθαι τε ἐν φιλίᾳ οὐχ οἶόν τε, εἰ
δέοι ὠνουμένους ζῆν, ἐν δὲ τῇ πολεμίᾳ διατρίβειν καὶ
τρέφεσθαι ἀσφαλέστερον μετὰ Σεύθου ἢ μόνους, ὄντων
ἀγαθῶν τοσούτων. εἰ δὲ μισθὸν προσλήψοιντο, εὖρημα
ἐδόκει εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν· «Εἴ τις
ἀντιλέγει, λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐπιψηφιώ ταῦτα.» ἐπεὶ δὲ
οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, ἐπειψήφισε, καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα. εὐθὺς δὲ
Σεύθῃ εἶπεν, ὅτι συστρατεύσονται αὐτῷ.

Μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι κατὰ τάξεις ἐσκήνησαν,
στρατηγοὺς δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπὶ δείπνον Σεύθης ἐκάλεσε,

|ask as well; ἵ Ξενοφῶν· «|how many, much, far?.. της ἀξιώσεις
|ask then

|go along with -οι τὸ |army ,»

Ὅ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· «|nowhere πλεῖον ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν, |less, ὅς
|smaller
πολλαχῇ.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδδοτο λέγειν τῷ βουλομένῳ· καὶ ἔλεγον

πολλοὶ κατὰ ταῦτα ὅτι παντὸς ἄξια λέγει Σεύθης· |winter,
|storm

γὰρ εἶη καὶ οὔτε |home- |sail away τῷ τοῦτο βουλομένῳ
|ward

δυνατὸν εἶη, |go through; subsist ὡς |friendly ὡς οἶόν τε, εἰ

δέοι |buy ζῆν, ἐν δὲ τῇ πολεμίᾳ |wear down, delay

τρέφεσθαι |safe, easy, steady, μετὰ Σεύθου ἢ μόνους, ὄντων
|careful

ἀγαθῶν τοσούτων. εἰ δὲ |reward, προσλήψοιντο, |invention;
|wages |windfall

ἔδόκει εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν· «Εἴ τις

|contradict, , λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, |put to a vote αὐτά.» ἐπεὶ δὲ
|oppose

οὐδείς |contradict, , |put to a vote καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα. εὐθὺς δὲ
|oppose

Σεύθῃ εἶπεν, ὅτι |join in an expedition αὐτῷ.

Μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι κατὰ τάξεις |camp ,

στρατηγούς δὲ καὶ |captain ἐπὶ δεῖπνον Σεύθης ἐκάλεσε,

will endeavour to subdue them to our hands.”

Xenophon inquired: «And how far from the sea shall you expect the army to follow you?”

«Nowhere more than seven days’ journey,” he answered, «and in many places less.”

After this, permission was given for all who wished to speak, and many spoke, but ever to one and the same tune: «What Seuthes said, was very right. It was winter, and for a man to sail home, even if he had the will to do so, was impossible. On the other hand, to continue long in a friendly country, where they must depend upon what they could purchase, was equally beyond their power. If they were to wear away time and support life in a hostile country, it was safer to do so with Seuthes than by themselves, not to speak of all these good things; but if they were going to get pay into the bargain, that indeed was a godsend.” To complete the proceedings, Xenophon said: «If any one opposes the measure, let him state his views; if not, let the officer put the proposition to the vote.” No one opposed; they put it to the vote, and the resolution was carried; and without loss of time, he informed Seuthes that they would take the field with him.

After this the troops messed in their separate divisions, but the generals and officers were invited by Seuthes to dinner at a neighbouring village which was

vocabulary

ἄμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
 upwards, out to sea
βαρβαρικός non-Greek
γείτων -ονος (f) neighbor
δείπνον meal, food
δείπνος meal, food
διάκειμαι be in a condition
διακέομαι repair
διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
 ~practice
δωρέω give ~donate
ἔκπωμα -τος (n, 3) drinking cup
ἐνθάδε here, hither
κατάγω lead down/home; land

~demagogue
κώμη village
οἴκαδε homeward ~economics
οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
πλησίος near, neighboring
προσδοκάω expect
πρόσεμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
πρόσω forward, in the future; far
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
σωφρονέω be sane, moderate
τάπις carpet
φιλία friendship ~philanthropy
φίλιος friendly

πλησίον κώμην ἔχων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ θύραις ἦσαν ὥς ἐπὶ
 δειπνον παριόντες, ἦν τις Ἡρακλείδης Μαρωνείτης· οὗτος
 προσιών ἐνὶ ἐκάστῳ οὔστινας ᾤετο ἔχειν τι δοῦναι Σεύθῃ,
 πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς Παριανούς τινας, οἳ παρῆσαν φιλίαν
 διαπραξόμενοι πρὸς Μήδοκον τὸν Ὀδρυσῶν βασιλέα καὶ
 δῶρα ἄγοντες αὐτῷ τε καὶ τῇ γυναικί, ἔλεγεν ὅτι Μήδοκος
 μὲν ἄνω εἷη δώδεκα ἡμερῶν ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὁδόν, Σεύθης
 δ' ἐπεὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοῦτο εἴληφεν, ἄρχων ἔσοιτο ἐπὶ
 θαλάττῃ.

«Γείτων οὖν ὧν ἱκανώτατος ἔσται ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ καὶ κακῶς
 ποιεῖν. ἦν οὖν σωφρονήτε, τούτῳ δώσετε ὃ τι ἄγετε·
 καὶ ἄμεινον ὑμῖν διακείσεται ἢ ἐὰν Μηδόκῳ τῷ πρόσω
 οἰκοῦντι διδῶτε.» τούτους μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔπειθεν.

Αὐθις δὲ Τιμασίῳνι τῷ Δαρδανεῖ προσελθὼν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσεν
 αὐτῷ εἶναι καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ τάπιδας βαρβαρικός, ἔλεγεν
 ὅτι νομίζοιτο ὅποτε ἐπὶ δειπνον καλέσαι Σεύθης δωρεῖσθαι
 αὐτῷ τοὺς κληθέντας. οὗτος δ' ἦν μέγας ἐνθάδε γένηται,
 ἱκανὸς ἔσται σε καὶ οἴκαδε καταγαγεῖν καὶ ἐνθάδε

|near |village ἔχων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ θύραις ἦσαν ὥς ἐπὶ
 δεῖπνον παριόντες, ἦν τις Ἡρακλείδης Μαρωνείτης· οὗτος
 |approach ἐνὶ ἐκάστῳ οὔστινας ᾤετο ἔχειν τι δοῦναι Σεύθῃ,
 πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς Παριανούς τινας, οἱ παρήσαν φιλίαν
 |travel over, ac- πρὸς Μήδοκον τὸν Ὀδρυσῶν βασιλέα καὶ
 |comply
 δῶρα ἄγοντες αὐτῷ τε καὶ τῇ γυναικί, ἔλεγεν ὅτι Μήδοκος
 μὲν ἄνω εἷη δώδεκα ἡμερῶν ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὁδόν, Σεύθης
 δ' ἐπεὶ τὸ |army τοῦτο εἴληφεν, ἄρχων ἔσοιτο ἐπὶ
 θαλάττῃ.

«|neighbor ὦν ὡν ἱκανώτατος ἔσται ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ καὶ κακῶς
 ποιεῖν. ἦν οὖν |be sane, moderate ἔγωγε δώσετε ὅ τι ἄγετε·
 καὶ |better ὑμῖν διακεῖσεται ἢ εἰάν Μηδόκῳ τῷ |forward, in the fu-
 |future; far
 |inhabit διδῶτε.» τούτους μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔπειθεν.

Αὐθις δὲ Τιμασίῳ τῷ Δαρδανεῖ |come forward, 'sur- ἦκουσεν
 |render, come in
 αὐτῷ εἶναι καὶ |drinking cup .αὶ |carpet |non-Greek , ἔλεγεν
 ὅτι νομίζοιτο ὅποτε ἐπὶ δεῖπνον καλέσαι Σεύθης δωρεῖσθαι
 αὐτῷ τοὺς κληθέντας. οὗτος δ' ἦν μέγας |here, γένηται,
 |hither
 ἱκανὸς ἔσται σε καὶ |home- |lead down/home; |here,
 |ward |land |hither

in his possession. When they were at the doors, and on the point of stepping in to dinner, they were met by a certain Heracleides, of Maronea. He came up to each guest, addressing himself particularly to those who, as he conjectured, ought to be able to make a present to Seuthes. He addressed himself first to some Parians who were there to arrange a friendship with Medocus, the king of the Odrysians, and were bearers of presents to the king and to his wife. Heracleides reminded them: «Medocus is up country twelve days' journey from the sea; but Seuthes, now that he has got this army, will be lord on the sea-coast; as your neighbour, then, he is the man to do you good or do you ill. If you are wise, you will give him whatever he asks of you. On the whole, it will be laid out at better interest than if you have it to Medocus, who lives so far off.” That was his mode of persuasion in their case.

Next he came to Timasion the Dardanian, who, some one had told him, was the happy possessor of certain goblets and oriental carpets. What he said to him was: «It is customary when people are invited to dinner by Seuthes for the guests to make him a present; now if he should become a great person in these parts, he will be able to restore you to your native land, or to make you a rich man

*vocabulary***ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἄρτος** bread, loaf**δείπνον** meal, food**δείπνος** meal, food**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**δωρέω** give ~donate**εἰσφέρω** carry into, carry along ~bear**Ἑλλήν** Greek**εὖνοος** kindly; favorable**ἐφόδιον** supplies, funding**ἐφόδιος** for a journey**κράτιστος** best**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**μεγαλοπρεπής** befitting greatness**μεστός** full**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**παραινέω** recommend, exhort, warn**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add
~ion**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,
come in**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid**τρίπους** three-legged cauldron ~pedal**ὕμέτερος** (υ) yours

πλούσιον ποιῆσαι. τοιαῦτα προμνᾶτο ἐκάστῳ προσιών.

Προσελθὼν δὲ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι ἔλεγε· «Σὺ καὶ πόλεως
μεγίστης εἶ καὶ παρὰ Σεύθῃ τὸ σὸν ὄνομα μέγιστόν ἐστι,
καὶ ἐν τῇδε τῇ χώρᾳ ἴσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ τείχη λαμβάνειν,
ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑμετέρων ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν·
ἄξιον οὖν σοι καὶ μεγαλοπρεπέστατα τιμῆσαι Σεύθην.
εὖνους δέ σοι ὦν παραινῶ· εὖ οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ὅσω ἂν μείζω
τούτῳ δωρήσῃ, τοσούτῳ μείζω ὑπὸ τούτου ἀγαθὰ πείσῃ.»
ἀκούων ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν ἠπόρει· οὐ γὰρ διεβεβήκει ἔχων
ἐκ Παρίου εἰ μὴ παῖδα καὶ ὅσον ἐφόδιον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰσῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον τῶν τε Θρακῶν
οἱ κράτιστοι τῶν παρόντων καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ
λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ εἴ τις πρεσβεία παρῆν
ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν καθημένοις κύκλῳ·
ἔπειτα δὲ τρίποδες εἰσηνέχθησαν πᾶσιν· οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν
κρεῶν μεστοὶ νενεμημένων, καὶ ἄρτοι ζυμῖται μεγάλοι
προσπεπερονημένοι ἦσαν πρὸς τοῖς κρέασι. μάλιστα δ'
αἱ τράπεζαι κατὰ τοὺς ξένους αἰεὶ ἐτίθεντο· νόμος γὰρ

|wealth ποιῆσαι. τοιαῦτα προμυῖατο ἐκάστω |approach

|come forward, sur-αι Ξενοφῶντι ἔλεγε· «Σὺ καὶ πόλεως
|render, come in

μεγίστης εἰ καὶ παρὰ Σεύθῃ τὸ σὸν ὄνομα μέγιστόν ἐστι,

καὶ ἐν τῇδε τῇ χώρᾳ ἴσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ τείχῃ λαμβάνειν,

ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν |yours ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν·

ἄξιον οὖν σοι καὶ |befitting greatness |honor Σεύθην.

εὖνους δέ σοι ὦν |recommend, ἢ οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ὅσῳ ἂν μείζω
|exhort, warn

τούτῳ δωρήσῃ, τοσούτῳ μείζω ὑπὸ τούτου ἀγαθὰ πείσῃ.»

ἀκούων ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν |be confused, γὰρ |pass over, cross
|distressed

ἐκ Παρίου εἰ μὴ παῖδα καὶ ὅσον ἐφόδιον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰσῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον τῶν τε Θρακῶν

οἱ |best τῶν παρόντων καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ

|captain τῶν |Greek καὶ εἴ τις πρεσβεία παρῇν

ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν καθημένοις |circle,
|wheel

ἔπειτα δὲ |cauldron |carry into, carry παῶσιν· οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν
|along

|meat |full |distribute , καὶ |bread ζυμῖται μεγάλοι

προσπεπερονημένοι ἦσαν πρὸς τοῖς |meat μάλιστα δ'

αἱ |a table κατὰ τοὺς ξένους αἰεὶ ἐτίθεντο· νόμος γὰρ

here.” Such were the solicitations which he applied to each man in turn whom he accosted.

Presently he came to Xenophon and said: «You are at once a citizen of no mean city, and with Seuthes also your own name is very great. Maybe you expect to obtain a fort or two in this country, just as others of your countrymen have done, and territory. It is only right and proper therefore that you should honour Seuthes in the most magnificent style. Be sure, I give this advice out of pure friendliness, for I know that the greater the gift that you are ready to bestow on him, the better the treatment you will receive at his hands.” Xenophon, on hearing this, was in a sad dilemma, for he had brought with him, when he crossed from Parium, nothing but one slave and just enough to pay his travelling expenses.

As soon as the company, consisting of the most powerful Thracians there present, with the generals and captains of the Hellenes, and any embassy from a state which might be there, had arrived, they were seated in a circle, and the dinner was served. Thereupon three-legged stools were brought in and placed in front of the assembled guests. They were laden with pieces of meat, piled up, and there were huge leavened-loaves fastened on to the pieces of meat with long skewers. The tables, as a rule, were set beside the guests at intervals. That was the custom;

vocabulary

ἀναιρέω take up ~heresy
ἄρτος bread, loaf
γέλως laughter
γεύω taste ~gusto
γόνυ γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon
δειπνέω eat, dine
διακλάω break in two ~iconoclast
διαρριπτέω mess up something
δωρέω give ~donate
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
ἔρωτάω ask about something
καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit
 ~ceratopsia

κρέας -ως (n) meat ~creatine
λευκός white ~light
μεστός full
οἶνοχόος -ῦ cupbearer ~wine
οὐδέπω not, not yet
παράκειμαι be at hand, ready
περιφέρω carry around
πότος wine drinking
προπίνω (ῖ) present; toast
προχωρέω proceed, come forward
ῥιπτέω hurl
σχολάζω have leisure
τράπεζα a table ~trapezoid
τριχόινικον three liters
τριχόινικος holding 3 liters
ὡσαύτως in the same way

ἦν— καὶ πρῶτος τοῦτο ἐποίει Σεύθης, καὶ ἀνελόμενος τοὺς ἐαυτῷ παρακειμένους ἄρτους διέκλα κατὰ μικρὸν καὶ ἐρρίπτει οἷς αὐτῷ ἐδόκει, καὶ τὰ κρέα ὡσαύτως, ὅσον μόνον γεύσασθαι ἐαυτῷ καταλιπών. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν καθ' οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο.

Ἄρκας δέ τις Ἀρύστας ὄνομα, φαγεῖν δεινός, τὸ μὲν διαρριπτεῖν εἷα χαίρειν, λαβὼν δὲ εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ὅσον τριχοῖνικον ἄρτον καὶ κρέα θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ γόνατα ἐδείπνει. κέρατα δὲ οἴνου περιέφερον, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο· ὁ δ' Ἀρύστας, ἐπεὶ παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ κέρας ὁ οἰνοχόος ἤκεν, εἶπεν ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα, «Ἐκείνω,» ἔφη, «δός· σχολάζει γὰρ ἤδη, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδέπω.» ἀκούσας Σεύθης τὴν φωνὴν ἠρώτα τὸν οἰνοχόον τί λέγει. ὁ δὲ οἰνοχόος εἶπεν· ἐλληνίζειν γὰρ ἠπίστατο. ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ γέλως ἐγένετο.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ προυχώρει ὁ πότος, εἰσῆλθεν ἀνὴρ Θραῶξ ἵππον ἔχων λευκόν, καὶ λαβὼν κέρας μεστὸν εἶπε· «Προπίνω σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, καὶ τὸν ἵππον τοῦτον δωροῦμαι, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ

ἦν— καὶ πρῶτος τοῦτο ἐποίει Σεύθης, καὶ |take up
 τοὺς ἐαυτῷ |be at hand, ready |bread |break in two ἰ μικρὸν
 καὶ |hurl οἷς αὐτῷ ἐδόκει, καὶ τὰ |meat |in the same way
 μόνον γεύσασθαι ἐαυτῷ καταλιπών. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ κατὰ
 ταῦτὰ ἐποιοῦν καθ' οὓς αἱ |a table ἔκειντο.

Ἄρκας δέ τις Ἀρύστας ὄνομα, φαγεῖν δεινός, τὸ μὲν
 |mess up something χαίρειν, λαβὼν δὲ εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ὅσον
 τριχοίνικον |bread καὶ |meat θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ |knee
 |eat, dine |horn; δὲ οἶνον |carry around, καὶ πάντες
 |military
 |unit ἐδέχοντο· ὁ δ' Ἀρύστας, ἐπεὶ παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ
 |horn; |cupbearer ἦκεν, εἶπεν ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι
 |military
 |unit |eat, dine , «Ἐκείνω,» ἔφη, «δός· |have leisure, ἄρ ἤδη,
 ἐγὼ δὲ |not, not yet ἀκούσας Σεύθης τὴν φωνὴν ἠρώτα τὸν
 |cupbearer τί λέγει. ὁ δὲ |cupbearer εἶπεν· ἐλληνίζειν γὰρ
 |know |there, here, ἐν δὴ |laughter γένητο.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ |proceed, come |wine drinking ἦεν ἀνὴρ Θοῤῥᾶξ ἵππον
 |forward
 ἔχων |white , καὶ λαβὼν |horn; |full εἶπε· «Προπίνω
 |military
 |unit σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, καὶ τὸν ἵππον τοῦτον δωροῦμαι, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ

and Seuthes set the fashion of the performance. He took up the loaves which lay by his side and broke them into little pieces, and then threw the fragments here to one and there to another as seemed to him good; and so with the meat likewise, leaving for himself the merest taste. Then the rest fell to following the fashion set them, those that is who had tables placed beside them.

Now there was an Arcadian, Arystas by name, a huge eater; he soon got tired of throwing the pieces about, and seized a good three-quarters loaf in his two hands, placed some pieces of meat upon his knees, and proceeded to discuss his dinner. Then beakers of wine were brought round, and every one partook in turn; but when the cupbearer came to Arystas and handed him the bowl, he looked up, and seeing that Xenophon had done eating: «Give it him,” quoth he, «he is more at leisure. I have something better to do at present.” Seuthes, hearing a remark, asked the cupbearer what was said, and the cupbearer, who knew how to talk Greek, explained. Then followed a peal of laughter.

When the drinking had advanced somewhat, in came a Thracian with a white horse, who snatched the brimming bowl and said: «Here’s a health to thee, O Seuthes! Let me present thee with this horse. Mounted on him, thou shalt capture whom thou chooseth

vocabulary

ἀέκων unwilling
ἄκων javelin; unwilling ~acme
ἀπορέω be confused, distressed
ἀποχωρέω go away from, retreat
ἀργύρεος silver ~Argentina
ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
δίφρος seat, chariot box ~bear
δωρέω give ~donate
εἰσάγω lead in ~demagogue
θαρσαλέος bold, over-bold
ἱμάτιον toga, cloth

κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit
 ~ceratopsia
μνᾶ mina
οἶνοχόος -ῶ cupbearer ~wine
ὀρέγω hold out, offer, thrust ~reach
πιστός faithful; trustworthy
προῖημι send forth, abandon
προπίνω (ἱ) present; toast
προσαιτέω demand as well ~etiology
τάπης carpet
τιμάω (ἱ) honor, exalt
ὑποπίνω (ἱ) sip
φιάλη jar ~vial

διώκων ὃν ἂν θέλῃς αἰρήσεις καὶ ἀποχωρῶν οὐ μὴ δείσης
τὸν πολέμιον.» ἄλλος παῖδα εἰσάγων οὕτως ἐδωρήσατο
προπίνων, καὶ ἄλλος ἱμάτια τῇ γυναικί. καὶ Τιμασίων
προπίνων ἐδωρήσατο φιάλην τε ἀργυρᾶν καὶ τάπιδά
ἀξίαν δέκα μνῶν. Γνήσιππος δέ τις Ἀθηναῖος ἀναστὰς
εἶπεν ὅτι ἀρχαῖος εἴη νόμος κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας
διδόναι τῷ βασιλεῖ τιμῆς ἕνεκα, τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι διδόναι
τὸν βασιλέα, «ἴνα καὶ ἐγώ,» ἔφη, «ἔχω σοι δωρεῖσθαι
καὶ τιμᾶν.» ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἠπορεῖτο τί ποιήσῃ· καὶ γὰρ
ἐτύγχανεν ὡς τιμώμενος ἐν τῷ πλησιαιτάτῳ δίφρῳ Σεύθῃ
καθήμενος. ὁ δὲ Ἡρακλείδης ἐκέλευεν αὐτῷ τὸ κέρας
ὀρέξαι τὸν οἰνοχόον.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤδη γὰρ ὑποπεπωκὼς ἐτύγχανεν ἀνέστη
θαρραλέως δεξάμενος τὸ κέρας καὶ εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ δέ σοι,
ὦ Σεύθῃ, δίδωμι ἑμναυτὸν καὶ τοὺς ἑμούςς τούτους ἐταίρους
φίλους εἶναι πιστούς, καὶ οὐδένα ἄκοντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας
μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐμοῦ σοι βουλομένους φίλους εἶναι. καὶ νῦν
πάρεσιν οὐδέν σε προσαιτοῦντες, ἀλλὰ καὶ προϊέμενοι καὶ

διώκων ὃν ἂν θέλῃς αἰρήσεις καὶ |go away οὐ μὴ δείσης
|from, retreat

τὸν πολέμιον.» ἄλλος παῖδα |lead in οὕτως ἐδωρήσατο

|present; , καὶ ἄλλος |toga, τῇ γυναικί. καὶ Τιμασίῳ
|toast |cloth

|present; ἐδωρήσατο |jar τε |silver καὶ |carpet
|toast

ἄξιαν δέκα |mina Γνήσιππος δέ τις Ἀθηναῖος ἀναστὰς

εἶπεν ὅτι |ancient, from νόμος κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας
|the beginning

διδόναι τῷ βασιλεῖ τιμῆς ἔνεκα, τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι διδόναι

τὸν βασιλέα, «ἵνα καὶ ἐγώ,» ἔφη, «ἔχω σοι δωρεῖσθαι

καὶ |honor » ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν |be confused, 'ποιήσῃ καὶ γὰρ
|distressed

ἐτύγχανεν ὥς |honor ἐν τῷ πλησιαιτάτῳ |seat Σεύθῃ

καθήμενος. ὁ δὲ Ἡρακλείδης ἐκέλευεν αὐτῷ τὸ |horn;
|military
|unit

|hold out, 'of-cupbearer
|fer, thrust

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤδη γὰρ |sip ἐτύγχανεν ἀνέστη

|bold δεξάμενος τὸ |horn; αἰ εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ δέ σοι,
|military
|unit

ὦ Σεύθῃ, δίδωμι ἑμᾶντὸν καὶ τοὺς ἑμοὺς τούτους ἐταίρους

φίλους εἶναι |faithful; , καὶ οὐδένα ἄκοντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας
|trustworthy

μᾶλλον ἔτι ἑμοῦ σοι βουλομένους φίλους εἶναι. καὶ νῦν

πάρεισιν οὐδέν σε |demand as well , ἀλλὰ καὶ |send forth, abandon

to pursue, or retiring from battle, thou shalt not dread the foe.” He was followed by one who brought in a boy, and presented him in proper style with «Here’s a health to thee, O Seuthes!” A third had «clothes for his wife.” Timasion, the Dardanian, pledged Seuthes, and presented a silver bowl and a carpet worth ten minae. Gnesippus, an Athenian, got up and said: «It was a good old custom, and a fine one too, that those who had, should give to the king for honour’s sake, but to those who had not, the king should give; whereby, my lord,” he added, «I too may one day have the wherewithal to give thee gifts and honour.”

Xenophon the while was racking his brains what he was to do; he was not the happier because he was seated in the seat next Seuthes as a mark of honour; and Heracleides bade the cupbearer hand him the bowl. The wine had perhaps a little mounted to his head; he rose, and manfully seized the cup, and spoke: «I also, Seuthes, have to present you with myself and these my dear comrades to be your trusty friends, and not one of them against his will. They are more ready, one and all, still more than I, to be your friends. Here they are; they ask nothing from you in return, rather they are forward to labour in your behalf; it will be their

vocabulary

ἀνακράζω yell, scream
 ἀπολαμβάνω receive, recover, take
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy
 αὐλέω play (blow, toot)
 βέλος -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic
 γελωτοποιός clown, clownish
 δυσμή sunset
 εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to
 mind ~ion
 εἰσίζομαι take one's place
 ἐλαφρός nimble, light on one's feet;
 light, bearable ~elevator
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐξαίρέω pick, steal; dedicate; destroy
 ~heresy
 κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit
 ~ceratopsia
 ληίζομαι plunder ~lucre
 μαγάς harp

νυκτοφύλαξ night-watchman
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,
 recommend, encourage
 πατρώιος of the father(s), ancestral
 ~paternal
 πατρῷος of the father(s), ancestral
 πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic
 πονέω work; be busy ~osteopenia
 προκινδυνεύω (ὑ) brave danger
 before, for
 ῥυθμός measured; symmetrical
 σάλπιγξ -γος (f) trumpet
 σαλπίζω sound the trumpet
 σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
 συγκατασχεδάννυμι (υὑ) pour over at
 the same time
 συνεκπίνω (ἶ) drink together
 σύνθημα -τος (n, 3) agreed signal
 ὠμοβόειος raw (hide)

πονεῖν ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ προκινδυνεύειν ἐθέλοντες· μεθ' ὧν, ἂν οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσι, πολλὴν χώραν τὴν μὲν ἀπολήψῃ πατρώαν οὔσαν, τὴν δὲ κτήσῃ, πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους, πολλοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας καλὰς κτήσῃ, οὓς οὐ λήξεσθαί σε δεήσει, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ φέροντες παρέσονται πρὸς σὲ δῶρα.» ἀναστὰς ὁ Σεύθης συνεξέπια καὶ συγκατεσκεδάσατο μετ' αὐτοῦ τὸ κέρας.

Μετὰ ταῦτα εἰσῆλθον κέρασί τε οἷσι σημαίνουσιν αὐλοῦντες καὶ σάλπιγξιν ὠμοβοείαις ρύθμους τε καὶ οἶον μαγάδι σαλπίζοντες. καὶ αὐτὸς Σεύθης ἀναστὰς ἀνέκραγέ τε πολεμικὸν καὶ ἐξήλατο ὥσπερ βέλος φυλαττόμενος μάλα ἐλαφρῶς. εἰσῆσαν δὲ καὶ γελωτοποιοί.

Ὡς δ' ἦν ἥλιος ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς, ἀνέστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ εἶπον ὅτι ὥρα νυκτοφύλακας καθιστάναι καὶ σύνθημα παραδιδόναι. καὶ Σεύθην ἐκέλευον παραγγεῖλαι ὅπως εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα μηδεὶς τῶν Θρακῶν εἴσεισι νυκτός· «οἳ τε γὰρ πολέμιοι Θραῖκες ὑμῖν καὶ ὑμεῖς οἱ φίλοι.»

|work ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ |brave danger be- ἐθέλοντες· μεθ' ὧν, ἂν
|fore, for
οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσι, πολλὴν χώραν τὴν μὲν |receive, recover, ῥαν
|take aside, cut off
οὔσαν, τὴν δὲ κτήσῃ, πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους, πολλοὺς δὲ
ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας καλὰς κτήσῃ, οὓς οὐ |ληίζομαι?: plunder; or
|ληίζομαι?: plunder
δείξει, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ φέροντες παρέσονται πρὸς σέ δῶρα.»
ἀναστὰς ὁ Σεύθης |drink καὶ συγκατεσκεδάσατο μετ'
|together
αὐτοῦ τὸ |horn;
|military
|unit
Μετὰ ταῦτα εἰσῆλθον |horn; τε οἷοις |give orders to;
|military |show; mark
|unit
|play (blow, toot) |trumpet |raw (hide) |measured; καὶ οἷον
|symmetrical
|harp |sound the trumpet.. αὐτὸς Σεύθης ἀναστὰς |yell,
|scream
τε |warlike, καὶ |pick, steal; dedicate; missile φυλαττόμενος
|hostile |destroy
μάλα |light in weight.. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ |clown,
|clownish
Ὡς δ' ἦν ἥλιος ἐπὶ |sunset , ἀνέστησαν οἱ |Greek
καὶ εἶπον ὅτι ὥρα |night-watchman καθιστάναι
καὶ |agreed παραδιδόναι. καὶ Σεύθην ἐκέλευον
|signal
|transmit; order, summon, εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα
|recommend, encourage
μηδεὶς τῶν Θρακῶν |go in νυκτός· «οἷ τε
γὰρ πολέμοι Θραῖκες ὑμῖν καὶ ὑμεῖς οἱ φίλοι.»

pleasure to bear the brunt of battle in voluntary service. With them, God willing, you will gain vast territory; you will recover what was once your forefathers'; you will win for yourself new lands; and not lands only, but horses many, and of men a multitude, and many a fair dame besides. You will not need to seize upon them in robber fashion; it is your friends here who, of their own accord, shall take and bring them to you, they shall lay them at your feet as gifts." Up got Seuthes and drained with him the cup, and with him sprinkled the last drops fraternally.

At this stage entered musicians blowing upon horns such as they use for signal calls, and trumpeting on trumpets, made of raw oxhide, tunes and airs, like the music of the double-octave harp. Seuthes himself got up and shouted, trolling forth a war song; then he sprang from his place and leapt about as though he would guard himself against a missile, in right nimble style. Then came in a set of clowns and jesters.

But when the sun began to set, the Hellenes rose from their seats. It was time, they said, to place the night sentinels and to pass the watchword; further, they begged of Seuthes to issue an order that none of the Thracians were to enter the Hellenic camp at night, «since between your Thracian foes and our Thracian

vocabulary

ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume
 ἀναμένω wait for ~remain
 ἀποκαλέω call back; call a name
 βραδύς slow, dull, late ~Sp.~gordo
 διασπάω tear apart ~spatula
 εἴπερ if indeed
 Ἕλλην Greek
 ἐξείμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἥκιστος least; above all
 ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
 μεθύω be soaked, drunk ~mead
 νύκτωρ by night
 ὀπλιτικός (ι) of a hoplite

ὅποῖος whatever kind
 πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
 πελταστικός skilled with small shield
 ~pelt
 πορεία gait, march
 σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptic
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
 συμμαχία alliance
 συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear
 συνανίστημι make to rise up
 τοίνυν well, then

Ὡς δ' ἐξῆσαν, συνανέστη ὁ Σεύθης οὐδέν τι μεθύοντι
 εὐοικώς. ἐξελθὼν δ' εἶπεν αὐτοὺς τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
 ἀποκαλέσας· «ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμοι ἡμῶν οὐκ ἴσασί
 πω τὴν ἡμετέραν συμμαχίαν· ἦν οὖν ἔλθωμεν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
 πρὶν φυλάξασθαι ὥστε μὴ ληφθῆναι ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι
 ὥστε ἀμύνασθαι, μάλιστ' ἂν λάβοιμεν καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ
 χρήματα.» συνεπήγουν ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγείσθαι
 ἐκέλευον. ὁ δ' εἶπε· «Παρασκευασάμενοι ἀναμένετε· ἐγὼ
 δὲ ὁπότεν καιρὸς ἦ ἦξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς
 καὶ ὑμᾶς ἀναλαβὼν ἡγήσομαι σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς.»

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· «Σκέψαι τοίνυν, εἴπερ νυκτὸς
 πορευσόμεθα, εἰ ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος κάλλιον ἔχει·
 μεθ' ἡμέραν μὲν γὰρ ἐν ταῖς πορείαις ἡγείται τοῦ
 στρατεύματος ὁποῖον ἂν αἰὲ πρὸς τὴν χώραν
 συμφέρη, εἴαν τε ὀπλιτικὸν εἴαν τε πελταστικὸν εἴαν
 τε ἵππικόν· νύκτωρ δὲ νόμος τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἡγείσθαι
 ἐστὶ τὸ βραδύτατον· οὕτω γὰρ ἥκιστα διασπᾶται τὰ
 στρατεύματα καὶ ἥκιστα λανθάνουσιν

Ὡς δ' |go forth; is|make to rise up Σεύθης οὐδέν τι |be soaked, drunk
|possible

εοικώς. ἔξελθὼν δ' εἶπεν αὐτοὺς τοὺς στρατηγούς

|call back; call a «ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμῶν οὐκ ἴσασι
|name

πω τὴν ἡμετέραν |alliance ἣν οὖν ἔλθωμεν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς

πρὶν φυλάξασθαι ὥστε μὴ ληφθῆναι ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι

ὥστε ἀμύνασθαι, μάλιστ' ἂν λάβοιμεν καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ

χρήματα.» συνεπὴνουν ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγείσθαι

ἐκέλευον. ὁ δ' εἶπε· «Παρασκευασάμενοι |wait for ἐγὼ

δὲ ὅποταν καιρὸς ᾗ ἥξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ τοὺς |light troops

καὶ ὑμᾶς |take up, re-; ῥήσομαι σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς.»
|cover, resume

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· «|look, look|well, then|if indeed ἰκτὸς
|at, watch

πορευσόμεθα, εἰ ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος κάλλιον ἔχει·

μεθ' ἡμέραν μὲν γὰρ ἐν ταῖς |gait, ἡγείται τοῦ
|march

|army |whatever kind ἀεὶ πρὸς τὴν χώραν

|bring together; be expe-|of a hoplite εἰάν τε |skilled with εἰάν
|dient; agree; (mp) hap- |small shield

|pen τε |of horses |by night δὲ νόμος τοῖς |Greek ἡγείσθαι

ἔστι τὸ |slow, dull, late οὕτω γὰρ |least; |tear apart τὰ
|above

|army καὶ |least; λανθάνουσιν
|above
|all

friends there might be some confusion.” As they sallied forth, Seuthes rose to accompany them, like the soberest of men. When they were outside, he summoned the generals apart and said: «Sirs, our enemies are not aware as yet of our alliance. If, therefore, we attack them before they take precautions not to be caught, or are prepared to repel assault, we shall make a fine haul of captives and other stock.” The generals fully approved of these views, and bade him lead on. He answered: «Prepare and wait; as soon as the right time comes I will be with you. I shall pick up the peltasts and yourselves, and with the help of the gods, I will lead on.”

«But consider one point,” urged Xenophon; «if we are to march by night, is not the Hellenic fashion best? When marching in the daytime that part of the army leads the van which seems best suited to the nature of the country to be traversed— heavy or light infantry, or cavalry; but by night our rule is that the slowest arm should take the lead. Thus we avoid the risk of being pulled to pieces: and it is not so easy for a man to give his neighbour the slip without intending, whereas the scattered fragments of an army are

vocabulary

ἀγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic
ἄθρόος grouped
ἀναπαύω cause to cease ~pause
ἀποδιδράσκω escape
ἀποσπάω tear/drag away
διασπάω tear apart ~spatula
ἐμπειρος experienced
ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise
ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,
 chief ~hegemony
ἡνίκα when
νύκτωρ by night
ὀπισθοφυλακέω guard the rear

ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy
 infantryman ~hoplite
ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
 ~hoplite
ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
ὀρθόω stand up
παρελαύνω pass, outstrip ~elastic
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
περιπίπτω embrace; fall in with
συγγένεια kinship
σύνθημα -τος (n, 3) agreed signal
τελευταῖος last, final
ὕμετερος (ū) yours

ἀποδιδράσκοντες ἀλλήλους· οἱ δὲ διασπασθέντες
πολλάκις καὶ περιπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες
κακῶς ποιούσι καὶ πάσχουσιν.»

Εἶπεν οὖν Σεύθης· «Ὅρθως λέγετε καὶ ἐγὼ τῷ νόμῳ
τῷ ὑμετέρῳ πείσομαι. καὶ ὑμῖν μὲν ἡγεμόνας δώσω
τῶν πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τῆς χώρας, αὐτοὺς
δ' ἐφέψομαι τελευταῖος τοὺς ἵππους ἔχων· ταχὺ γὰρ
πρώτος, ἂν δέῃ, παρέσομαι.» σύνθημα δ' εἶπον Ἀθηναίαν
κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. ταῦτα εἰπόντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας, παρῆν Σεύθης ἔχων
τοὺς ἱππέας τεθωρακισμένους καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς σὺν
τοῖς ὅπλοις. καὶ ἐπεὶ παρέδωκε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ
μὲν ὀπλῖται ἡγοῦντο, οἱ δὲ πελτασταὶ εἶποντο, οἱ δ'
ἱππεῖς ὠπισθοφυλάκουν· ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν, ὁ Σεύθης
παρήλαυνεν εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν καὶ ἐπῆνεσε τὸν Ἑλληνικὸν
νόμον. πολλάκις γὰρ ἔφη νύκτωρ αὐτὸς καὶ σὺν ὀλίγοις
πορευόμενος ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν
πεζῶν· «νῦν δ' ὥσπερ δεῖ ἄθροοι πάντες ἅμα τῇ

|escape ἀλλήλους· οἱ δὲ |tear apart
 |often καὶ |embrace; fall in ἀλλήλοις καὶ |be ignorant of
 |with
 κακῶς ποιοῦσι καὶ πάσχουσιν.»

Εἶπεν οὖν Σεύθης· «Ὅρθως λέγετε καὶ ἐγὼ τῷ νόμῳ
 τῷ |yours πείσομαι. καὶ ὑμῖν μὲν |leader δώσω
 τῶν πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς |experienced τῆς χώρας, αὐτὸς
 δ' |drive, meet,|last, final τοὺς ἵππους ἔχων· ταχὺ γὰρ
 |follow
 πρῶτος, ἂν δέη, παρέσομαι.» |agreed δ' εἶπον Ἀθηναίαν
 |signal
 κατὰ τὴν |kinship ταῦτα εἰπόντες |cause to cease

|when δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας, παρῆν Σεύθης ἔχων
 τοὺς ἱππέας τεθωρακισμένους καὶ τοὺς |light troops σὺν
 τοῖς |tool καὶ ἐπεὶ παρέδωκε τοὺς |leader , οἱ
 μὲν |hoplite, heavy ἦντο, οἱ δὲ |light troops εἶποντο, οἱ δ'
 |infantryman
 ἱππεῖς |guard the rear ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν, ὁ Σεύθης
 |pass, outstrip εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν καὶ |concur τὸν Ἑλληνικὸν
 νόμον. |often γὰρ ἔφη |by night αὐτὸς καὶ σὺν ὀλίγοις
 πορευόμενος |tear/drag away σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν
 πεζῶν· «νῦν δ' ὥσπερ δεῖ |grouped ἱάντες ἅμα τῇ

apt to fall foul of one another, and to cause damage or incur it in sheer ignorance.”

To this Seuthes replied: «You reason well, and I will adopt your custom. I will furnish you with guides chosen from the oldest experts of the country, and I will myself follow with the cavalry in the rear; it will not take me long, if need be, to present myself at the front.” Then, for kinship’s sake, they chose «Athenaia” as their watchword. With this, they turned and sought repose.

It was about midnight when Seuthes presented himself with his cavalry troopers armed with corselets, and his light infantry under arms. As soon as he had handed over to them the promised guides, the heavy infantry took the van, followed by the light troops in the centre, while the cavalry brought up the rear. At daybreak Seuthes rode up to the front. He complimented them on their method: so often had he himself, while marching by night with a mere handful of men, been separated with his cavalry from his infantry. «But now,” said he, «we find ourselves at dawn of day all happily together,

vocabulary

ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute

ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute

ἄλέξω ward off; aid

ἀναπαύω cause to cease ~pause

ἄρnuμαι get, win

ἀτριβής untrodden, not worn

διαφεύγω escape, survive

ἐπιπίπτω fall upon, attack

ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through

εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius

ἦνικά when

ἵχνος -εος (n, 3) track, trace

καθοράω look down ~panorama

καταθέω run down

κώμη village

ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite

πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops ~pelt

περιμένω wait for

πρόσω forward, in the future; far

σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore

σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch ~skeptic

σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry ~repudiate

στίβος trail

ὑπερβαίνω pass, transgress ~basis

χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow

ἡμέρα φαινόμεθα. ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν περιμένετε αὐτοῦ καὶ
 ἀναπαύσασθε, ἐγὼ δὲ σκεψάμενός τι ἥξω.» ταῦτ' εἰπὼν
 ἤλαυνε δι' ὄρους ὁδὸν τινα λαβών. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκετο εἰς
 χιόνα πολλήν, ἐσκέψατο εἰ εἴη ἵχνη ἀνθρώπων ἢ πρόσω
 ἡγούμενα ἢ ἐναντία. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀτριβῇ ἑώρα τὴν ὁδόν, ἦκε
 ταχὺ πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν· «Ἄνδρες, καλῶς ἔσται, ἦν θεὸς
 θέλῃ· τοὺς γὰρ ἀνθρώπους λήσομεν ἐπιπεσόντες. ἀλλ'
 ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως ἂν τινα ἴδωμεν, μὴ
 διαφυγὼν σημήνῃ τοῖς πολεμίοις· ὑμεῖς δ' ἔπεσθε· κἂν
 λειφθῇτε, τῷ στίβῳ τῶν ἵππων ἔπεσθε. ὑπερβάντες δὲ
 τὰ ὄρη ἥξομεν εἰς κώμας πολλὰς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας.»

Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, ἤδη τε ἦν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἄκροις
 καὶ κατιδὼν τὰς κώμας ἦκεν ἐλαύνων πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας
 καὶ ἔλεγεν· «Ἀφήσω ἤδη καταθεῖν τοὺς μὲν ἱππέας εἰς
 τὸ πεδῖον, τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας. ἀλλ'
 ἔπεσθε ὥς ἂν δύνησθε τάχιστα, ὅπως ἐάν τις ὑφιστῇται,
 ἀλέξῃσθε.» ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφὼν κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ
 ἵππου. καὶ ὃς ἤρετο· «Τί καταβαίνεις ἐπεὶ σπεύδειν δεῖ;»

ἡμέρα φαινόμεθα· ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν |wait for αὐτοῦ καὶ
|cause to cease , ἐγὼ δὲ |look, look at, watch^{ήσσω.}» ταύτ' εἰπὼν
ᾗλαννε δι' ὄρους οδόν τινα λαβών· ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκετο εἰς
|snow πολλήν, |look, look at, watch^{ήσσω.}|track, |forward, in the fu-
 |trace |ture; far
ηγούμενα ἢ ἐναντία· ἐπεὶ δὲ |untrodden, |not worn ἴδόν, ᾗκε
ταχὺ πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν· «Ἄνδρες, καλῶς ἔστιαι, ἣν θεὸς
θέλη· τοὺς γάρ ἀνθρώπους λήσειμεν |fall upon, attack ἵλλ'
ἐγὼ μὲν ἠγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως ἂν τινα ἴδωμεν, μὴ
εὔρωσι, ἀλλ' |escape, |give orders tō; πολεμίοις· ὑμεῖς δ' ἕψεσθε· κἀν
κατέβητε τῷ πεδίῳ, |survive |show; mark
λειψθήτε, τῷ |trail τῶν ἵππων ἕψεσθε· |pass, transgress^{ήσσω.}
τά ὃρη ἥξομεν εἰς |village πολλάς τε καὶ |blested with a ›
 |good genius
ὁρῇ, καὶ τότε καταβαίνεις ἐπὶ τοὺς ἱππέας εἰς
|when δ' ἣν μέσον ἡμέρας, ἤδη τε ἣν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἄκροις
καὶ καθέβης |down as |village ἧκεν ἐλαύνων πρὸς τοὺς |hoplite, heavy in-
 |fantryman
καὶ ἔλεγεν· «Αἰφήσω ἤδη |run down τοὺς μὲν ἱππέας εἰς
τὸ πεδίον, τοὺς δὲ |light troops ἐπὶ τὰς |village . ἀλλ'
ἕψεσθε ὥς ἂν δύνησθε τάχιστα, ὅπως ἑάν τις ὑφίστηται,
παροΐσει υἱὸν βοός· ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν κατέρβη ἀπὸ τοῦ
ἵππου· καὶ ὁς ἤρετό· «Τί καταβαίνεις ἐπὶ |‘push on,’ getē,
 |going, hurry

just as we ought to be. Do you wait for me here," he proceeded, «and recruit yourselves. I will take a look round and rejoin you." So saying he took a certain path over hill and rode off. As soon as he had reached deep snow, he looked to see whether there were footprints of human beings leading forward or in the opposite direction; and having satisfied himself that the road was untrodden, back he came, exclaiming: «God willing, sirs, it will be all right; we shall fall on the fellows, before they know where they are. I will lead on with the cavalry; so that if we catch sight of any one, he shall not escape and give warning to the enemy. Do you follow, and if you are left behind, keep to the trail of the horses. Once on the other side of the mountains, we shall find ourselves in numerous thriving villages."

By the middle of the day he had already gained the top of the pass and looked down upon the villages below. Back he came riding to the heavy infantry and said: «I will at once send off the cavalry into the plain below, and the peltasts too, to attack the villages. Do you follow with what speed you may, so that in case of resistance you may lend us your aid." Hearing this, Xenophon dismounted, and the other asked: «Why do you dismount just when speed is the thing we want?"

The other

vocabulary

ἄθροός grouped
 ἄκρα at the edge, extreme ~acute
 ἄκρη at the edge, extreme
 ἄκρῖς -ός (f) hilltop ~acute
 ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute
 ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
 δισχίλιοι 2000 ~kilo-
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐρημος empty
 εὐζωνος well-girded ~zone
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
 καταμένω stay; not change
 κώμη village
 λόχος ambush, band, childbirth ~lie
 μεστός full
 μυρίος (δ) 10,000 ~myriad

οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
 ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy
 infantryman ~hoplite
 παρατείνω extend, lengthen, torture
 παρεγγυάω entrust; pass an order
 παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet
 πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
 προσελαύνω go to, approach ~elastic
 συναλίζω collect; eat with
 συνίστημι unite; confront in battle
 ~station
 τεσσαράκοντα forty ~trapezoid
 τετταράκοντα forty
 τρέχω run, spin
 τροχάζω run, spin
 φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle
 ~phalanx
 χίλιοι (ι) thousand ~kilo-

«Οἶδα,» «ἔφη, ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοῦ μόνου δέη· οἱ δὲ ὀπλῖται θάπτον δραμοῦνται καὶ ἥδιον, ἐὰν καὶ ἐγὼ πεζὸς ἡγῶμαι.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα ᾤχετο, καὶ Τιμασίων μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς τετταράκοντα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρηγγύησε τοὺς εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη παριέναι ἀπὸ τῶν λόχων εὐζώνους. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐτρόχαζε τούτους ἔχων, Κλεάνωρ δ' ἡγεῖτο τῶν ἄλλων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς κόμαις ἦσαν, Σεύθης ἔχων ὅσον τριάκοντα ἱππέας προσελάσας εἶπε· «Τάδε δὴ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἃ σὺ ἔλεγες· ἔχονται οἱ ἄνθρωποι· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἔρημοι οἱ ἱππεῖς οἷχονταί μοι ἄλλος ἄλλη διώκων, καὶ δέδοικα μὴ συστάντες ἀθρόοι που κακόν τι ἐργάσωνται οἱ πολέμοι. δεῖ δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς κόμαις καταμένειν τινὰς ἡμῶν· μεστὰ γάρ εἰσιν ἀνθρώπων.»

«Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «σὺν οἷς ἔχω τὰ ἄκρα καταλήψομαι· σὺ δὲ Κλεάνωρα κέλευε διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρατείνειν τὴν φάλαγγα παρὰ τὰς κόμας.» ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, συνηλίσθησαν ἀνδράποδα μὲν ὡς χίλια, βόες δὲ δισχιλίοι, πρόβατα ἄλλα μύρια. τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ

«Οἶδα,» «ἔφη, ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοῦ μόνου δέη· οἱ δὲ |hoplite, heavy in-
|fantryman
θᾶπτον |run, spin καὶ |sweet, ἐὰν καὶ ἐγὼ πεζὸς ἡγῶμαι.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα |come, go καὶ Τιμασίῳ μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων
ἱππέας ὡς τετταράκοντα τῶν |Greek . Ξενοφῶν δὲ

|entrust; pass τοὺς εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη |dangle; pass τὸ τῶν
|an order |over, allow

|ambush, |well-girded καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν |run, spin τούτους ἔχων,
|band,
|child-
|birth
ἑλάνωρ δ' ἡγείτο τῶν ἄλλων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς |village

ἦσαν, Σεύθης ἔχων ὅσον τριάκοντα ἱππέας |go to, approach

εἶπε· «Τάδε δὴ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἃ σὺ ἔλεγες· ἔχονται οἱ
ἄνθρωποι· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἔρημοι οἱ ἱππεῖς |come, go μοι ἄλλος

ἄλλη διώκων, καὶ δέδοικα μὴ |unite; con-|grouped
|front in bat-
|tle
τι ἐργάσωνται οἱ πολέμοι. δεῖ δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς |village

|stay; not change ἰς ἡμῶν· |full γάρ εἰσιν ἀνθρώπων.»

«Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «σὺν οἷς ἔχω τὰ ἄκρα

|seize, understand, catch, Κλεάνορα κέλευε διὰ τοῦ πεδίου
|overtake; (mp) happen

|extend, lengthen, |rank of battle ..ρὰ τὰς |village .» ἐπεὶ ταῦτα
|torture

ἐποίησαν, |collect; eat with |slave μὲν ὡς χίλια, βόες δὲ

|2000 , |cattle, flocks, ἄλλα μύρια. τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ
|herds

answered: «But you do not want me alone, I am sure. The hoplites will run all the quicker and more cheerily if I lead them on foot.”

Thereupon Seuthes went off, and Timasion with him, taking the Hellene squadron of something like forty troopers. Then Xenophon passed the order: the active young fellows up to thirty years of age from the different companies to the front; and off with these he went himself, bowling along; while Cleanor led the other Hellenes. When they had reached the villages, Seuthes, with about thirty troopers, rode up, exclaiming: «Well, Xenophon, this is just what you said! the fellows are caught, but now look here. My cavalry have gone off unsupported; they are scattered in pursuit, one here, one there, and upon my word, I am more than half afraid the enemy will collect somewhere and do them a mischief. Some of us must remain in the villages, for they are swarming with human beings.” «Well then,” said Xenophon, «I will seize the heights with the men I have with me, and do you bid Cleanor extend his line along the level beside the villages.” When they had done so, there were enclosed — of captives for the slave market, one thousand; of cattle, two thousand; and of other small cattle, ten thousand. For the time being they took up quarters

vocabulary

ἄγγειον vessel
ἄλωπεκῇ fox skin
ἀποκαίω burn off
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
αὐλίζομαι live, lodge at
δεῖπνον meal, food
δεῖπνος meal, food
δῆλος visible, conspicuous
διατίθηναι arrange; set out goods for sale ~thesis
ἐκλείπω leave out, pass over
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐντίθηναι load; mp: take to heart ~thesis
ἐπάγνυμι (ῑ) break
ζειρά girded coat
κατακαίω burn down ~caustic
κώμη village
λεία booty

λεῖος smooth
μέχρι as far as, until
μηρός thigh, femur
μισθός reward, wages
οὖς οὖατος (n) ear
παντελής complete, absolute
ῥίς ῥινός (ī, f) nose, nostrils
στέρνον breast, chest, seat of feelings ~sternum
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up station ~strategy
ὕστεραῖος the next; later
φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry ~bear
χιτών -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor
χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow
ψυχος -εος (n, 3) coolness ~psychology

ηὐλίσθησαν.

7.4

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ κατακαύσας ὁ Σεύθης τὰς κώμας παντελῶς καὶ οἰκίαν οὐδεμίαν λιπών, ὅπως φόβον ἐνθείη καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις οἷα πείσονται, ἂν μὴ πείθωνται, ἀπήει πάλιν. καὶ τὴν μὲν λείαν ἀπέπεμψε διατίθεσθαι Ἡρακλείδην εἰς Πέρινθον, ὅπως ἂν μισθὸς γένοιτο τοῖς στρατιώταις· αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ Θυνῶν πεδῖον.

Οἱ δ' ἐκλιπόντες ἔφευγον εἰς τὰ ὄρη. ἦν δὲ χιῶν πολλή καὶ ψυχὸς οὕτως ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δείπνον ἐπήγνυτο καὶ ὁ οἶνος ὃ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγείοις, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πολλῶν καὶ ῥῖνες ἀπεκαίοντο καὶ ὦτα. καὶ τότε δῆλον ἐγένετο οὐ ἔνεκα οἱ Θρᾷκες τὰς ἀλωπεκᾶς ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς φοροῦσι καὶ τοῖς ὠσί, καὶ χιτῶνας οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς στέρνοις ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τοῖς μηροῖς, καὶ ζειράς μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐ χλαμύδας.

|live, lodge at

7.4

Τῇ δ' |the next;|burn down ὁ Σεύθης τὰς |village
|later

|complete, καὶ οἰκίαν οὐδεμίαν λιπών, ὅπως φόβον
|absolute

|load; mp: τοῖς ἄλλοις οἷα πείσονται, ἂν μὴ πείθωνται,
|take to heart

ἀπῆει πάλιν. καὶ τὴν μὲν λείαν |send away |arrange; set out goods for
|sale

Ἡρακλείδην εἰς Πέρινθον, ὅπως ἂν |reward, γένοιτο τοῖς
|wages

|soldier, αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ οἱ |Greek |encamp or take up
|mercenary |station

ἀνὰ τὸ Θυνῶν πεδίον.

Οἱ δ' |leave out, pass over, ὡς εἰς τὰ ὄρη. ἦν δὲ |snow πολλή

καὶ |coolness ὥτως ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον

|break καὶ ὁ οἶνος ὃ ἐν τοῖς |vessel , καὶ τῶν |Greek

πολλῶν καὶ |nose, |burn off καὶ |ear . καὶ τότε |visible,
|nostrils |conspicuous

ἐγένετο οὗ ἕνεκα οἱ Θρᾶκες τὰς |fox skin ἐπὶ ταῖς

κεφαλαῖς |frequentative ὅφρα , καὶ |tunic οὐ μόνον περὶ
|φέρω, to carry

τοῖς |chest ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τοῖς |thigh . καὶ |girded |as far as, until
|coat

τῶν ποδῶν ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐ χλαμύδας.

there.

7.4

But the next day Seuthes burnt the villages to the ground; he left not a single house, being minded to inspire terror in the rest of his enemies, and to show them what they also were to expect, if they refused obedience; and so he went back again. As to the booty, he sent off Heraclides to Perinthus to dispose of it, with a view to future pay for the soldiers. But for himself he encamped with the Hellenes in the lowland country of the Thynians, the natives leaving the flats and betaking themselves in flight to the uplands.

There was deep snow, and cold so intense that the water brought in for dinner and the wine within the jars froze; and many of the Hellenes had their noses and ears frost-bitten. Now they came to understand why the Thracians wear fox-skin caps on their heads and about their ears; and why, on the same principle, they are frocked not only about the chest and bust but so as to cover the loins and thighs as well; and why on horseback they envelop themselves in long shawls which reach down to the feet, instead of

*vocabulary***αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute**ἄρτι** at the same time**αὐλίζομαι** live, lodge at**ἀφειδής** unsparing, cruel ~aphid**διηγέομαι** detail, describe**ἐκφεύγω** flee from, escape ~fugitive**ἡβάσκω** reach puberty**ἱκετεύω** approach to beg**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic**κατακοντίζω** shoot down**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**κώμη** village**λιμός** (i, f) famine**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**ὀπλίτης** -ου (i, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite**παιδεραστής** -οῦ (m, 1) pederast**πέλτη** shield, spear ~pelt**πέλτης** -ου (m, 1) type of river fish ~pelt**πλησίος** near, neighboring**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in**προστρέχω** run to, join, attack**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**σκοπάω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion

ἀφίεις δὲ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ὁ Σεύθης εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν ὅτι εἰ μὴ καταβήσονται οἰκήσοντες καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι κατακαύσει καὶ τούτων τὰς κώμας καὶ τὸν σῖτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται τῷ λιμῷ. ἐκ τούτου κατέβαινον καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ παῖδες καὶ πρεσβύτεροι· οἱ δὲ νεώτεροι ἐν ταῖς ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος κώμας ἠϋλίζοντο. καὶ ὁ Σεύθης καταμαθὼν ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα τῶν ὀπλιτῶν τοὺς νεωτάτους λαβόντα συνεπισπένθαι. καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτὸς ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρήσαν εἰς τὰς κώμας. καὶ οἱ μὲν πλείστοι ἐξέφυγον· πλησίον γὰρ ἦν τὸ ὄρος· ὅσους δὲ ἔλαβε κατηκόντισεν ἀφειδῶς Σεύθης.

Ἐπισθένης δ' ἦν τις Ὀλύνθιος παιδεραστής, ὃς ἰδὼν παῖδα καλὸν ἡβιάσκοντα ἄρτι πέλτην ἔχοντα μέλλοντα ἀποθνήσκειν, προσδραμὼν Ξενοφῶντα ἰκέτευε βοηθήσαι παιδὶ καλῷ. καὶ ὃς προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ δέχεται μὴ ἀποκτείνειν τὸν παῖδα, καὶ τοῦ Ἐπισθένου διηγείται τὸν τρόπον, καὶ ὅτι λόχον ποτὲ συνελέξατο σκοπῶν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ εἴ τινες εἶεν καλοί, καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἦν ἀνὴρ

ἀφίεις δὲ τῶν |captive ὁ Σεύθης εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν
 ὅτι εἰ μὴ καταβήσονται |inhabit καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι
 κατακαύσει καὶ τούτων τὰς |village καὶ τὸν |grain, καὶ
 ἀπολοῦνται τῷ |famine ἐκ τούτου κατέβαινον καὶ γυναῖκες
 καὶ παῖδες καὶ πρεσβύτεροι· οἱ δὲ νεώτεροι ἐν ταῖς ὑπὸ
 τὸ ὄρος |village |live, lodge. καὶ ὁ Σεύθης |examine,
 |at |observe
 ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα τῶν |hoplite, heavy-ς νεωτάτους
 |infantryman
 λαβόντα συνεπισπένσθαι. καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτὸς
 ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρήσαν εἰς τὰς |village καὶ οἱ μὲν
 πλείστοι |flee |near γὰρ ἦν τὸ ὄρος· ὅσους δὲ
 ἔλαβε |shoot down |unsparing, Σεύθης.
 |cruel
 Ἐπισθένης δ' ἦν τις Ὀλύνθιος |pederast , ὃς ἰδὼν
 παῖδα καλὸν |reach |at the same time ἄλλοντα μέλλοντα
 |puberty
 ἀποθνήσκειν, |run to, join, attack ὁφῶντα |approach τὸ βῆγαι αὐ
 παιδὶ καλῶ. καὶ ὃς |come forward, sur- Σεύθῃ δέεται μὴ
 |render, come in
 ἀποκτείνει τὸν παῖδα, καὶ τοῦ Ἐπισθένου |detail, τὸν
 |describe
 τρόπον, καὶ ὅτι |ambush, band, |collect, σκοπῶν οὐδὲν
 |childbirth |assemble
 ἄλλο ἢ εἴ τινας εἶεν καλοί, καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἦν ἀνὴρ

the ordinary short rider's cloak. Seuthes sent off some of the prisoners to the hills with a message to say that if they did not come down to their homes, and live quietly and obey him, he would burn down their villages and their corn, and leave them to perish with hunger. Thereupon down they came, women and children and the older men; the younger men preferred to quarter themselves in the villages on the skirts of the hills. On discovering this, Seuthes bade Xenophon take the youngest of the heavy infantry and join him on an expedition. They rose in the night, and by daybreak had reached the villages; but the majority of the inhabitants made good their escape, for the hills were close at hand. Those whom he did catch, Seuthes unsparingly shot down.

Now there was a certain Olynthian, named Episthenes; he was a great lover of boys, and seeing a handsome lad, just in the bloom of youth, and carrying a light shield, about to be slain, he ran up to Xenophon and supplicated him to rescue the fair youth. Xenophon went to Seuthes and begged him not to put the boy to death. He explained to him the disposition of Episthenes; how he had once enrolled a company, the only qualification required being that of personal beauty; and with these handsome young men at his side

vocabulary

ἀνώτατος topmost

ἄρnuμαι get, win

αὐλίζομαι live, lodge at

γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at

διαμάχομαι fight hard, contend

διατρίβω (ι) wear down, delay

~tribology

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐνταῦθα there, here

ἐπέρομαι ask as well; ask then

ἐπίλεκτος chosen (troops)

ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go

searching through

ἰκετεύω approach to beg

κατακαίνω kill

κατασκηνάω set up camp

κώμη village

μεθίημι let go, cease; (mid) speed off

~jet

μηδέτερος neither

ὄρεινός mountainous

παίζω play ~pediatrician

παίω hit

περιλαμβάνω surround, include

πλησίος near, neighboring

σκηνόω camp

τράχηλος neck ~trachea

ὑποκαταβαίνω come down slowly

ἀγαθός. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης ἤρετο· «Ἡ καὶ θέλοις ἄν, ὦ Ἐπίσθενες, ὑπὲρ τούτου ἀποθανεῖν;»

Ὁ δ' ὑπερανατείνας τὸν τράχηλον, «Παῖε,» ἔφη, «εἰ κελεύει ὁ παῖς καὶ μέλλει χάριν εἶδέναι.»

Ἐπήρετο ὁ Σεύθης τὸν παῖδα εἰ παίσειεν αὐτὸν ἀντ' ἐκείνου. οὐκ εἶα ὁ παῖς, ἀλλ' ἰκέτευε μηδέτερον κατακαίνειν. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ἐπισθένης περιλαβὼν τὸν παῖδα εἶπεν· «Ὡρα σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, περὶ τοῦδέ μοι διαμάχεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ μεθήσω τὸν παῖδα.» ὁ δὲ Σεύθης γελῶν ταῦτα μὲν εἶα·

Ἦδοξε δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτοῦ ἀνλίσθῃναι, ἵνα μὴδ' ἐκ τούτων τῶν κωμῶν οἱ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους τρέφοντο. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὑποκαταβὰς ἐσκήνου, ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους ἐν τῇ ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος ἀνωτάτῳ κώμῃ, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἐν τοῖς ὄρεινοῖς καλουμένοις Θραξῖ πλησίον κατεσκήνησαν.

Ἐκ τούτου ἡμέραι τ' οὐ πολλαὶ διετρίβοντο καὶ οἱ ἐκ

ἀγαθός. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης ἤρετο· «Ἦ καὶ θέλοισ ἄν, ὦ Ἐπίσθενες, ὑπὲρ τούτου ἀποθανεῖν;»

Ὁ δ' ὑπερاناτείνας τὸν |neck , «|hit ,» ἔφη, «εἰ κελεύει ὁ παῖς καὶ μέλλει χάριν εἶδέναι.»

|ask as well; ὁ Σεύθης τὸν παῖδα εἰ παίσσειεν αὐτὸν ἀντ'
|ask then

ἐκείνου. οὐκ εἶα ὁ παῖς, ἀλλ' |approach |neither
|to beg

|kill |there, here Ἐπισθένης |surround, τὸν παῖδα
|include

εἶπεν· «ὦρα σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, περὶ τοῦδέ μοι |fight hard, contend

οὐ γὰρ |let go, cease; αἶδα.» ὁ δὲ Σεύθης γελῶν ταῦτα μὲν
|(mid) speed off
εἶα·

Ἔδοξε δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτοῦ |live, lodge at , ἵνα μῆδ' ἐκ τούτων

τῶν |village οἱ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους τρέφοντο. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν

ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ |come down|camp , ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων
|slowly

τοὺς |chosen (troops) τῇ ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος |topmost |village, καὶ

οἱ ἄλλοι |Greek ἐν τοῖς |mountainous λουμένοις Θραξί

|near κατεσκήνησαν.

Ἐκ τούτου ἡμέραι τ' οὐ πολλαὶ |wear down, delay. οἱ ἐκ

there were none so brave as he. Seuthes put the question, «Would you like to die on his behalf, Episthenes?” whereat the other stretched out his neck, and said, «Strike, if the boy bids you, and will thank his preserver.”

Seuthes, turning to the boy, asked, «Shall I smite him instead of you?” The boy shook his head, imploring him to slay neither the one nor the other, whereupon Episthenes caught the lad in his arms, exclaiming, «It is time you did battle with me, Seuthes, for my boy; never will I yield him up,” and Seuthes laughed: «what must be must,” and so consented.

In these villages he decided that they must bivouac, so that the men on the mountains might be still further deprived of subsistence. Stealthily descending he himself found quarters in the plain; while Xenophon with his picked troops encamped in the highest village on the skirts of the hills; and the rest of the Hellenes hard by, among the highland Thracians, as they are called.

After this, not many days had idly slipt away before the Thracians from the mountains came

vocabulary

ἀνευρίσκω discover
αὐλίζομαι live, lodge at
δείκνυμι (ὄ) show, point out
δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
 ~practice
ἐγγυάω undertake
ἐπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion
ἐχυρός secure; persuasive
ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,
 chief ~hegemony
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
θαρρέω be of good heart
θαρσέω be of good heart
κατασκοπή spying

κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
κώμη village
οἶκημα -τος (n, 3) room
ὄμηρος insurance, hostage
ὀμολογέω agree with/to
πλησίος near, neighboring
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
σκηνέω camp
σκηνόω camp
σκότος darkness, shadow ~shadow
σπονδή libation, treaty ~spontaneous
σταυρός stake ~station
στεγνόω plug, fix leaks
συμπράσσω cooperate
χωρίον area; downwards

τοῦ ὄρους Θρᾶκες καταβαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν Σεύθην περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ ὁμήρων διεπράττοντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν ἔλεγε τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι ἐν πονηροῖς σκηνοῖεν καὶ πλησίον εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι· ἥδιόν τ' ἂν ἔξω ἀυλίζεσθαι ἔφη ἐν ἐχυροῖς χωρίοις μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς στεγνοῖς, ὥστε ἀπολέσθαι. ὁ δὲ θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ ἔδειξεν ὁμήρους παρόντας αὐτῶν. ἐδέοντο δὲ καὶ αὐτοῦ Ξενοφώντος καταβαίνοντές τινες τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους συμπράξαι σφίσι τὰς σπονδάς. ὁ δ' ὠμολόγει καὶ θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ ἡγγυᾶτο μηδὲν αὐτοὺς κακὸν πείσεσθαι πειθομένους Σεύθῃ. οἱ δ' ἄρα ταῦτ' ἔλεγον κατασκοπῆς ἕνεκα.

Ταῦτα μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας ἐγένετο· εἰς δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα ἐπιτίθενται ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους οἱ Θυνοί. καὶ ἡγεμῶν μὲν ἦν ὁ δεσπότης ἐκάστης τῆς οἰκίας· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ἦν ἄλλως τὰς οἰκίας σκότους ὄντος ἀνευρίσκειν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· καὶ γὰρ αἱ οἰκίαι κύκλῳ περισταύρωντο μεγάλοις σταυροῖς τῶν προβάτων ἕνεκα. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὰς θύρας ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος,

τοῦ ὄρους Θρᾶκες καταβαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν Σεύθην περὶ

|libation, καὶ |insurance, |travel over, ac- καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
|treaty |hostage |comply

ἐλθὼν ἔλεγε τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι ἐν πονηροῖς σκηνοῖεν καὶ

|near εἶεν οἱ πολέμιοι· |sweet τ' ἂν ἔξω |live, lodge at

ἔφη ἐν |secure; |area; downwards ἢ ἐν τοῖς στεγνοῖς, ὥστε
|persuasive

ἀπολέσθαι. ὁ δὲ θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ |show |insurance,
|hostage

παρόντας αὐτῶν. ἐδέοντο δὲ καὶ αὐτοῦ Ξενοφώντος

καταβαίνοντές τινες τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους |συμπράσσω?: , 'cooperate; or
|συμπράσσω?: cooperate

τὰς |libation, . ὁ δ' |agree with/to καὶ θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ
|treaty

|undertake μηδὲν αὐτοὺς κακὸν πείσεσθαι πειθομένους

Σεύθῃ. οἱ δ' ἄρα ταῦτ' ἔλεγον |spying ἔνεκα.

Ταῦτα μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας ἐγένετο· εἰς δὲ τὴν |lie upon; approach

νύκτα ἐπιτίθενται ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους οἱ Θυνοί. καὶ

|leader μὲν ἦν ὁ |master, ἐκάστης τῆς οἰκίας· χαλεπὸν
|despot

γὰρ ἦν ἄλλως τὰς οἰκίας |darkness ὄντος |discover ἐν

ταῖς |village καὶ γὰρ αἱ οἰκαίαι |circle, περιεσταύρωντο
|wheel

μεγάλους σταυροὺς τῶν |cattle, flocks, ἔνεκα. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένοντο
|herds

κατὰ τὰς θύρας ἐκάστου τοῦ |room

down and wished to arrange with Seuthes for terms of truce and hostages. Simultaneously came Xenophon and informed Seuthes that they were camped in bad quarters, with the enemy next door; «it would be pleasanter too,” he added, «to bivouac in a strong position in the open, than under cover on the edge of destruction.” The other bade him take heart and pointed to some of their hostages, as much as to say «Look there!” Parties also from the mountaineers came down and pleaded with Xenophon himself, to help arrange a truce for them. This he agreed to do, bidding them to pluck up heart, and assuring them that they would meet with no mischief, if they yielded obedience to Seuthes. All their parleying, however, was, as it turned out, merely to get a closer inspection of things.

This happened in the day, and in the following night the Thynians descended from the hill country and made an attack. In each case, the guide was the master of the house attacked; otherwise it would have taxed their powers to discover the houses in the dark, which, for the sake of their flocks and herds, were palisaded all round with great stockades. As soon as they had reached the doors of any particular

vocabulary

ἀκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute
 ἀποκόπτω cut off
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit
 εἰσακοντίζω shoot
 ἐκπηδάω sally, leave
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐμπύμπρημι burn up ~pyre
 ἐνδον in the house of; within
 ἐνέχω hold inside
 ἐξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἐξοδος (f) leaving, way out
 καίω burn ~caustic
 κατακαίω burn down ~caustic
 κράνος -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram
 κρεμάννυμι (ῥ) hang
 κώμη village
 λόγχη spear point; lot
 μάχαιρα knife, dagger
 ξίφος -εος (n, 3) sword
 ὀκτωκαίδεκα 18

ὀνομαστί by name
 ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter
 ὄροφος thatching
 παρατρέχω run past
 πέλτη shield, spear ~pelt
 πέλτης -ου (m, 1) type of river fish
 ~pelt
 περιβάλλω act: excel; mid: put on
 clothing ~ballistic
 σάλπιγξ -γος (f) trumpet
 σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
 σκήνωμα -τος (n, 3) tent; stage
 σκότος darkness, shadow ~shadow
 σκύταλον club, cudgel
 σπάω draw, pull out, pluck ~spatula
 σταυρός stake ~station
 ὑπεράλλομαι jump over ~sally
 ὑποστρέφω turn around, go back
 ~atrophy

οἱ μὲν εἰσηκόντιζον, οἱ δὲ τοῖς σκυτάλοις ἔβαλλον, ἃ ἔχειν ἔφασαν ὡς ἀποκόψοντες τῶν δοράτων τὰς λόγχας, οἱ δ' ἐνεπίμπρασαν, καὶ Ξενοφῶντα ὀνομαστὶ καλοῦντες ἐξιόντα ἐκέλευον ἀποθνήσκειν, ἣ αὐτοῦ ἔφασαν κατακαυθήσεσθαι αὐτόν.

Καὶ ἤδη τε διὰ τοῦ ὀρόφου ἐφαίνετο πῦρ, καὶ ἐντεθωρακισμένοι οἱ περὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἔνδον ἦσαν ἀσπίδας καὶ μαχαίρας καὶ κράνη ἔχοντες, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακίστιος ἐτῶν ὡς ὀκτωκαίδεκα σημαίνει τῇ σάλπιγγι· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐκπηδῶσιν ἐσπασμένοι τὰ ξίφη καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνωμάτων. οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες φεύγουσιν, ὥσπερ δὴ τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς, ὅπισθεν περιβαλλόμενοι τὰς πέλτας· καὶ αὐτῶν ὑπεραλλομένων τοὺς σταυροὺς ἐλήφθησάν τινες κρεμασθέντες ἐνεχομένων τῶν πελτῶν τοῖς σταυροῖς· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανον ἀμαρτόντες τῶν ἐξόδων· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐδίωκον ἔξω τῆς κώμης.

Τῶν δὲ Θυνῶν ὑποστραφέντες τινὲς ἐν τῷ σκότει τοὺς παρατρέχοντας παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην ἠκόντιζον εἰς τὸ

οἱ μὲν |shoot , οἱ δὲ τοῖς |club, cudgel ἔβαλλον,
 ἃ ἔχειν ἔφασαν ὥς |cut off τῶν δοράτων τὰς
 |spear , οἱ δ' |burn up , καὶ Ξενοφῶντα |by name
 |point;
 |lot
 καλοῦντες |go forth; ἔλεον ἀποθνήσκειν, ἢ αὐτοῦ ἔφασαν
 |is possible
 |burn down αὐτόν.

Καὶ ἤδη τε διὰ τοῦ |thatching ἐφαίνετο πῦρ, καὶ
 ἐντεθωρακισμένοι οἱ περὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἔνδον ἦσαν
 ἀσπίδας καὶ |knife καὶ |helmet; ship's ram καὶ Σιλανὸς
 Μακίστιος ἐτῶν ὥς |18 |give orders to; |trumpet
 |show; mark
 καὶ εὐθὺς |sally, leave |draw, pull out τὰ |sword καὶ οἱ ἐκ
 τῶν ἄλλων |tent; stage . οἱ δὲ Θράκες φεύγουσιν,
 ὥσπερ δὴ τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς, ὅπισθεν |excel; don
 τὰς πέλτας· καὶ αὐτῶν |jump over τοὺς |stake
 ἐλήφθησάν τινες |hang |hold inside τῶν πελτῶν
 τοῖς σταυροῖς· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανον ἁμαρτόντες τῶν
 |leaving, way out |Greek ἐδίωκον ἔξω τῆς |village .
 Τῶν δὲ Θυνῶν |go back τινὲς ἐν τῷ σκότει τοὺς
 |run past παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην |throw, (+gen)' at ὃ

house, the attack began, some hurling in their spears, others belabouring with their clubs, which they carried, it was said, for the purpose of knocking off the lance points from the shaft. Others were busy setting the place on fire; and they kept calling Xenophon by name: «Come out, Xenophon, and die like a man, or we will roast you alive inside.”

By this time too the flames were making their appearance through the roof, and Xenophon and his followers were within, with their coats of mail on, and big shields, swords, and helmets. Then Silanus, a Macistian, a youth of some eighteen years, signalled on the trumpet; and in an instant, out they all leapt with their drawn swords, and the inmates of other quarters as well. The Thracians took to their heels, according to their custom, swinging their light shields round their backs. As they leapt over the stockade some were captured, hanging on the top with their shields caught in the palings; others missed the way out, and so were slain; and the Hellenes chased them hotly, till they were outside the village.

A Party of Thynians turned back, and as the men ran past in bold relief against a blazing house, they let fly a volley of javelins, out of

vocabulary

δεξιόομαι salute, greet

ἔσθῃς clothes ~vest

κατακαίω burn down ~caustic

κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit
~ceratopsia

κράτιστος best

λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain

ὄμηρος insurance, hostage

ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy
infantryman ~hoplite

ὄρεινός mountainous

σκεῦος -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel

σκότος darkness, shadow ~shadow

συμπαρέχω assist in causing

συστρατεύω join in an expedition

τιτρώσκω wound, bring to grief
~trauma

τριπλάσιος triple

ὑστεραῖος the next; later

φάος φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl)
eyes ~photon

φθέγγομαι make a sound, utter
~diphthong

φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκοτόους· καὶ ἔτρωσαν Ἰερώνυμόν τε καὶ
 Εὐδοέα λοχαγὸν καὶ Θεογένην Λοκρὸν λοχαγόν· ἀπέθανε
 δὲ οὐδείς· κατεκαύθη μέντοι καὶ ἐσθῆς τινων καὶ σκεύη.
 Σεύθης δὲ ἦκε βοηθῶν σὺν ἐπτὰ ἱππεύσι τοῖς πρώτοις καὶ
 τὸν σαλπικτὴν ἔχων τὸν Θράκιον. καὶ ἐπείπερ ἦσθετο,
 ὅσονπερ χρόνον ἐβόηθει, τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸ κέρας ἐφθέγγετο
 αὐτῷ· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο φόβον συμπαρέσχε τοῖς πολεμίοις.
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθεν, ἐδεξιούτό τε καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οἶοιτο τεθνεώτας
 πολλοὺς εὐρήσειν.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν δέεται τοὺς ὁμήρους τε αὐτῷ
 παραδοῦναι καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, εἰ βούλεται, συστρατεύεσθαι·
 εἰ δὲ μή, αὐτὸν ἐᾶσαι. τῇ οὖν ὑστεραία παραδίδωσιν ὁ
 Σεύθης τοὺς ὁμήρους, πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας ἤδη, τοὺς
 κρατίστους, ὡς ἔφασαν, τῶν ὀρεινῶν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχεται
 σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. ἤδη δὲ εἶχε καὶ τριπλασίαν δύναμιν ὁ
 Σεύθης· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν ἀκούοντες ἃ πράττει ὁ
 Σεύθης πολλοὶ κατέβαινον συστρατευσόμενοι. οἱ δὲ Θυνοὶ
 ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους πολλοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας, πολλοὺς

φῶς ἐκ τοῦ |darkness καὶ |wound, bring^τ ρώνυμόν τε καὶ
to grief
Εὐοδέα |captain καὶ Θεογένην Λοκρὸν |captain ἀπέθανε
δὲ οὐδεὶς· |burn down μέντοι καὶ |clothes τινων καὶ |thing, tool, vessel
Σεύθης δὲ ἦκε βοηθῶν σὺν ἑπτὰ ἱππεῦσι τοῖς πρώτοις καὶ
τὸν σαλπικτὴν ἔχων τὸν Θράκιον. καὶ ἐπείπερ ἦσθετο,
ὅσονπερ χρόνον ἐβοήθει, τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸ |horn; |make a sound, utter
|military
αὐτῷ· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο φόβον συμπαρέσχ^ε τοῖς πολεμίοις.
ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθεν, |salute, τε καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οἶοιτο τεθνεώτας
|greet
πολλοὺς εὐρήσειν.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν δέεται τοὺς |insurance, τε αὐτῷ
|hostage
παραδοῦναι καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, εἰ βούλεται, |join in an expedi-
|tion
εἰ δὲ μή, αὐτὸν ἐᾶσαι. τῇ οὖν |the next; later, ραδίδωσιν ὁ
Σεύθης τοὺς |insurance, πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας ἤδη, τοὺς
|hostage
|best , ὡς ἔφασαν, τῶν ὀρεινῶν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχεται
σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. ἤδη δὲ εἶχε καὶ |triple δύναμιν ὁ
Σεύθης· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν ἀκούοντες ᾧ πράττει ὁ
Σεύθης πολλοὶ κατέβαινον |join in an expedition . οἱ δὲ Θυνοὶ
ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους πολλοὺς μὲν |hoplite, heavy λους
|infantryman

the darkness into the glare, and wounded two captains, Hieronymus, an Euodean, and Theogenes, a Locrian. No one was killed, only the clothes and baggage of some of the men were consumed in the flames. Presently up came Seuthes to the rescue with seven troopers, the first to hand, and his Thracian trumpeteer by his side. Seeing that something had happened, he hastened to the rescue, and ever the while his bugler wound his horn, which music added terror to the foe. Arrived at length, he greeted them with outstretched hand, exclaiming, «I thought to find you all dead men.”

After that, Xenophon begged him to hand over the hostages to himself, and if so disposed, to join him on an expedition to the hills, or if not, to let him go alone. Accordingly the next day Seuthes delivered up the hostages. They were men already advanced in years, but the pick of the mountaineers, as they themselves gave out. Not merely did Seuthes do this, but he came himself, with his force at his back (and by this time he had treble his former force, for many of the Odrysians, hearing of his proceedings, came down to join in the campaign); and the Thynians, espying from the mountains the vast array of heavy infantry and light infantry and cavalry, rank upon rank, came down and supplicated him to make

vocabulary

ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
βοεικός shield; leather, bovine
δέλτος writing tablet
διανέμω distribute, divide
ἐλεύθερος not enslaved
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue
ἐπίθεσις -εως (f) attack
ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals
 ~zygote
ἰκετεύω approach to beg
λεία booty
λεῖος smooth

οἴκοι at home ~economics
ὄμηρος insurance, hostage
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
πιστός faithful; trustworthy
προσομολογέω concede also
σπένδω libate; (mid) make a treaty
 ~spontaneous
συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult
 ~volunteer
τιμωρέω (ἱ) (+dat) take vengeance,
 punish; aid one who has been attacked
ὑπερβάλλω cause to go beyond; delay
 ~ballistic

δὲ πελταστάς, πολλοὺς δὲ ἰππέας, καταβάντες ἰκέτευον
 σπείσασθαι, καὶ πάντα ὁμολόγουν ποιήσιν καὶ πιστὰ
 λαμβάνειν ἐκέλευον. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα
 ἐπεδείκνυνεν ᾧ λέγοιεν, καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἔφη σπείσασθαι, εἰ
 Ξενοφῶν βούλοιτο τιμωρήσασθαι αὐτοὺς τῆς ἐπιθέσεως.
 ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ' ἔγωγε ἱκανὴν νομίζω καὶ νῦν δίκην ἔχειν,
 εἰ οὗτοι δοῦλοι ἔσονται ἀντ' ἐλευθέρων.» συμβουλεύειν
 μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁμήρους λαμβάνειν τοὺς
 δυνατωτάτους κακὸν τι ποιεῖν, τοὺς δὲ γέροντας οἴκοι ἔαν.
 οἱ μὲν οὖν ταύτῃ πάντες δὴ προσωμολόγουν.

7.5

Ὑπερβάλλουσι δὲ πρὸς τοὺς ὑπὲρ Βυζαντίου Θρᾷκας
 εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον· αὕτη δ' ἦν οὐκέτι ἀρχὴ
 Μαισάδου, ἀλλὰ Τήρους τοῦ Ὀδρύσου ἀρχαίου τινός. καὶ
 ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἐνταῦθα ἔχων τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας παρῆν.
 καὶ Σεύθης ἐξαγαγὼν ζεύγη ἡμιονικὰ τρία οὐ γὰρ ἦν
 πλείω, τὰ δ' ἄλλα βοεικά, καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα ἐκέλευε
 λαβεῖν, τὰ δ' ἄλλα διανείμει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς

δὲ |light troops , πολλοὺς δὲ ἱππέας, καταβάντες |approach to beg

|libate; (mid) καὶ πάντα |agree with/to ποιήσιν καὶ |faithful;
|make a treaty |trustworthy

λαμβάνειν ἐκέλευον. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα

ἐπεδείκνυνεν ᾧ λέγοιεν, καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἔφη |libate; (mid) εἰ
|make a treaty

Ξενοφῶν βούλοιο |take vengeance, αὐτοὺς τῆς |attack
|punish, aid

ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ' ἔγωγε ἱκανὴν νομίζω καὶ νῦν δίκην ἔχειν,

εἰ οὗτοι δοῦλοι ἔσονται ἀντ' |not enslaved , |give advice;
|(mid) consult

μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ τὸ λοιπὸν |insurance, λαμβάνειν τοὺς
|hostage

δυνατωτάτους κακόν τι ποιεῖν, τοὺς δὲ γέροντας |at home' .

οἱ μὲν οὖν ταύτῃ πάντες δὴ |concede also

7.5

|cause to go be- δὲ πρὸς τοὺς ὑπὲρ Βυζαντίου Θρᾷκας
|yond; delay

εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον· αὕτῃ δ' ἦν οὐκέτι ἀρχὴ

Μαισάδου, ἀλλὰ Τήρους τοῦ Ὀδρύσου |ancient, from's. καὶ
|the beginning

ὁ Ἡρακλείδης |there, here ἔχων τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας παρῆν.

καὶ Σεύθης |lead out |team ἡμιονικὰ τρία οὐ γὰρ ἦν

πλείω, τὰ δ' ἄλλα |shield; leather, τας Ξενοφῶντα ἐκέλευε
|bovine

λαβεῖν, τὰ δ' ἄλλα |distribute, τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
|divide

terms. «They were ready,” they professed, «to do all that he demanded; let him take pledges of their good faith.” So Seuthes summoned Xenophon and explained their proposals, adding that he should make no terms with them, if Xenophon wished to punish them for their night attack. The latter replied: «For my part, I should think their punishment is great enough already, if they are to be slaves instead of free men; still,” he added, «I advise you for the future to take as hostages those who are most capable of doing mischief, and to let the old men abide in peace at home.” So to a man they gave in their adhesion in that quarter of the country.

7.5

Crossing over in the direction of the Thracians above Byzantium, they reached the Delta, as it is called. Here they were no longer in the territory of the Maesades, but in the country of Teres the Odrysian the spoil, and Seuthes picked out three pairs of mules (there were only three, the other teams being oxen); then he summoned Xenophon and bade him take them, and divide the rest between the generals and officers, to

*vocabulary***ἀκολουθέω** follow**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with**βοεικός** shield; leather, bovine**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander

~ballistic

δωρέω give ~donate**ἐγκαλέω** demand payment; accuse**ἐκβάλλω** throw out, fell, let fall

~ballistic

ἐμπολάω trade for**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐντονος** violent, intense**ἐπόμενυμι** (ὅ) swear by**ἐχθω** (mp) be hated ~external**ζεῦγος** -ους (n, 3) team of animals

~zygote

ἱμάτιον toga, cloth**καταμερίζω** cut up; distribute**κήδω** distress, hurt; mp: care about

(+gen) ~heinous

λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**μισθός** reward, wages**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of

~plethora

προσδανεῖζω lend as well**σαντοῦ** yourself**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

τοίνυν well, then**φίλιος** friendly

καὶ λοχαγοῖς. Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπεν· «Ἐμοὶ τοίνυν ἀρκεῖ καὶ αὐθις λαβεῖν· τούτοις δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς δωροῦ οἷ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἡκολούθησαν καὶ λοχαγοῖς.» καὶ τῶν ζευγῶν λαμβάνει ἐν μὲν Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεύς, ἐν δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, ἐν δὲ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιός· τὰ δὲ βοεικὰ ζεύγη τοῖς λοχαγοῖς κατεμερίσθη. τὸν δὲ μισθὸν ἀποδίδωσιν ἐξεληλυθότος ἤδη τοῦ μηνὸς εἴκοσι μόνον ἡμερῶν· ὁ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐ πλέον ἐμπολήσαι. ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν ἀχθεσθεὶς εἶπεν ἐπομόσας· «Δοκεῖς μοι, ὦ Ἡρακλείδη, οὐχ ὥς δεῖ κήδεσθαι Σεύθου· εἰ γὰρ ἐκήδου, ἦκες ἂν φέρων πλήρη τὸν μισθὸν καὶ προσδανεισάμενος, εἰ μὴ ἄλλως ἐδύνω, καὶ ἀποδόμενος τὰ σαντοῦ ἱμάτια.»

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἡχθέσθη τε καὶ ἔδεισε μὴ ἐκ τῆς Σεύθου φιλίας ἐκβληθείη, καὶ ὅ τι ἐδύνατο ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας Ξενοφῶντα διέβαλλε πρὸς Σεύθην. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται Ξενοφῶντι ἐνεκάλουν ὅτι οὐκ εἶχον τὸν μισθόν· Σεύθης δὲ ἤχθετο αὐτῷ ὅτι ἐντόνως τοῖς στρατιώταις ἀπῆτει τὸν μισθόν. καὶ τέως μὲν αἰεὶ

καὶ λοχαγοῖς. Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπεν· «Ἐμοὶ |well, |satisfy; ward off,
 |then |defend; suffice
 καὶ αὐθις λαβεῖν· τούτοις δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς δωροῦ οἱ
 σὺν ἐμοὶ |follow καὶ λοχαγοῖς.» καὶ τῶν |team
 λαμβάνει ἐν μὲν Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεύς, ἐν δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ
 Ὀρχομένιος, ἐν δὲ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιός· τὰ δὲ |shield; |team
 |leather,
 τοῖς λοχαγοῖς |cut up; distribute . ὃν δὲ |reward, |bovine
 |wages
 ἐξεληλυθότος ἤδη τοῦ μηνὸς ἕκκοσι μόνον ἡμερῶν· ὁ
 γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐ πλέον |trade for ὁ
 οὖν Ξενοφῶν |be burdened with |swear by «Δοκεῖς μοι, ὦ
 Ἡρακλείδη, οὐχ ὥς δεῖ |distress Σεύθου· εἰ γὰρ |distress ,
 ἦκες ἂν φέρων |full, com-|reward, καὶ |lend as well
 |plete; (+gen)|wages
 εἰ μὴ ἄλλως ἐδύνω, καὶ ἀποδόμενος τὰ |yourself |toga, >
 |full of |cloth
 |thence ὁ Ἡρακλείδης |be burdened with ἔδεισε μὴ ἐκ
 τῆς Σεύθου |friendly |throw out, καὶ ὅ τι ἐδύνατο ἀπὸ
 |fell, let fall
 ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας Ξενοφῶντα |throw across; ὡς Σεύθην. οἱ
 |slander
 μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται Ξενοφῶντι |demand pay-τι οὐκ εἶχον
 |ment; accuse
 τὸν |reward, Σεύθης δὲ ἤχθετο αὐτῷ ὅτι |violent, τοῖς
 |wages |intense
 στρατιώταις |demand . ἔ|to|reward, καὶ τέως μὲν αἰεὶ
 |have returned|wages

which Xenophon replied that for himself, he was content to receive his share another time, but added: «Make a present of these to my friends here, the generals who have served with me, and to the officers.” So of the pairs of mules Timasion the Dardanian received one, Cleanor the Orchomenian one, and Phryniscus the Achaean one. The teams of oxen were divided among the officers. Then Seuthes proceeded to remit pay due for the month already passed, but all he could give was the equivalent of twenty days. Heracleides insisted that this was all he had got by his trafficking. Whereupon Xenophon with some warmth exclaimed: «Upon my word, Heracleides, I do not think you care for Seuthes’ interest as you should. If you did, you have been at pains to bring back the full amount of the pay, even if you had had to raise a loan to do so, and, if by no other means, by selling the coat off your own back.”

What he said annoyed Heracleides, who was afraid of being ousted from the friendship of Seuthes, and from that day forward he did his best to calumniate Xenophon before Seuthes. The soldiers, on their side, laid the blame of course on Xenophon: «Where was their pay?” and Seuthes was vexed with him for persistently demanding it for them. Up to this date he had frequently referred to what he would do when he got

vocabulary

ἄνευ away from; not having; not
needing ~Sp. sin

ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
upwards, out to sea

ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful

διαβάλλω throw across; slander
~ballistic

εἰσάγω lead in ~demagogue

ἔκπλεως full of, abundant

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐντός within

ἐπειδὴν when, after

λοιδορέω abuse, revile

μισθός reward, wages

πανουργία villainy

προσδοκάω expect

στρατεύω make an expedition, war,
campaign ~strategy

στρατιά army ~strategy

συνομολογέω agree

συστρατεύω join in an expedition

τοίνυν well, then

ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do
~ischemia

ἐμέμνητο ὥς, ἐπειδὰν ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἀπέλθῃ, παραδώσει αὐτῷ Βισάνθην καὶ Γάνον καὶ Νέον τείχος· ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου οὐδενὸς ἔτι τούτων ἐμέμνητο. ὁ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης καὶ τοῦτο διεβεβλήκει ὥς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶη τείχη παραδιδόναι ἀνδρὶ δύναμιν ἔχοντι.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἐβουλεύετο τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ ἔτι ἄνω στρατεύεσθαι· ὁ δ' Ἡρακλείδης εἰσαγαγὼν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς πρὸς Σεύθην λέγειν τε ἐκέλευεν αὐτοὺς ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν ἦττον σφεῖς ἀγάγοιεν τὴν στρατιὰν ἢ Ξενοφῶν, τὸν τε μισθὸν ὑπισχνεῖτο αὐτοῖς ἐντὸς ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν ἔκπλεων παρέσεσθαι δυοῖν μηνῶν, καὶ συστρατεύεσθαι ἐκέλευε. καὶ ὁ Τιμασίων εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν οὐδ' ἂν πέντε μηνῶν μισθὸς μέλλῃ εἶναι στρατευσαίμην ἂν ἄνευ Ξενοφώντος.» καὶ ὁ Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συνωμολόγουν τῷ Τιμασίῳ.

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Σεύθης ἐλοιδόρει τὸν Ἡρακλείδην ὅτι οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφῶντα. ἐκ δὲ τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν μόνον. ὁ δὲ γνούς τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου τὴν πανουργίαν

ἐμέμνητο ὥς, ^{|when,}
^{|after} ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἀπέλθῃ, παραδώσει
 αὐτῷ Βισάνθην καὶ Γάνον καὶ Νέον τείχος· ἀπὸ δὲ
 τούτου τοῦ χρόνου οὐδενὸς ἔτι τούτων ἐμέμνητο. ὁ γὰρ
 Ἡρακλείδης καὶ τοῦτο ^{|throw across;} ὥς οὐκ ^{|safe,}
^{|slander} ^{|steady, careful} εἰς τὴν τείχη παραδιδόναι ἀνδρὶ δύναμιν ἔχοντι.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἐβουλευέτο τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ
 τοῦ ἔτι ἄνω ^{|make an expedition,} ὃν Ἡρακλείδης ^{|lead in}
^{|war, campaign} τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς πρὸς Σεύθην λέγειν τε ἐκέλευεν
 αὐτοὺς ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν ἦττον σφεῖς ἀγάγοιεν τὴν ^{|army}

ἢ Ξενοφῶν, τὸν τε ^{|reward,} ^{|promise,} αὐτοῖς ^{|within}
^{|wages} ^{|agree} ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν ^{|full of, abundant} εἶναι δυοῖν μηνῶν, καὶ

^{|join in an expedi-} ἐκέλευε. καὶ ὁ Τιμασίων εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ
^{|tion}

μὲν ^{|well, then} ἴδ' ἂν πέντε μηνῶν ^{|reward,} μέλλῃ εἶναι
^{|wages}

^{|make an expedition,} ἀπὸ τούτου ^{|away from; not hav-} » καὶ ὁ Φρυνίσκος
^{|war, campaign} ^{|ing; not needing}

καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ ^{|agree} τῷ Τιμασίῳ.

^{|thence} ὁ Σεύθης ^{|abuse,} τὸν Ἡρακλείδην ὅτι οὐ
^{|revile}

παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφῶντα. ἐκ δὲ τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν
 αὐτὸν μόνον. ὁ δὲ γνοὺς τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου τὴν ^{|villainy}

to the seaboard again; how he intended to hand over to him Bisanthe, Canos, and Neontichos. But from this time forward he never mentioned one of them again. The slanderous tongue of Heracleides had whispered him:—it was not safe to hand over fortified towns to a man with a force at his back.

Consequently Xenophon fell to considering what he ought to do as regards marching any further up the country; and Heracleides introduced the other generals to Seuthes, urging them to say that they were quite as well able to lead the army as Xenophon, and promising them that within a day or two they should have full pay for two months, and he again implored them to continue the campaign with Seuthes. To which Timasion replied that for his part he would continue no campaign without Xenophon; not even if they were to give him pay for five months; and what Timasion said, Phryniscus and Cleanor repeated; the views of all three coincided.

Seuthes fell to upbraiding Heracleides in round terms. «Why had he not invited Xenophon with the others?» and presently they invited him, but by himself alone. He, perceiving the knavery of Heracleides, and that his object was to calumniate him with

*vocabulary***ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander

~ballistic

ἐκπίπτω fall out of ~petal**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

κιβώτιον small box, chamber**κλίνη** (i) bed, couch ~clinic**κλίνω** (i) lean, recline ~incline**ληίζομαι** plunder ~lucre**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**ναύκληρος** ship master, landlord**ξύλινος** wooden**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**ὀκέλλω** run aground**ὀρίζω** divide; ordain, define ~horizon**πάμπολυς** very great**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape**στήλη** post, column**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition**τέναγος** -εος (n, 3) shoal, shallows

ὅτι βούλοιτο αὐτὸν διαβάλλειν πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς, παρέρχεται λαβὼν τοὺς τε στρατηγούς πάντας καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς. καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπείσθησαν, συνεστρατεύοντο καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον διὰ τῶν Μελινοφάγων καλουμένων Θρακῶν εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν. ἔνθα τῶν εἰς τὸν Πόντον πλεουσῶν νεῶν πολλαὶ ὀκέλλουσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι· τέναγος γάρ ἐστιν ἐπὶ πάμπλου τῆς θαλάττης. καὶ Θρᾶκες οἱ κατὰ ταῦτα οἰκοῦντες στήλας ὀρισάμενοι τὰ καθ' αὐτοὺς ἐκπίπτοντα ἕκαστοι λήζονται· τέως δὲ ἔλεγον πρὶν ὀρίσασθαι ἀρπάζοντας πολλοὺς ὑπ' ἀλλήλων ἀποθνήσκειν. ἐνταῦθα ἠύρισκοντο πολλαὶ μὲν κλῖναι, πολλὰ δὲ κιβώτια, πολλὰ δὲ βίβλοι γεγραμμέναι, καὶ τᾶλλα πολλὰ ὅσα ἐν ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι ναύκληροι ἄγουσιν. ἐντεῦθεν ταῦτα καταστρεψάμενοι ἀπῆσαν πάλιν.

Ἐνθα δὴ Σεύθης εἶχε στράτευμα ἤδη πλέον τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ· ἕκ τε γὰρ Ὀδρυσῶν πολὺ ἔτι πλείους κατεβεβήκεσαν καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ πειθόμενοι συνεστρατεύοντο.

ὅτι βούλοιτο αὐτὸν |throw across; πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους
|slander

στρατηγούς, |pass, escape λαβὼν τοὺς τε στρατηγούς

πάντας καὶ τοὺς |captain . καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπέισθισαν,

|join in an expedition καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν

Πόντον διὰ τῶν Μελινοφάγων καλουμένων Θρακῶν εἰς

τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν. ἔνθα τῶν εἰς τὸν Πόντον πλεουσῶν

νεῶν πολλαὶ |run aground καὶ |fall out of |shoal, γάρ ἐστιν
|shallows

ἐπὶ |very great τῆς θαλάττης. καὶ Θρᾶκες οἱ κατὰ ταῦτα

|inhabit |post, |divide; or- τὰ καθ' αὐτοὺς |fall out of
|column |dain, define

ἕκαστοι |ληίζομαι?: plunder; or ἔλεγον πρὶν |divide; or-
|ληίζομαι?: plunder |dain, define

|carry off, seize πολλοὺς ὑπ' ἀλλήλων ἀποθνήσκειν. |there, here

ἡρίσκοντο πολλαὶ μὲν κλῖναι, πολλὰ δὲ |small box, chamber

πολλαὶ δὲ βίβλοι γεγραμμέναι, καὶ τᾶλλα πολλὰ ὅσα

ἐν |wooden τεύχεσι |ship master, ἄγουσιν. |thence ταῦτα
|landlord

|overturn, subdue ἀπῆσαν πάλιν.

Ἐνθα δὲ Σεύθης εἶχε |army ἥδη πλέον τοῦ

Ἑλληνικοῦ· ἕκ τε γὰρ Ὀδρυσῶν πολὺ ἔτι πλείους

κατεβέβηκεσαν καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ πειθόμενοι |join in an expedition.

the other generals, presented himself; but at the same time he took care to bring all the generals and the officers. After their joint consent had been secured, they continued the campaign. Keeping the Pontus on their right, they passed through the millet-eating Thracians, as they are called, and reached Salmydessus. This is a point at which many trading vessels bound for the Black Sea run aground and are wrecked, owing to a sort of marshy ledge or sandbank which runs out for a considerable distance into the sea. The Thracians, who dwell in these parts, have set up pillars as boundary marks, and each set of them has the pillage of its own flotsom and jetsom; for in old days, before they set up these landmarks, the wreckers, it is said, used freely to fall foul of and slay one another. Here was a rich treasure trove, of beds and boxes numberless, with a mass of written books, and all the various things which mariners carry in their wooden chests. Having reduced this district, they turned round and went back again.

By this time the army of Seuthes had grown to be considerably larger than the Hellenic army; for on the one hand, the Odrysians flocked down in still larger numbers, and on the other, the tribes

vocabulary

ἄπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance
ἀσχολία business, being busy
δαρεικός Persian coin
διάκειμαι be in a condition
διμοιρία double share; 2/3
ἐκπλέω sail away ~float
καταυλίζομαι be sheltered
λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company
λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
μισθός reward, wages
οἰκεῖος household, familiar, proper
παγχάλεπος very difficult, impracticable, of persons and things

στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατεύω make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
συγγίγνομαι associate with, meet, have sex ~genus
σχεδόν near, approximately at ~ischemia
τετραμοιρία quadruple share

κατηυλίσθησαν δ' ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὑπὲρ Σηλυμβρίας ὅσον τριάκοντα σταδίους ἀπέχοντες τῆς θαλάττης. καὶ μισθὸς μὲν οὐδεὶς πω ἐφαίνετο· πρὸς δὲ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οἳ τε στρατιῶται παγχαλέπως εἶχον ὅ τε Σεύθης οὐκέτι οἰκείως διέκειτο, ἀλλ' ὁπότε συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ βουλόμενος ἔλθοι, πολλαὶ ἤδη ἀσχολίαι ἐφαίνοντο.

7.6

Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ σχεδὸν ἤδη δύο μηνῶν ὄντων ἀφικνεῖται Χαρμῖνός τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ στρατεῦσθαι ἐπὶ Τισσαφέρνην, καὶ Θίβρων ἐκπέπλευκεν ὥς πολεμήσων, καὶ δεῖται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ λέγει ὅτι δαρεικὸς ἐκάστῳ ἔσται μισθὸς τοῦ μηνός, καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς διμοιρία, τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς τετραμοιρία. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, εὐθὺς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης πυθόμενος ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἤκουσι λέγει τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι κάλλιστόν τι γεγένηται· «οἱ μὲν γὰρ Λακεδαιμόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύματος, σὺ δὲ οὐκέτι δέῃ· ἀποδιδούς

|be sheltered δ' ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὑπὲρ Σηλυμβρίας ὅσον

τριάκοντα σταδίους |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some|reward,
|distance |wages

μὲν οὐδεὶς πω ἐφαίνετο· πρὸς δὲ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οἱ τε

|soldier, |very difficult εἶχον ὃ τε Σεύθης οὐκέτι |household, familiar,
|mercenary |proper

|be in a condition ' τότε |associate with, |with βουλόμενος ἔλθοι,
|meet, have sex

πολλὰ ἤδη |business, ἐφαίνοντο.
|being
|busy

7.6

Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ |about ἤδη δύο μηνῶν ὄντων

ἀφικνεῖται Χαρμῖνός τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος

παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι Λακεδαιμόνιοις δοκεῖ

|make an expedition, Τισσαφέρην, καὶ Θίβρων |sail away
|war, campaign

ὥς πολεμήσων, καὶ δεῖται ταύτης τῆς |army καὶ

λέγει ὅτι |Persian coin: ἄστω ἔσται |reward, τοῦ μηνός, καὶ
|wages

τοῖς λοχαγοῖς |double , τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς |quadruple
|share;
|share

ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον ^{2/3}οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, εὐθὺς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης

πυθόμενος ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ |army ἤκουσι λέγει τῷ Σεύθῃ

ὅτι κάλλιστόν τι γεγένηται· «οἱ μὲν γὰρ Λακεδαιμόνιοι

δέονται τοῦ |army , σὺ δὲ οὐκέτι δέῃ· ἀποδιδούς

which gave in their adhesion from time to time were amalgamated with his armament. They got into quarters on the flat country above Selybria at about three miles distance from the sea. As to pay, not a penny was as yet forthcoming, and the soldiers were cruelly disaffected to Xenophon, whilst Seuthes, on his side, was no longer so friendly disposed. If Xenophon ever wished to come face to face with him, want of leisure or some other difficulty always seemed to present itself.

7.6

At this date, when nearly two months had already passed, an embassy arrived. These were two agents from Thibron—Charminus, a Lacedaemonian, and Polynicus. They were sent to say that the Lacedaemonians had resolved to open a campaign against Tissaphernes, and that Thibron, who had set sail to conduct the war, was anxious to avail himself of the troops. He could guarantee that each soldier should receive a daric a month as pay, the officers double pay, and the generals quadruple. The Lacedaemonian emissaries had no sooner arrived than Heracleides, having learnt that they had come in search of the Hellenic troops, goes off himself to Seuthes and says: «The best thing that could have happened; the Lacedaemonians want these troops and you have done with them, so that if you hand over the troops

vocabulary

ἀπαγωγή leading away
 ἀπαιτέω demand to have returned
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
 ἀποτρέχω run away
 δημαγωγέω be a leader
 ἐναντιόομαι oppose, contradict
 ἐρωτάω ask about something
 μεγαλοπρεπής befitting greatness
 μισθός reward, wages
 ξενίζω be host, treat as a guest

~xenophobe
 ξένιος of hospitality ~xenophobe
 παράγω deflect; bring forward
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
 συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
 ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand; submit to
 φιλοστρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) friendly to soldiers
 χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma
 χείρων worse, more base, inferior, weaker

δὲ τὸ στράτευμα χαριῇ αὐτοῖς, σὲ δὲ οὐκέτι ἀπαιτήσουσι
τὸν μισθόν, ἀλλ' ἀπαλλάσσονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας.»

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης κελεύει παράγειν· καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶπον
ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἤκουσιν, ἔλεγεν ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα
ἀποδίδωσι, φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος εἶναι βούλεται,
καλεῖ τε αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ ξένια· καὶ ἐξένιζε μεγαλοπρεπῶς.
Ξενοφῶντα δὲ οὐκ ἐκάλει, οὐδὲ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν
οὐδένα. ἐρωτώντων δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων τίς ἀνὴρ
εἶη Ξενοφῶν ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα εἴη οὐ κακός,
φιλοστρατιώτης δέ· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο χεῖρόν ἐστιν αὐτῷ. καὶ
οἱ εἶπον· «Ἄλλ' ἢ δημαγωγεῖ ὁ ἀνὴρ τοὺς ἄνδρας;» καὶ ὁ
Ἡρακλείδης, «Πάνυ μὲν οὖν,» ἔφη.

«Ἄρ' οὖν,» ἔφασαν, «μὴ καὶ ἡμῖν ἐναντιώσεται τῆς
ἀπαγωγῆς;»

«Ἄλλ' ἦν ὑμεῖς,» ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, «συλλέξαντες
αὐτοὺς ὑπόσχησθε τὸν μισθόν, ὀλίγον ἐκείνῳ
προσχόντες ἀποδραμοῦνται σὺν ὑμῖν.»

δὲ τὸ |army |gratify αὐτοῖς, σὲ δὲ οὐκέτι |demand to
|have returned

τὸν |reward, , ἀλλ' |free from, remove; : τῆς χώρας.»
|wages |be freed, depart

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης κελεύει |deflect; bring πρὶ ἐπεὶ εἶπον
|forward

ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ |army ἤκουσιν, ἔλεγεν ὅτι τὸ |army

ἀποδίδωσι, φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος εἶναι βούλεται,

καλεῖ τε αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ |of hospitality |be host |befitting greatness

Ξενοφῶντα δὲ οὐκ ἐκάλει, οὐδὲ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν

οὐδένα. |ask δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων τίς ἀνὴρ

εἷη Ξενοφῶν ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα εἷη οὐ κακός,

|friendly to soldiers δέ· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο |worse, more base ᾧ. καὶ

οἱ εἶπον· «Ἄλλ' ἢ |be a leader ὁ ἀνὴρ τοὺς ἄνδρας;» καὶ ὁ

Ἡρακλείδης, «Πάνυ μὲν οὖν,» ἔφη.

«Ἄρ' οὖν,» ἔφασαν, «μὴ καὶ ἡμῖν |oppose, τῆς
|contradict

|leading away ·

«Ἄλλ' ἢν ὑμεῖς,» ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, «|collect,
|assemble

αὐτοὺς |promise τὸν |reward, , ὀλίγον ἐκείνω
|wages

προσχόντες |run away σὺν ὑμῖν.»

to them, you will do the Lacedaemonians a good turn and will cease to be bothered for pay any more. The country will be quit of them once and for ever.”

On hearing this Seuthes bade him introduce the emissaries. As soon as they had stated that the object of their coming was to treat for the Hellenic troops, he replied that he would willingly give them up, that his one desire was to be the friend and ally of Lacedaemon. So he invited them to partake of hospitality, and entertained them magnificently; but he did not invite Xenophon, nor indeed any of the other generals. Presently the Lacedaemonians asked: «What sort of man is Xenophon?” and Seuthes answered: «Not a bad fellow in most respects; but he is too much the soldiers’ friend; and that is why it goes ill with him.” They asked: «Does he play the popular leader?” and Heracleides answered: «Exactly so.”

«Well then,” said they, «he will oppose our taking away the troops, will he not?”

«To be sure he will,” said Heracleides; «but you have only to call a meeting of the whole body, and promise them pay, and little further heed will they pay to him; they will run off with you.”

«How then are we to get

vocabulary

αὔριον tomorrow
δαρεικός Persian coin
διπλός double, overlapping
ἐπειδάν when, after
ἐπήκοος listening
ἐρμηνεύς -ος (m) interpreter
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
ἴσκω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor
κατηγορέω accuse; indicate
λάσκω cry, crack, ring
λήγω cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease
 ~lax
λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
ξυνίημι send together; hear, notice,

understand

πάλαι long ago ~paleo
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συντρέχω rush together
τετραπλός fourfold ~trapezoid
τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,
 punish; aid one who has been attacked
ὕστεραῖος the next; later

«Πῶς οὖν ἄν,» ἔφασαν, «ἡμῖν συλλεγεῖεν;»

«Αὐρίον ὑμᾶς,» ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, «πρὸ ἄξομεν πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα,» ἔφη, «ὅτι ἐπειδὰν ὑμᾶς ἴδωσιν, ἄσμενοι συνδραμοῦνται.» αὕτη μὲν ἡ ἡμέρα οὕτως ἔληξεν.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἄγουσιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοὺς Λάκωνας Σεύθης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης, καὶ συλλέγεται ἡ στρατιά. τὼ δὲ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην ὅτι «Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ πολεμεῖν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ὑμᾶς ἀδικήσαντι· ἦν οὖν ἦτε σὺν ἡμῖν, τόν τε ἐχθρὸν τιμωρήσεσθε καὶ δαρεικὸν ἕκαστος οἴσει τοῦ μηνὸς ὑμῶν, λοχαγὸς δὲ τὸ διπλοῦν, στρατηγὸς δὲ τὸ τετραπλοῦν.» καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἄσμενοί τε ἤκουσαν καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνίσταταιί τις τῶν Ἀρκάδων τοῦ Ξενοφώντος κατηγορήσων. παρῆν δὲ καὶ Σεύθης βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τί πραχθήσεται, καὶ ἐν ἐπηκόῳ εἰστήκει ἔχων ἐρμηνέα· ξυνίει δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς Ἑλληνιστὶ τὰ πλείεστα.

Ἐνθα δὴ λέγει ὁ Ἀρκάς· «Ἄλλ' ἡμεῖς μὲν, ὦ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ πάλαι ἂν ἦμεν παρ' ὑμῖν, εἰ μὴ

«Πῶς οὖν ἄν,» ἔφασαν, «ἡμῖν |collect, assemble ,»

«|tomorrow, ἡῶς,» ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, «πρὶν ἄξομεν πρὸς

αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα,» ἔφη, «ὅτι |when, ἡῶς ἴδωσιν, |be pleased, enjoy
|after

|rush together .» αὕτη μὲν ἡ ἡμέρα οὕτως ἔληξεν.

Τῇ δ' |the next; later, ἔσιν ἐπὶ τὸ |army τοὺς Λάκωνας

Σεύθης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης, καὶ |collect, ἡ στρατιά. τῶ
|assemble

δὲ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην ὅτι «Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ πολεμεῖν

Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ἡῶς ἀδίκησαντι· ἦν οὖν |imitate, ἡ likeν ἡν,
|to, guess

τόν τε ἐχθρὸν |take vengeance, pun-|Persian coin, ἡ αἰστος οἷσι
|ish, aid

τοῦ μηνὸς ἡμῶν, |captain δὲ τὸ διπλοῦν, στρατηγὸς δὲ

τὸ τετραπλοῦν.» καὶ οἱ |soldier, |be pleased, enjoy ἡ ἔσαν
|mercenary

καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνίσταται τις τῶν Ἀρκάδων τοῦ Ξενοφώντος

|accuse; indicate . παρῇν δὲ καὶ Σεύθης βουλόμενος εἰδέναι

τί πραχθήσεται, καὶ ἐν |listening εἰστήκει ἔχων |interpreter

ξυνίει δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς Ἑλληνιστὶ τὰ πλεῖστα.

Ἐνθα δὲ λέγει ὁ Ἀρκάς· «Ἄλλ' ἡμεῖς μὲν, ὦ

Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ πάλαι ἂν ἦμεν παρ' ἡμῖν, εἰ μὴ

them collected?" they asked.

«Early to-morrow," said Heracleides, «we will bring you to them; and I know," he added once more, «as soon as they set eyes on you, they will flock to you with alacrity." Thus the day ended.

The next day Seuthes and Heracleides brought the two Laconian agents to the army, and the troops were collected, and the agents made a statement as follows: «The Lacedaemonians have resolved on war with Tissaphernes, who did you so much wrong. By going with us therefore you will punish your enemy, and each of you will get a daric a month, the officers twice that sum, and the generals quadruple." The soldiers lent willing ears, and up jumped one of the Arcadians at once, to find fault with Xenophon. Seuthes also was hard by, wishing to know what was going to happen. He stood within ear shot, and his interpreter by his side; not but what he could understand most of what was said in Greek himself.

At this point the Arcadian spoke: «For the matter of that, Lacedaemonians, we should have been by your sides long

vocabulary

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue
ἄπορος impassable, difficult
ἀποστερέω despoil, defraud
ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy
ἄχθομαι be burdened with
δεῦρο here, come here!
καταλεύω stone to death
μισθός reward, wages
οἴκαδε homeward ~economics
οὐτάω pierce, wound
περιέλκω drag around
πλουτίζω enrich

πονέω work; be busy ~osteopenia
πόνος toil, suffering ~osteopenia
προθυμία (ῥ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
προσδοκάω expect
στρατεύω make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy
σύνοιδα know about someone; think proper
ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do ~ischemia
χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm
ὠφελέω help, be useful

Ξενοφῶν ἡμᾶς δεῦρο πείσας ἀπήγαγεν, ἔνθα δὴ ἡμεῖς μὲν τὸν δεινὸν χειμῶνα στρατευόμενοι καὶ νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν οὐδὲν πεπαύμεθα· ὁ δὲ τοὺς ἡμετέρους πόρους ἔχει· καὶ Σεύθης ἐκείνον μὲν ἰδίᾳ πεπλούτικεν, ἡμᾶς δὲ ἀποστερεῖ τὸν μισθόν· ὥστε ὁ γε πρῶτος λέγων ἐγὼ μὲν εἰ τοῦτον ἴδοιμι καταλευσθέντα καὶ δόντα δίκην ὧν ἡμᾶς περιεῖλκε, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἂν μοι δοκῶ ἔχειν καὶ οὐδὲν ἐπὶ τοῖς πεπονημένοις ἄχθεσθαι.» μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη ὁμοίως καὶ ἄλλος. ἐκ δὲ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξεν ὧδε.

«Ἀλλὰ πάντα μὲν ἄρα ἄνθρωπον ὄντα προσδοκᾶν δεῖ, ὁπότε γε καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίας ἔχω ἐν ᾧ πλείστην προθυμίαν ἐμαυτῷ γε δοκῶ συνειδέναι περὶ ὑμᾶς παρεσχημένος. ἀπετραπόμην μὲν γε ἤδη οἴκαδε ὠρμημένος, οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία οὔτοι πυνθανόμενος ὑμᾶς εἶ πράττειν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀκούων ἐν ἀπόροις εἶναι ὥς ὠφελήσων εἴ τι δυναίμην. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον, Σεύθου τουτουὶ πολλοὺς ἀγγέλους πρὸς ἐμὲ πέμποντος καὶ πολλὰ ὑπισχνουμένου μοι, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτὸν

Ξενοφῶν ἡμᾶς |here, come here!|lead away, back ἡ δὲ ἡμεῖς μὲν
 τὸν δεινὸν |winter, storm |make an expedition, war, campaign ἡ νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν
 οὐδὲν πεπαύμεθα· ὁ δὲ τοὺς ἡμετέρους |toil, suffering- καὶ
 Σεύθης ἐκείνον μὲν ἰδίᾳ |enrich , ἡμᾶς δὲ |despoil, defraud
 τὸν |reward, wages ὥστε ὁ γε πρῶτος λέγων ἐγὼ μὲν εἰ τοῦτον
 ἴδοιμι |stone to death καὶ δόντα δίκην ὧν ἡμᾶς περιεῖλκε,
 καὶ τὸν |reward, wages ἄν μοι δοκῶ ἔχειν καὶ οὐδὲν ἐπὶ τοῖς
 |work |be burdened with γὰρ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη
 ὁμοίως καὶ ἄλλος. ἐκ δὲ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξεν ὧδε.
 «Ἄλλὰ πάντα μὲν ἄρα ἄνθρωπον ὄντα |expect δεῖ,
 ὅποτε γε καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίας ἔχω ἐν ᾧ
 πλείστην |zeal, alacrity ἐμαυτῷ γε δοκῶ |know about some-
 one; think proper
 ὑμᾶς παρεσχημένος. |divert from μὲν γε ἤδη |homeward
 ὠρμημένος, οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία οὔτοι πυνθανόμενος ὑμᾶς
 εὖ πράττειν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀκούων ἐν |impassable, difficult
 ὥς |help, be useful τι δυναίμην. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον, Σεύθου
 τουτουὶ πολλοὺς ἀγγέλους πρὸς ἐμὲ πέμποντος καὶ πολλὰ
 |promise, agree μοι, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτὸν

ago, if Xenophon had not persuaded us and brought us hither. We have never ceased campaigning, night and day, the dismal winter through, but he reaps the fruit of our toils. Seuthes has enriched him privately, but deprives us of our honest earnings; so that, standing here as I do to address you first, all I can say is, that if I might see the fellow stoned to death as a penalty for all the long dance he has led us, I should feel I had got my pay in full, and no longer grudge the pains we have undergone.” The speaker was followed by another and then another in the same strain; and after that Xenophon made the following speech.

«True is the old adage; there is nothing which mortal man may not expect to see. Here am I being accused by you to-day, just where my conscience tells me that I have displayed the greatest zeal on your behalf. Was I not actually on my road home when I turned back? Not, God knows, because I learned that you were in luck’s way, but because I heard that you were in sore straits, and I wished to help you, if in any way I could. I returned, and Seuthes yonder sent me messenger after messenger, and made me promise upon promise, if only I could persuade you to come to

vocabulary

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
 βέλτιστος best, noblest
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
 διαπλέω sail through
 διάφορος different; difference;
 disagreeing; balance, bill
 εἰκός likely
 ἐνταῦθα there, here
 ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
 ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral

ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
 κωλύω (ῶ) hinder, prevent
 μισέω (ῖ) hate, wish to prevent
 ~misogyny
 μισθός reward, wages
 ὅθεν whence
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
 συστρατεύω join in an expedition
 τριήρης trireme ~row
 ὑμέτερος (ῶ) yours
 ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie
 ~pseudo-
 ψηφίζω count, vote

ἐλθεῖν, τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐπεχείρησα ποιεῖν, ὥς αὐτοὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε. ἦγον δὲ ὅθεν ὠόμην τάχιστ' ἂν ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν διαβῆναι. ταῦτα γὰρ καὶ βέλτιστα ἐνόμιζον ὑμῖν εἶναι καὶ ὑμᾶς ἦδεν βουλομένους.

«Ἐπεὶ δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἐλθὼν σὺν τριήρεσιν ἐκώλυε διαπλεῖν ἡμᾶς, ἐκ τούτου, ὅπερ εἰκὸς δήπου ἦν, συνέλεξα ὑμᾶς, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν. οὐκοῦν ὑμεῖς ἀκούοντες μὲν Ἀριστάρχου ἐπιτάττοντος ὑμῖν εἰς Χερρόνησον πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύθου πείθοντος ἑαυτῷ συστρατεύεσθαι, πάντες μὲν ἐλέγετε σὺν Σεύθῃ ἰέναι, πάντες δ' ἐψηφίσασθε ταῦτα. τί οὖν ἐγὼ ἐνταῦθα ἠδίκησα ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς ἔνθα πᾶσιν ὑμῖν ἐδόκει; ἐπεὶ γε μὴν ψεύδεσθαι ἤρξατο Σεύθης περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, εἰ μὲν ἐπαινῶ αὐτόν, δικαίως ἂν με καὶ αἰτιῶσθε καὶ μισοῦιτε· εἰ δὲ πρόσθεν αὐτῷ πάντων μάλιστα φίλος ὢν νῦν πάντων διαφορώτατός εἰμι, πῶς ἂν ἔτι δικαίως ὑμᾶς αἰρούμενος ἀντὶ Σεύθου ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίαν ἔχομι περὶ ὧν πρὸς τοῦτον διαφέρομαι; ἀλλ' εἴποιτ' ἂν ὅτι ἔξεστι καὶ τὰ ὑμέτερα

ἐλθεῖν, τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ |do, try, attack τοιεῖν, ὥς αὐτοὶ ὑμεῖς
ἐπίστασθε. ἦγον δὲ |whence ὅμην τάχιστ' ἂν ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν
Ἀσίαν |pass over, cross ἤτα γὰρ καὶ |best, ἐνόμιζον ὑμῖν
|noblest
εἶναι καὶ ὑμᾶς ἦδεν βουλομένους.

«Ἐπεὶ δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἐλθὼν σὺν |trireme |hinder,
|prevent
|sail through, ἤ, ἄς, ἐκ τούτου, ὅπερ |likely |perhaps; is |collect,
|it not so? |assemble
ὑμᾶς, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν. |not so?; and so
ὑμεῖς ἀκούοντες μὲν Ἀριστάρχου |enjoin; place ὑμῖν εἰς
|near
Χερρόνησον πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύθου πείθοντος
ἑαυτῷ |join in an expedi- , πάντες μὲν ἐλέγετε σὺν Σεύθῳ
|tion
ιέναι, πάντες δ' |count, vote ταῦτα. τί οὖν ἐγὼ |there, here
ἠδίκησα ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς ἔνθα πᾶσιν ὑμῖν ἐδόκει; ἐπεὶ γε
μὴν |be false, deceive; ἵτο Σεύθης περὶ τοῦ |reward, , εἰ μὲν
|(mid) to lie |wages
|concur αὐτόν, δικαίως ἂν με καὶ |blame καὶ |hate εἰ
δὲ πρόσθεν αὐτῷ πάντων μάλιστα φίλος ὢν νῦν πάντων
|different; dis- εἰμι, πῶς ἂν ἔτι δικαίως ὑμᾶς αἰρούμενος
|agreeing
ἀντὶ Σεύθου ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίαν ἔχοιμι περὶ ὧν πρὸς τοῦτον
διαφέρομαι; ἀλλ' εἴποιτ' ἂν ὅτι ἔξεστι καὶ τὰ |yours

him. Yet, as you yourselves will bear me witness, I was not to be diverted. Instead of setting my hand to do that, I simply led you to a point from which, with least loss of time, I thought you could cross into Asia. This I believed was the best thing for you, and you I knew desired it. x”But when Aristarchus came with his ships of war and hindered our passage across, you will hardly quarrel with me for the step I then took in calling you together that we might advisedly consider our best course. Having heard both sides—first Aristarchus, who ordered you to march to the Chersonese, then Seuthes, who pleaded with you to undertake a campaign with himself—you all proposed to go with Seuthes; and you all gave your votes to that effect. What wrong did I commit in bringing you, whither you were eager to go? If, indeed, since the time when Seuthes began to tell lies and cheat us about the pay, I have supported him in this, you may justly find fault with me and hate me. But if I, who at first was most of all his friend, to-day am more than any one else at variance with him, how can I, who have chosen you and rejected Seuthes, in fairness be blamed by you for the very thing which has been the ground of quarrel between him and me? But you will tell me, perhaps, that I get from

vocabulary

ἀπαιτέω demand to have returned
ἀποτίνω (ι) pay back
βεβαιόω secure, confirm
δῆλος visible, conspicuous
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
δωροδοκέω take bribes
εἴπερ if indeed
ἐνιοι some
ἐξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐπιорκέω swear falsely ~oath
λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company
λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
μάταιος vain, empty
μείων less, smaller
ὄμνυμι (ὀ) swear

οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
πενία poverty ~osteopenia
πράξις -εως (f) result, business
 ~practice
στέρομαι lack, lose
συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear
συνεπόμενυμι (υῦ) swear also
σύνοιδα know about someone; think
 proper
τεχνάζω be cunning
τοίνυν well, then
ὕμετερος (ὕ) yours
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand;
 submit to

ἔχοντα παρὰ Σεύθου τεχνάζειν. οὐκοῦν δῆλον τοῦτό γέ
 ἐστίν, εἴπερ ἐμοὶ ἐτέλει τι Σεύθης, οὐχ οὕτως ἐτέλει δήπου
 ὡς ὦν τε ἐμοὶ δοίη στέροιτο καὶ ἄλλα ὑμῖν ἀποτείσειεν,
 ἀλλ' οἶμαι, εἰ ἐδίδου, ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἂν ἐδίδου ὅπως ἐμοὶ δοὺς
 μείον μὴ ἀποδοίῃ ὑμῖν τὸ πλεόν. εἰ τοίνυν οὕτως ἔχειν
 οἴεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν αὐτίκα μάλα ματαίαν ταύτην τὴν
 πράξιν ἀμφοτέροις ἡμῖν ποιῆσαι, ἐὰν πράττητε αὐτὸν
 τὰ χρήματα. δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι Σεύθης, εἰ ἔχω τι παρ'
 αὐτοῦ, ἀπαιτήσῃ με, καὶ ἀπαιτήσῃ μέντοι δικαίως, ἐὰν μὴ
 βεβαιῶ τὴν πράξιν αὐτῷ ἐφ' ἣ ἐδωροδόκουν. ἀλλὰ πολλοῦ
 μοι δοκῶ δεῖν τὰ ὑμέτερα ἔχειν· ὁμνύω γὰρ ὑμῖν θεοὺς
 ἅπαντας καὶ πάσας μὴδ' ἃ ἐμοὶ ἰδία ὑπέσχετο Σεύθης
 ἔχειν· πάρεστι δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ἀκούων σύννοιδέ μοι εἰ
 ἐπιорκῶ· ἵνα δὲ μᾶλλον θαυμάσητε, συνεπόμενυμι μὴδὲ ἃ
 οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον εἰληφέναι, μὴ τοίνυν μὴδὲ ὅσα
 τῶν λοχαγῶν ἔνιοι. καὶ τί δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν; ὦμην, ἄνδρες,
 ὅσω, μᾶλλον συμφέροίμι τούτῳ τὴν τότε πενίαν, τοσούτῳ
 μᾶλλον αὐτὸν φίλον ποιήσεσθαι, ὅποτε δυνασθείῃ. ἐγὼ δὲ

ἔχοντα παρὰ Σεύθου |be cunning |not so?; |visible, ... οὐ γέ
 |and so |conspicuous
 ἐστίν, |if indeed. οὐκ ἐτέλει τι Σεύθης, οὐχ οὕτως ἐτέλει |perhaps; is
 |it not so?
 ὥς ὦν τε ἐμοὶ δοίη |lack, lose καὶ ἄλλα ὑμῖν |pay back ,
 ἀλλ' οἶμαι, εἰ ἐδίδου, ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἂν ἐδίδου ὅπως ἐμοὶ δοὺς
 |less, , ἢ ἀποδοίη ὑμῖν τὸ πλεόν. εἰ |well, then ὕτως ἔχειν
 |smaller
 οἶεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν αὐτίκα μάλα |vain, ταύτην τήν
 |empty
 |result, ἀμφοτέροις ἡμῖν ποιῆσαι, ἐὰν πράττητε αὐτὸν
 |business
 τὰ χρήματα. |visible, , ὅτι Σεύθης, εἰ ἔχω τι παρ'
 |conspicuous
 αὐτοῦ, ἀπαιτήσῃ με, καὶ ἀπαιτήσῃ μέντοι δικαίως, ἐὰν μὴ
 |secure, τήν |result, αὐτῷ ἐφ' ἧ |take bribes . ἀλλὰ πολλοῦ
 |confirm |business
 μοι δοκῶ δεῖν τὰ |yours ἔχειν· ὁμνύω γὰρ ὑμῖν θεοὺς
 ἅπαντας καὶ πάσας μὴδ' ἃ ἐμοὶ ἰδίᾳ |promise Σεύθης
 ἔχειν· πάρεστι δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ἀκούων σύννοιδέ μοι εἰ
 |swear ἵνα δὲ μᾶλλον θαυμάσητε, |swear also μὴδὲ ἃ
 |falsely
 οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον εἰληφέναι, μὴ |well, then , δὲ ὅσα
 τῶν λοχαγῶν |some καὶ τί δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν; ὥμην, ἄνδρες,
 ὅσω, μᾶλλον συμφέρομι τούτῳ τὴν τότε |poverty , τοσοῦτῳ
 μᾶλλον αὐτὸν φίλον ποιήσεσθαι, ὅποτε δυνασθεῖη. ἐγὼ δὲ

Seuthes what is by right yours, and that I deal subtly by you? But is it not clear that, if Seuthes has paid me anything, he has at any rate not done so with the intention of losing by what he gives me, whilst he is still your debtor? If he gave to me, he gave in order that, by a small gift to me, he might escape a larger payment to yourselves. But if that is what you really think has happened, you can render this whole scheme of ours null and void in an instant by exacting from him the money which is your due. It is clear, Seuthes will demand back from me whatever I have got from him, and he will have all the more right to do so, if I have failed to secure for him what he bargained for when I took his gifts. But indeed, I am far removed from enjoying what is yours, and I swear to you by all the gods and goddesses that I have not taken even what Seuthes promised me in private. He is present himself and listening, and he is aware in his own heart whether I swear falsely. And what will surprise you the more, I can swear besides, that I have not received even what the other generals have received, no, nor yet what some of the officers have received. But how so? why have I managed my affairs no better? I thought, sirs, the more I helped him to bear his poverty at the time, the more I should make him my friend in the day of his power. Whereas, it is just when I see the

vocabulary

ἀγνώμων headstrong, unfeeling
αἰσχροῦς shameful
αἰσχύνῃ (ῶ) shame, dishonor
αἰσχύνω (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar
ἀναμνησκέω (+2 acc) remind someone ~mnemonic
ἀχάριστος ungracious, unpleasant ~eucharist
ἐνέχυρον collateral, thing pawned
ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
καταβλακεύω (ααᾶ) treat carelessly
καταδειλιάω show cowardice; spoil by

cowardice
λίαν very
ναί yea
οὔκουν certainly not
παντάπασι altogether; yes, certainly
ποῖος what kind
πότε when?
πρόφασις -εως (f) pretext; motive; prediction ~fame
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand; submit to
φυλακή guard, prison, watch
 ~phylactery

ἅμα τε αὐτὸν ὁρῶ εὖ πράττοντα καὶ γινώσκω δὴ αὐτοῦ
τὴν γνώμην.

«Εἵποι δὴ τις ἄν, οὐκουν αἰσχύνῃ οὕτω μώρως
ἐξαπατῶμενος; ναὶ μὰ Δία ἡσχυνόμην μέντ᾽ ἄν, εἰ ὑπὸ
πολεμίου γε ὄντος ἐξηπατήθην· φίλῳ δὲ ὄντι ἐξαπατᾶν
αἰσχίον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ἢ ἐξαπατᾶσθαι. ἐπεὶ εἴ γε πρὸς
φίλους ἐστὶ φυλακή, πᾶσαν οἶδα ἡμᾶς φυλαξαμένους ὥς
μὴ παρασχεῖν τούτῳ πρόφασιν δικαίαν μὴ ἀποδιδόναι
ἡμῖν ἃ ὑπέσχετο· οὔτε γὰρ ἡδίκησαμεν τοῦτον οὐδὲν οὔτε
κατεβλακεύσαμεν τὰ τούτου οὐδὲ μὴν κατεδειλιάσαμεν
οὐδὲν ἐφ' ὃ τι ἡμᾶς οὗτος παρεκάλεσεν.

«Ἀλλά, φαίητε ἄν, ἔδει τὰ ἐνέχυρα τότε λαβεῖν, ὥς
μηδ' εἰ ἐβούλετο ἐδύνατο ἐξαπατᾶν. πρὸς ταῦτα δὴ
ἀκούσατε ἃ ἐγὼ οὐκ ἄν ποτε εἶπον τούτου ἐναντίον, εἰ μὴ
μοι παντάπασιν ἀγνώμονες ἐδοκεῖτε εἶναι ἢ λίαν εἰς ἐμέ
ἀχάριστοι. ἀναμνήσθητε γὰρ ἐν ποίοις τισὶ πράγμασιν
ὄντες ἐτυχάνετε, ἐξ ὧν ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ ἀνήγαγον πρὸς Σεύθην.
οὐκ εἰς μὲν Πέρηνθον προσῆτε πόλιν, Ἀρίσταρχος δ' ὑμᾶς

ἄμα τε αὐτὸν ὁρῶ εὖ πράττοντα καὶ γινώσκω δὴ αὐτοῦ
τὴν γνώμην.

«Εἴποι δὴ τις ἄν, |certainly not |χύνῃ οὕτω μώρως
|trick, cheat , |yea μὰ Δία |spoil, μέντ᾽ ἄν, εἰ ὑπὸ
|disgrace
πολεμίου γε ὄντος |trick, cheat φίλῳ δὲ ὄντι |trick, cheat
|shameful ,μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ἢ |trick, cheat ἐπεὶ εἴ γε πρὸς
φίλους ἐστὶ |guard, , πᾶσαν οἶδα ἡμᾶς φυλαξαμένους ὥς
|prison,
μὴ παρασχεῖν |watch τούτῳ |pretext; motive; αἰάν μὴ ἀποδιδόναι
|prediction
ἡμῖν ἂ |promise οὔτε γὰρ ἡδικήσαμεν τοῦτον οὐδὲν οὔτε
|treat carelessly τὰ τούτου οὐδὲ μὴν |show cowardice;
|spoil by cowardice
οὐδὲν ἐφ' ὅ τι ἡμᾶς οὗτος παρεκάλεσεν.

«Ἀλλά, φαίητε ἄν, ἔδει τὰ |collateral, . . . εἰ λαβεῖν, ὥς
|thing pawned
μῆδ' εἰ ἐβούλετο ἐδύνατο |trick, cheat . πρὸς ταῦτα δὴ
ἀκούσατε ἂ ἐγὼ οὐκ ἄν ποτε εἶπον τούτου ἐναντίον, εἰ μὴ
μοι |altogether; yes, |headstrong, ἐδοκεῖτε εἶναι ἢ |very εἰς ἐμέ
|certainly |unfeeling
|ungracious, . ἀναμνήσθητε γὰρ ἐν |what kind . ἰ πράγμασιν
|unpleasant
ὄντες ἐτυγχάνετε, ἐξ ὧν ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ ἀνήγαγον πρὸς Σεύθην.
οὐκ εἰς μὲν Πέρινθον προσῆτε πόλιν, Ἀρίσταρχος δ' ὑμᾶς

star of his good fortune rising, that I have come to divine the secret of his character.

«Some one may say, are you not ashamed to be so taken in like a fool? Yes, I should be ashamed, if it had been an open enemy who had so deceived me. But, to my mind, when friend cheats friend, a deeper stain attaches to the perpetrator than to the victim of deceit. Whatever precaution a man may take against his friend, that we took in full. We certainly gave him no pretext for refusing to pay us what he promised. We were perfectly upright in our dealings with him. We did not dawdle over his affairs, nor did we shrink from any work to which he challenged us.

”But you will say, I ought to have taken security of him at the time, so that had he fostered the wish, he might have lacked the ability to deceive. To meet that retort, I must beg you to listen to certain things, which I should never have said in his presence, except for your utter want of feeling towards me, or your extraordinary ingratitude. Try and recall the posture of your affairs, when I extricated you

vocabulary

ἄθροος grouped
ἀναγκάζω force, compel
ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
ἀποκλείω shut out; (+acc) close
ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
διαπλέω sail through
εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion
εἰσίημι (mid) speed to ~jet
ἐφορμέω be anchored, blockade
ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
κοινωνέω associate with
κωλύω (ō) hinder, prevent
κώμη village
μισθός reward, wages
όνέω help, please, be available
ὄνομαι blame ~name
ὀπλιτικός (ti) of a hoplite

πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
πελταστικός skilled with small shield
 ~pelt
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
προσaiτέω demand as well ~etiology
προσδέω bind also; need also
προσλαμβάνω add, borrow, take hold, help
πύλη gate ~Thermopylae
σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
σπάνιος rare, scanty
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up station ~strategy
συνίστημι unite; confront in battle ~station
τριήρης trireme ~row
ὑπαίθριος in open air
χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm
ᾠέομαι buy
ᾠνιος for sale

ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος οὐκ εἶα εἰσιέναι ἀποκλείσας τὰς πύλας;
 ὑπαίθριοι δ' ἔξω ἐστρατοπεδεύετε, μέσος δὲ χειμῶν ἦν,
 ἀγορᾷ δὲ ἐχρήσθε σπάνια μὲν ὀρώντες τὰ ὄνια, σπάνια
 δ' ἔχοντες ὅτων ὠνήσεσθε, ἀνάγκη δὲ ἦν μένειν ἐπὶ
 Θράκης· τριήρεις γὰρ ἐφορμοῦσαι ἐκώλυνον διαπλεῖν· εἰ δὲ
 μένοι τις, ἐν πολεμίᾳ εἶναι, ἔνθα πολλοὶ μὲν ἵππεῖς ἦσαν
 ἐναντίοι, πολλοὶ δὲ πελτασταί, ἡμῖν δὲ ὀπλιτικὸν μὲν ἦν
 ᾧ ἀθρόοι μὲν ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας ἴσως ἂν ἐδυνάμεθα
 σῖτον λαμβάνειν οὐδέν τι ἄφθονον, ὅτω δὲ διώκοντες ἂν
 ἢ ἀνδράποδα ἢ πρόβατα κατελαμβάνομεν οὐκ ἦν ἡμῖν·
 οὔτε γὰρ ἵππικὸν οὔτε πελταστικὸν ἔτι ἐγὼ συνεστηκὸς
 κατέλαβον παρ' ὑμῖν.

«Εἰ οὖν ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγκῃ ὄντων ὑμῶν μηδ' ὄντιναοῦν
 μισθὸν προσαιτήσας Σεύθην σύμμαχον ὑμῖν προσέλαβον,
 ἔχοντα καὶ ἵππέας καὶ πελταστὰς ὧν ὑμεῖς προσεδεῖσθε,
 ἢ κακῶς ἂν ἐδόκουν ὑμῖν βεβουλεῦσθαι πρὸ ὑμῶν; τούτων
 γὰρ δήπου κοινωνήσαντες καὶ σῖτον ἀφθονώτερον ἐν ταῖς
 κώμαις ἠύρίσκετε διὰ τὸ ἀναγκάζεσθαι τοὺς Θρᾷκας κατὰ

ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος οὐκ εἶα εἰσιέναι |shut out; τὰς |gate ,
 |(+acc) close
 |in open air δ' ἔξω |encamp or take up, μέσος δὲ |winter, ἦν,
 |station |storm
 ἀγορᾷ δὲ ἐχρήσθε |rare, μὲν ὀρώντες τὰ |for sale|rare,
 |scanty |scanty
 δ' ἔχοντες ὅτων ὠνήσεσθε, ἀνάγκη δὲ ἦν μένειν ἐπὶ
 Θράκης· τριήρεις γὰρ |be anchored, ἐκάλουν |sail through ' δὲ
 |blockade
 μένοι τις, ἐν πολεμίᾳ εἶναι, ἔνθα πολλοὶ μὲν ἱππεῖς ἦσαν
 ἐναντίοι, πολλοὶ δὲ |light troops , ἡμῖν δὲ |of a hoplite , μὲν ἦν
 ᾧ |grouped , μὲν ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς |village ἴσως ἂν ἐδυνάμεθα
 σίτον λαμβάνειν οὐδέν τι |ungrudging, ᾧ δὲ διώκοντες ἂν
 |plentiful
 ἧ |slave ἧ |cattle, |seize, understand, catch, ἦν ἡμῖν·
 |flocks, |overtake; (mp) happen
 οὔτε γὰρ |of horses οὔτε |skilled with ἔτι ἐγὼ συνεστηκὸς
 |small shield
 |seize, understand, catch,
 |overtake; (mp) happen
 «Εἰ οὖν ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγκῃ ὄντων ὑμῶν μηδ' ὄντιναοῦν
 |reward, |demand as well Σεύθην σύμμαχον ὑμῖν |add, borrow,
 |wages |take hold, help
 ἔχοντα καὶ ἱππέας καὶ |light troops ὧν ὑμεῖς |bind also; need also
 ἧ κακῶς ἂν ἐδόκουν ὑμῖν βεβουλευθῆναι πρὸς ὑμῶν; τούτων
 γὰρ |per- |associate with καὶ σίτον |ungrudging, ἐν ταῖς
 |haps; is |plentiful
 |it not
 |village? |ἠγρίσκετε διὰ τὸ ἀναγκάζεσθαι τοὺς Θρᾷκας κατὰ

and brought you to Seuthes. Do you not recollect how at Perinthus Aristarchus shut the gates in your faces each time you offered to approach the town, and how you were driven to camp outside under the canopy of heaven? It was midwinter; you were thrown upon the resources of a market wherein few were the articles offered for sale, and scanty the wherewithal to purchase them. Yet stay in Thrace you must, for there were ships of war riding at anchor in the bay, ready to hinder your passage across; and what did that stay imply? It meant being in a hostile country, confronted by countless cavalry, legions of light infantry. And what had we? A heavy infantry force certainly, with which we could have dashed at villages in a body possibly, and seized a modicum of food at most; but as to pursuing the enemy with such a force as ours, or capturing men or cattle, the thing was out of the question; for when I rejoined you your original cavalry and light infantry divisions had disappeared. In such sore straits you lay!

«Supposing that, without making any demands for pay whatever, I had merely won for you the alliance of Seuthes—whose cavalry and light infantry were just what you needed—would you not have thought that I had planned very well for you? I presume, it was through your partnership with him and his that you were able to find such complete stores of corn in the villages, when the Thracians were driven to take to their heels in such hot haste, and you had so large a share

vocabulary

ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
ἄνειμι go up, inland, to, back ~ion
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἀποβάλλω throw away, lose
ἀποσκεδάννυμι (ῥ) dismiss; scatter
ἀσφάλεια safeguard
ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful
βάρβαρος non-Greek
δαπανάω spend, consume, waste
διαχειμάζω pass the winter
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
εὐκλεία good repute ~Euclid
ἑφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
ἐφοράω look upon ~panorama
θαρσαλέος bold, over-bold
ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
κωλύω (ῥ) hinder, prevent
μετέχω partake of

μηδαμῇ nowhere
μισθός reward, wages
οὐδαμῇ nowhere
πάθημα -τος (n, 3) suffering, condition
πελταστικός skilled with small shield
 ~pelt
περισσός prodigious, superfluous
πορίζω bring about, provide
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
προσγίγνομαι become ally to
προσλαμβάνω add, borrow, take hold,
 help
προστελέω pay also
σπουδή zeal; (dat) with difficulty,
 hastily ~repudiate
συμπαρέχω assist in causing
σχέτιλος tough, sound, stubborn, cruel
 ~ischemia

σπουδὴν μάλλον φεύγειν, καὶ προβάτων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων
 μάλλον μετέσχετε. καὶ πολέμιον οὐκέτι οὐδένα ἐωρῶμεν
 ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἵππικὸν ἡμῖν προσεγένετο· τέως δὲ θαρραλέως
 ἡμῖν ἐφείποντο οἱ πολέμοι καὶ ἵππικῳ καὶ πελταστικῳ
 κωλύοντες μηδαμῇ κατ' ὀλίγους ἀποσκεδαννυμένους τὰ
 ἐπιτήδεια ἀφθονώτερα ἡμᾶς πορίζεσθαι. εἰ δὲ δὴ ὁ
 συμπαρέχων ὑμῖν ταύτην τὴν ἀσφάλειαν μὴ πάνυ πολὺν
 μισθὸν προσετέλει τῆς ἀσφαλείας, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ σχέτλιον
 πάθημα καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐδαμῇ οἴεσθε χρήναι ζῶντα ἐμὲ
 ἀνεῖναι;

«Νῦν δὲ δὴ πῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; οὐ διαχειμάσαντες μὲν ἐν
 ἀφθόνοις τοῖς ἐπιτηδείοις, περιττὸν δ' ἔχοντες τοῦτο εἴ τι
 ἐλάβετε παρὰ Σεύθου; τὰ γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων ἔδαπανᾶτε.
 καὶ ταῦτα πράττοντες οὔτε ἄνδρας ἐπείδετε ὑμῶν αὐτῶν
 ἀποθανόντας οὔτε ζῶντας ἀπεβάλετε. εἰ δέ τι καλὸν
 πρὸς τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ βαρβάρους ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν, οὐ καὶ
 ἐκείνο σὼν ἔχετε καὶ πρὸς ἐκείνοις νῦν ἄλλην εὐκλειαν
 προσειλήφατε καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ Θρᾷκας ἐφ' οὓς

|zeal; (dat) with *ὧν* |φεύγειν, καὶ |cattle, flocks, καὶ |slave
|difficulty, hastily |herds

μᾶλλον |partake of . καὶ πολέμιον οὐκέτι οὐδένα ἑωρώμεν

ἐπειδὴ τὸ |of horses *ἡμῖν* |become ally to *τέως δὲ* |bold

ἡμῖν |ἐφ' ἐπ' ὧν?: drive, meet, follow; ὁ |of horses καὶ |skilled with
|ἐφ' ἐπ' ὧν?: drive, meet, follow |small shield

κωλύοντες |nowhere κατ' ὀλίγους |dismiss; scatter *τὰ*

|fit, suitable |ungrudging, *ἡμᾶς* |bring about, εἰ δὲ δὴ ὁ
|plentiful |provide

συμπαρέχων ὑμῖν ταύτην τὴν |safeguard *μὴ* πάνυ πολὺν

|reward, |pay also *τῆς* |safeguard , τοῦτο δὴ τὸ |tough, sound, stub-
|wages |born, cruel

|suffering, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο |nowhere οἴεσθε χρῆναι ζῶντα ἐμὲ
|condition

ἀνείναι;

«Νῦν δὲ δὴ πῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; οὐ |pass the winter *μὲν* ἐν

|ungrudging, *ἡμῖν* |fit, suitable , περιττὸν δ' ἔχοντες τοῦτο εἴ τι
|plentiful

ἐλάβετε παρὰ Σεύθου; τὰ γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων |spend, con-
|sume, waste

καὶ ταῦτα πράττοντες οὔτε ἄνδρας |look upon ἡμῶν αὐτῶν

ἀποθανόντας οὔτε ζῶντας |throw away, lose... δέ τι καλὸν

πρὸς τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ βαρβάρους ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν, οὐ καὶ

ἐκεῖνο σὼν ἔχετε καὶ πρὸς ἐκείνοις νῦν ἄλλην |good repute

|add, borrow, καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ Θρᾶκας ἐφ' οὓς
|take hold, help

of captured slaves and cattle. Why! from the day on which his cavalry force was attached to us, we never set eyes on a single foeman in the field, though up to that date the enemy with his cavalry and his light infantry used undauntedly to hang on our heels, and effectually prevented us from scattering in small bodies and reaping a rich harvest of provisions. But if he who partly gave you this security has failed to pay in full the wages due to you therefrom, is not that a terrible misfortune? So monstrous indeed that you think I ought not to go forth alive.

”But let me ask you, in what condition do you turn your backs on this land to-day? Have you not wintered here in the lap of plenty? Whatever you have got from Seuthes has been surplus gain. Your enemies have had to meet the bill of your expenses, whilst you led a merry round of existence, in which you have not once set eyes on the dead body of a comrade or lost one living man. Again, if you have achieved any, (or rather many) noble deeds against the Asiatic barbarian, you have them safe. And in addition to these to-day you have won for yourselves a second glory. You undertook a campaign against the European Thracians, and have mastered them. What I say then is, that

vocabulary

ἀπεχθάνομαι become hated ~external
ἀποδιδράσκω escape
ἀποπορεύομαι depart
ἀποστροφή turning back, away
διαβάλλω throw across; slander
 ~ballistic
Ἕλληγν Greek
ἐλπίζω (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act)
 cause to do so (rare) ~voluptuary
ἔπαινος (noun) praise
εὐκλεία good repute ~Euclid

κατατίθηναι put down, deposit, lay
 aside ~thesis
κρείσσων more powerful; better
οἴκαδε homeward ~economics
πραγματεύομαι work at
σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptic
στρατεύω make an expedition, war,
 campaign ~strategy
ὁμέτερος (ῶ) yours
χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage

ἐστρατεύσασθε κρατήσαντες; ἐγὼ μὲν ὑμᾶς φημι δικαίως
 ἂν ὦν ἐμοὶ χαλεπαίνετε τούτων τοῖς θεοῖς χάριν εἰδέναι
 ὥς ἀγαθῶν.

«Καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ὑμέτερα τοιαῦτα. ἄγετε δὴ πρὸς
 θεῶν καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ σκέψασθε ὡς ἔχει. ἐγὼ γὰρ ὅτε
 μὲν πρότερον ἀπῆα οἴκαδε, ἔχων μὲν ἔπαινον πολλὸν
 πρὸς ὑμῶν ἀπεπορευόμεν, ἔχων δὲ δι' ὑμᾶς καὶ ὑπὸ
 τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εὐκλειαν. ἐπιστευόμεν δὲ ὑπὸ
 Λακεδαιμονίων· οὐ γὰρ ἂν με ἔπεμπον πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς.
 νῦν δὲ ἀπέρχομαι πρὸς μὲν Λακεδαιμονίους ὑφ' ὑμῶν
 διαβεβλημένος, Σεύθῃ δὲ ἀπηχθημένος ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν, ὃν
 ἤλπιζον εὖ ποιήσας μεθ' ὑμῶν ἀποστροφὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ καλὴν
 καὶ παισίν, εἰ γένοιτο, καταθήσεσθαι. ὑμεῖς δ', ὑπὲρ ὧν
 ἐγὼ ἀπήχθημαί τε πλείστα καὶ ταῦτα πολὺ κρείττοσιν
 ἐμαντοῦ, πραγματευόμενός τε οὐδὲ νῦν πω πέπαυμαι ὅ
 τι δύναμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν, τοιαύτην ἔχετε γνώμην περὶ
 ἐμοῦ. ἀλλ' ἔχετε μὲν με οὔτε φεύγοντα λαβόντες οὔτε
 ἀποδιδράσκοντα· ἦν δὲ ποιήσητε ἃ λέγετε,

|make an expedition, *ατήσαντες*; *ἐγὼ μὲν ὑμᾶς φημι δικαίως*
war, campaign

ἂν ὦν ἐμοὶ |be violent, rage . *οὕτων τοῖς θεοῖς χάριν εἰδέναι*
ὥς ἀγαθῶν.

«Καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ |yours *τοιαῦτα.* ἄγετε δὴ πρὸς
θεῶν καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ |look, look at, watch_Λ *ἡ.* *ἐγὼ γὰρ ὅτε*
μὲν πρότερον ἀπῆα |homeward_Λ *ῶν μὲν* |(noun) praise *ἔν*
πρὸς ὑμῶν |depart , *ἔχων δὲ δι' ὑμᾶς καὶ ὑπὸ*
τῶν ἄλλων |Greek |good repute *ἐπιστευόμενῃ δὲ ὑπὸ*
Λακεδαιμονίων· οὐ γὰρ ἂν με ἔπεμπον πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς.

νῦν δὲ ἀπέρχομαι πρὸς μὲν Λακεδαιμονίους ὑφ' ὑμῶν

|throw across; , *Σεύθη δὲ* |become hated *ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν, ὃν*
slander

|(mid, pf) hope, expect; -(act) cause|turning back, away. *ἡμοὶ καλὴν*
to do so (rare)

καὶ παισὶν, εἰ γένοιτο, |put down . *ὑμεῖς δ', ὑπὲρ ὧν*

ἐγὼ |become *τε πλείστα καὶ ταῦτα πολὺ κρείττοσιν*
hated

ἐμαντοῦ, |work at *τε οὐδὲ νῦν πω πέπαυμαι ὅ*

τι δύναμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν, τοιαύτην ἔχετε γνώμην περὶ
ἐμοῦ. ἀλλ' ἔχετε μέν με οὔτε φεύγοντα λαβόντες οὔτε

|escape *ἣν δὲ ποιήσητε ἃ λέγετε,*

these very matters which you make a ground of quarrel against myself, are rather blessings for which you ought to show gratitude to heaven.

«Thus far I have confined myself to your side of the matter. Bear with me, I beg you, while we examine mine. When I first essayed to part with you and journey homewards, I was doubly blest. From your lips I had won some praise, and, thanks to you, I had obtained glory from the rest of Hellas. I was trusted by the Lacedaemonians; else would they not have sent me back to you. Whereas to-day I turn to go, calumniated before the Lacedaemonians by yourselves, detested in your behalf by Seuthes, whom I meant so to benefit, by help of you, that I should find in him a refuge for myself and for my children, if children I might have, in after time. And you the while, for whose sake I have incurred so much hate, the hate of people far superior to me in strength, you, for whom I have not yet ceased to devise all the good I can, entertain such sentiments about me. Why? I am no renegade or runaway slave, you have got hold of. If you carry out what you say, be sure you will have

*vocabulary***ἀγνώμων** headstrong, unfeeling**ἀγρυπνέω** lie awake**ἀνεπίληπτος** unimpeachable, not attacked**ἄπορος** impassable, difficult**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**διατείνω** extend; (mp) try hard**Ἕλλην** Greek**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor**εὐπορία** ease, abundance**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**ἔλεως** propitious, gracious**κατακαίνω** kill**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that

κράτιστος best**μισθός** reward, wages**μνημονικός** mnemonic, reminding**ὅπη** wherever, however**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**τρόπαιον** victory monument**ὕπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do
~ischemia

ἵστε ὅτι ἄνδρα κατακεκονότες ἔσεσθε πολλὰ μὲν δὴ πρὸ
 ὑμῶν ἀγρυπνήσαντα, πολλὰ δὲ σὺν ὑμῖν πονήσαντα
 καὶ κινδυνεύσαντα καὶ ἐν τῷ μέρει καὶ παρὰ τὸ μέρος,
 θεῶν δ' ἰλεων ὄντων καὶ τρόπαια βαρβάρων πολλὰ δὴ
 σὺν ὑμῖν στησάμενον, ὅπως δέ γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 πολέμιοι γένησθε, πᾶν ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην πρὸς ὑμᾶς
 διατεινόμενον. καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ὑμῖν ἔξεστιν ἀνεπιλήπτως
 πορεύεσθαι ὅπῃ ἂν ἔλησθε καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
 θάλατταν. ὑμεῖς δέ, ὅτε πολλὴ ὑμῖν εὐπορία φαίνεται,
 καὶ πλείτε ἔνθα δὴ ἐπεθυμεῖτε πάλαι, δέονταί τε ὑμῶν
 οἱ μέγιστον δυνάμενοι, μισθὸς δὲ φαίνεται, ἡγεμόνες δὲ
 ἤκουσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι οἱ κράτιστοι νομιζόμενοι εἶναι, νῦν
 δὴ καιρὸς ὑμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι ὥς τάχιστα ἐμὲ κατακαίνειν;
 οὐ μὲν γὰρ ὅτε γε ἐν τοῖς ἀπόροις ἦμεν, ὦ πάντων
 μνημονικώτατοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ πατέρα ἐμὲ ἐκαλεῖτε καὶ
 αἰεὶ ὥς εὐεργέτου μεμνήσεσθαι ὑπισχνείσθε. οὐ μέντοι
 ἀγνώμονες οὐδὲ οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ νῦν ἤκοντες ἐφ' ὑμᾶς· ὥστε,
 ὥς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐδὲ τούτοις δοκεῖτε βελτίονες εἶναι

ἴστε ὅτι ἄνδρα |kill ἔσεσθε πολλὰ μὲν δὴ πρό

ύμῶν |lie awake , πολλὰ δὲ σὺν ὑμῖν |work

καὶ |encounter danger; -(+inf) τῷ μέρει καὶ παρὰ τὸ μέρος,
|there is a danger that

θεῶν δ' |propitious, ὧν καὶ |victory |non-Greek πολλὰ δὴ
|gracious |monument

σὺν ὑμῖν στησάμενον, ὅπως δέ γε μηδενὶ τῶν |Greek

πολέμοι γενήσθε, πᾶν ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην πρὸς ὑμᾶς

|extend; (mp) try. καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ὑμῖν ἔξεστιν |unimpeachable,
|hard |not attacked

πορεύεσθαι |wherever, ἔλθθε καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
|however

θάλατταν. ὑμεῖς δέ, ὅτε πολλὴ ὑμῖν |ease, abundance...αι,

καὶ πλεῖτε ἔνθα δὴ |wish, covet πάλαι, δέονταί τε ὑμῶν

οἱ μέγιστον δυνάμενοι, |reward, δὲ φαίνεται, |leader δὲ
|wages

ἤκουσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι οἱ |best νομιζόμενοι εἶναι, νῦν

δὴ καιρὸς ὑμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι ὡς τάχιστα ἐμὲ |kill ,

οὐ μὴν ὅτε γε ἐν τοῖς |impassable, ἵμεν, ὧ πάντων
|difficult

|mnemonic, , ἀλλὰ καὶ πατέρα ἐμὲ ἐκαλεῖτε καὶ
|reminding

αἰεὶ ὡς |benefactor μεμνήσεσθαι |promise, οὐ μέντοι
|agree

|headstrong, οὐδὲ οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ νῦν ἤκοντες ἐφ' ὑμᾶς· ὥστε,
|unfeeling

ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐδὲ τούτοις δοκεῖτε βελτίονες εἶναι

done to death a man who has passed many a vigil in watching over you; who has shared with you many a toil and run many a risk in turn and out of turn; who, thanks to the gracious gods! has by your side set up full many a trophy over the barbarian; who, lastly, has strained every nerve in his body to protect you against yourselves. And so it is, that to-day you can move freely, where you choose, by sea or by land, and no one can say you nay; and you, on whom this large liberty dawns, who are sailing to a long desired goal, who are sought after by the greatest of military powers, who have pay in prospect, and for leaders these Lacedaemonians, our acknowledged chiefs: now is the appointed time, you think, to put me to a speedy death. But in the days of our difficulties it was very different, O ye men of marvellous memory! No! in those days you called me 'father!' and you promised you would bear me ever in mind, 'your benefactor.' Not so, however, not so ungracious are those who have come to you to-day; nor, if I mistake not, have you bettered yourselves in their eyes by your treatment

*vocabulary***ᾄγαν** very much**ἄέκων** unwilling**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme**ἀναπράσσω** exact, demand**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**έκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**ένετός** inserted; suborned**ένταῦθα** there, here**έρωτάω** ask about something**μαρτυρέω** testify, bear witness**μέμφομαι** blame; reject**μισθός** reward, wages**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with**στρατηγέω** be a general**φιλοστρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) friendly to soldiers**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage**χείρων** worse, more base, inferior, weaker

τοιούτοι ὄντες περὶ ἐμέ.» ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Χαρμῖνος δὲ ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· «Οὐ τὼ σιώ, ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ μέντοι οὐ δικαίως δοκεῖτε τῷ ἀνδρὶ τούτῳ χαλεπαίνειν· ἔχω γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς αὐτῷ μαρτυρῆσαι. Σεύθης γὰρ ἐρωτῶντος ἐμοῦ καὶ Πολυνίκου περὶ Ξενοφώντος τίς ἀνὴρ εἴη ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν εἶχε μέμψασθαι, ἄγαν δὲ φιλοστρατιώτην ἔφη αὐτὸν εἶναι· διὸ καὶ χεῖρον αὐτῷ εἶναι πρὸς ἡμῶν τε τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ πρὸς αὐτοῦ.»

Ἄναστὰς ἐπὶ τούτῳ Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιάτης Ἄρκας εἶπεν· «Καὶ δοκεῖ γέ μοι, ἄνδρες Λακεδαιμόνιοι, τοῦτο ὑμᾶς πρῶτον ἡμῶν στρατηγῆσαι, παρὰ Σεύθου ἡμῖν τὸν μισθὸν ἀναπράξαι ἢ ἐκόντος ἢ ἄκοντος, καὶ μὴ πρότερον ἡμᾶς ἀπαγαγεῖν.»

Πολυκράτης δὲ Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν ἐνετὸς ὑπὸ Ξενοφώντος· «Ὅρῳ γε μὴν,» ἔφη, «ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ Ἡρακλείδην ἐνταῦθα παρόντα, ὃς παραλαβὼν τὰ χρήματα ἃ ἡμεῖς

τοιούτοι ὄντες περὶ ἐμέ.» ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Χαρμῖνος δὲ ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· «Οὐ
τῷ σιώ, ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ μέντοι οὐ δικαίως δοκεῖτε τῷ
ἀνδρὶ τούτῳ |be violent, rage ἔχω γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς αὐτῷ
|testify, bear Σεύθης γὰρ |ask ἐμοῦ καὶ Πολυνίκου
|witness περὶ Ξενοφώντος τίς ἀνὴρ εἴη ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν εἶχε
|blame; reject, |very ⚭ |friendly to soldiers ἔφη αὐτὸν εἶναι· διὸ
|much καὶ |worse, more base ἢ πρὸς ἡμῶν τε τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων
καὶ πρὸς αὐτοῦ.»

Ἀναστὰς ἐπὶ τούτῳ Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιάτης Ἄρκας εἶπεν·
«Καὶ δοκεῖ γέ μοι, ἄνδρες Λακεδαιμόνιοι, τοῦτο ὑμᾶς
πρῶτον ἡμῶν |be a general , παρὰ Σεύθου ἡμῖν τὸν |reward,
|wages
|exact, ἢ |willingly ἢ ἄκοντος, καὶ μὴ πρότερον ἡμᾶς
|demand
|lead away, back

Πολυκράτης δὲ Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν |inserted; ἡ τοῦ Ξενοφώντος·
|suborned
«Ὅρῳ γε μὴν,» ἔφη, «ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ Ἡρακλείδην |there, here
παρόντα, ὃς |receive, undertake, ρήματα ἃ ἡμεῖς
|associate with

of me.”

With these words he paused, and Charminus the Lacedaemonian got up and said: «Nay, by the Twins, you are wrong, surely, in your anger against this man; I myself can bear testimony in his favour. When Polynicus and I asked Seuthes, what sort of a man he was? Seuthes answered: — he had but one fault to find with him, that he was too much the soldiers’ friend, which also was the cause why things went wrong with him, whether as regards us Lacedaemonians or himself, Seuthes.”

Upon that Eurylochus of Lusian, an Arcadian, got up and said (addressing the two Lacedaemonians), «Yes, sirs; and what strikes me is that you cannot begin your generalship of us better than by exacting from Seuthes our pay. Whether he like it or no, let him pay in full; and do not take us away before.”

Polycrates the Athenian, who was put forward by Xenophon, said: «If my eyes do not deceive me, sirs, there stands Heracleides, yonder, the man who received the property won by our toil, who took and sold it, and never gave back either to Seuthes or to us the proceeds

vocabulary

ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away
ἀπόρρητος forbidden, secret
διαβάλλω throw across; slander
~ballistic
ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out
~plectrum
Ἕλληγν Greek
ἐντεῦθεν thence
ἐπικράτεια domain, realm; control
ἐπιστέλλω send to, order
ἐρμηνεύς -ος (m) interpreter
θύω (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
ἱερεῖον animal victim ~hieroglyph
καταμένω stay; not change
κλέπτω steal

οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy
infantryman ~hoplite
πάομαι acquire ~pathos
πονέω work; be busy ~osteopenia
πότερος which, whichever of two
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
come in
σαφής clear, understandable
σωφρονέω be sane, moderate
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand;
submit to
ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do
~ischemia
ὑποχείριος under one's hand ~chiral
χίλιοι (ī) thousand ~kilo-
χωρίον area; downwards

ἐποιήσαμεν, ταῦτα ἀποδόμενος οὔτε Σεύθῃ ἀπέδωκεν οὔτε ἡμῖν τὰ γιννόμενα, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κλέψας πέπαται. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῶμεν, ἐξόμεθα αὐτοῦ· οὐ γὰρ δὴ οὗτός γε,» ἔφη, «Θρᾷξ ἐστίν, ἀλλ' Ἑλλήν ὢν Ἑλληνας ἀδικεῖ.»

Ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Ἡρακλείδης μάλα ἐξεπλάγη· καὶ προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ λέγει· «Ἡμεῖς ἦν σωφρονῶμεν, ἄπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκ τῆς τούτων ἐπικρατείας.» καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ὥχοντο ἀπελαύνοντες εἰς τὸ ἐαυτῶν στρατόπεδον. καὶ ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης πέμπει Ἀβροζέλμην τὸν ἐαυτοῦ ἐρμηνέα πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα καὶ κελεύει αὐτὸν καταμεῖναι παρ' ἐαυτῷ ἔχοντα χιλίους ὀπλίτας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖται αὐτῷ ἀποδώσειν τά τε χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἃ ὑπέσχετο. καὶ ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ ποιησάμενος λέγει ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πολυνίκου ὡς εἰ ὑποχείριος ἔσται Λακεδαιμονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποθανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. ἐπέστελλον δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὡς διαβεβλημένος εἶη καὶ φυλάττεσθαι δέοι. ὁ δὲ ἀκούων ταῦτα δύο ἱερεῖα λαβὼν ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ πότερὰ

|work , ταῦτα ἀποδόμενος οὔτε Σεύθη ἀπέδωκεν
οὔτε ἡμῖν τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς |steal |acquire ἦν
οὔν |be sane, moderate ᾧόμεθα αὐτοῦ· οὐ γὰρ δὴ οὗτός γε,»
ἔφη, «Θράξ ἐστιν, ἀλλ' Ἑλλήν ὢν |Greek ἀδικεῖ.»

Ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Ἡρακλείδης μάλα |panic, be καὶ
|knocked out
|come forward, sūr-Σεύθη λέγει· «Ἡμεῖς ἦν |be sane, moderate
render, come in
ἄπιμεν |thence ἐκ τῆς τούτων |domain, ...» καὶ
|realm; con-
ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους |come, go |expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans)
|ride away
τὸ ἐαυτῶν στρατόπεδον. καὶ |thence Σεύθης πέμπει
Ἀβροζέλμην τὸν ἐαυτοῦ |interpreter πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα καὶ
κελεύει αὐτὸν |stay; not change ρ' ἐαυτῷ ἔχοντα χιλίους

|hoplite, heavy|promise, αὐτῷ ἀποδώσειν τά τε |area; downwards
|infantryman |agree
ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ᾧ |promise καὶ ἐν |forbidden,
|secret
ποιησάμενος λέγει ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πολυνίκου ὡς εἰ |under one's hand
ἔσται Λακεδαμονίοις, |clear, under- |ανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος.
|standable
|send to, order ἔε ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὡς
|throw across; εἷη καὶ φυλάττεσθαι δέοι. ὁ δὲ ἀκούων
|slander
ταῦτα δύο |animal λαβὼν |rush; sacrifice ἔε τῷ βασιλεῖ |which,
|victim |whichever

of the sale, but kept the money to himself, like the thief he is. If we are wise, we will lay hold of him, for he is no Thracian, but a Hellene; and against Hellenes is the wrong he has committed.”

When Heracleides heard these words, he was in great consternation; so he came to Seuthes and said: «If we are wise we will get away from here out of reach of these fellows.” So they mounted their horses and were gone in a trice, galloping to their own camp. Subsequently Seuthes sent Abrozelmēs, his private interpreter, to Xenophon, begging him to stay behind with one thousand heavy troops; and engaging duly to deliver to him the places on the seaboard, and the other things which he had promised; and then, as a great secret, he told him, that he had heard from Polynicus that if he once got into the clutches of the Lacedaemonians, Thibron was certain to put him to death. Similar messages kept coming to Xenophon by letter or otherwise from several quarters, warning him that he was calumniated, and had best be on his guard. Hearing which, he took two victims and sacrificed to Zeus the King:

vocabulary

ἄμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
ἀναιρέω take up ~heresy
ἄνω (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;
 upwards, out to sea
ἄνωθεν from above, the beginning
ἀποστρατοπεδεύω camp away from
δαπανάω spend, consume, waste
Ἑλληγν Greek
ἐντεῦθεν thence
ἐπισιτίζομαι (ιῠ) take supplies
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
κώμη village
λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company

λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
λωίων more desirable
ὅθεν whence
πορθέω sack, ravage, plunder
προκαλέω challenge, call out ~gallo
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect
 ~legion
προσδοκάω expect
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
προσωτέρω farther
σκηνέω camp
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

οἱ λῶον καὶ ἄμεινον εἶη, μένειν παρὰ Σεύθῃ ἐφ' οἷς Σεύθης λέγει, ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι. ἀναιρεῖ αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.

7.7

Ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο προσωτέρω· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν εἰς κώμας ὅθεν ἔμελλον πλείστα ἐπισιτισάμενοι ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἦξιν. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι αὗται ἦσαν δεδομένοι ὑπὸ Σεύθου Μηδοσάδῃ. ὁρῶν οὖν ὁ Μηδοσάδης δαπανώμενα τὰ ἐαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων χαλεπῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν ἄνδρα Ὀδρύσην δυνατώτατον τῶν ἄνωθεν καταβεβηκότων καὶ ἱππέας ὅσον τριάκοντα ἔρχεται καὶ προκαλεῖται Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ ὃς λαβὼν τινὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ ἄλλους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται. ἔνθα δὴ λέγει Μηδοσάδης· «Ἄδικεῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας πορθοῦντες. προλέγομεν οὖν ὑμῖν, ἐγώ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύθου καὶ ὅδε ἀνὴρ παρὰ Μηδόκου ἦκων τοῦ ἄνω βασιλέως, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας· εἰ δὲ μή, οὐκ

οἱ |more desir-|better
|able
λέγει, ἣ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ |army . |take up αὐτῷ
ἀπιέναι.

7.7

|thence Σεύθης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο |farther
οἱ δὲ |Greek |camp εἰς |village |whence ἔλλον πλείστα
|take supplies ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἦξιν. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι αὗται
ἦσαν δεδομένοι ὑπὸ Σεύθου Μηδοσάδῃ. ὁρῶν οὖν ὁ
Μηδοσάδης |spend, con- τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς |village ὑπὸ
|sume, waste
τῶν |Greek χαλεπῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν ἄνδρα Ὀδρύσην
δυνατώτατον τῶν |from above, |βεβηκότων καὶ ἱππέας
|the beginning
ὅσον τριάκοντα ἔρχεται καὶ |challenge Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ
τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ |army . καὶ ὅς λαβὼν τινὰς
τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ ἄλλους τῶν |fit, suitable |come forward, sur-
|render, come in
ἐνθα δὴ λέγει Μηδοσάδης· «Ἀδικεῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τὰς
ἡμετέρας |village |sack . |prophecy, pro- ἦν ὑμῖν, ἐγώ
|claim; preselect
τε ὑπὲρ Σεύθου καὶ ὅδε ἀνὴρ παρὰ Μηδόκου ἦκων τοῦ
ἄνω βασιλέως, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας· εἰ δὲ μή, οὐκ

«Whether it were better and happier to stay with Seuthes on the terms proposed, or depart with the army?» The answer he received was, «Depart.»

7.7

After this, Seuthes removed his camp to some considerable distance; and the Hellenes took up their quarters in some villages, selecting those in which they could best supply their commissariat, on the road to the sea. Now these particular villages had been given by Seuthes to Medosades. Accordingly, when the latter saw his property in the villages being expended by the Hellenes, he was not over well pleased; and taking with him an Odrysian, a powerful person amongst those who had come down from the interior, and about thirty mounted troopers, he came and challenged Xenophon to come forth from the Hellenic host. He, taking some of the officers and others of a character to be relied upon, came forward. Then Medosades, addressing Xenophon, said: «You are doing wrong to pillage our villages; we give you fair warning—I, in behalf of Seuthes, and this man by my side, who comes from Medocus, the king up country—to begone out of the land. If you refuse, understand, we have no notion of

vocabulary

ἀλέξω ward off; aid
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἀποπορεύομαι depart
αὐλίζομαι live, lodge at
ἐκχαλινώ unbridle
ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow
 ~trophy
καίω burn ~caustic
κράτος strength, power; victory

~democracy
κρείσσω more powerful; better
νεανίσκος (ᾱ) young man
ὅποι to which place
παραλαμβάνω receive, undertake,
 associate with
πορθέω sack, ravage, plunder
πότε when?
πρεσβεύω be the elder, be an
 ambassador

ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ποιῇτε κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν
χώραν, ὥς πολεμίους ἀλεξόμεθα.»

Ὁ Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν· «Ἄλλὰ σοὶ μὲν
τοιαῦτα λέγοντι καὶ ἀποκρίνασθαι χαλεπόν· τούτου δ'
ἔνεκα τοῦ νεανίσκου λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῇ οἱοί τε ὑμεῖς ἐστέ καὶ
οἱοὶ ἡμεῖς. ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ,» ἔφη, «πρὶν ὑμῖν φίλοι γενέσθαι
ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὅποι ἐβουλόμεθα, ἣν
μὲν ἐθέλομεν πορθοῦντες, ἣν δὲ θέλομεν καίοντες, καὶ
σὺν ὁπότε πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἔλθοις πρεσβεύων, ἡγλίζου τότε παρ'
ἡμῖν οὐδένα φοβούμενος τῶν πολεμίων· ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ᾔτε
εἰς τήνδε τὴν χώραν, ἢ εἴ ποτε ἔλθοιτε, ὥς ἐν κρειττόνων
χώρᾳ ἡγλίζεσθε ἐγκεχαλινωμένοι τοῖς ἵπποις. ἐπεὶ δὲ
ἡμῖν φίλοι ἐγένεσθε καὶ δι' ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε τήνδε τὴν
χώραν, νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆσδε τῆς χώρας ἣν
παρ' ἡμῶν, ἐχόντων κατὰ κράτος, παρελάβετε· ὥς γὰρ
αὐτὸς οἴσθα, οἱ πολέμοι οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ᾔσαν ἡμᾶς ἐξελαύνειν.
καὶ οὐχ ὅπως δῶρα δοὺς καὶ εὖ ποιήσας ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθες
ἀξιοῖς ἡμᾶς ἀποπέμψασθαι, ἀλλ' ἀποπορευομένους ἡμᾶς

|entrust, de- ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ποιῆτε κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν
|cide, allow
χώραν, ὡς πολεμίους |ward off; aid .

Ὁ Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν· «Ἀλλὰ σοὶ μὲν
τοιαῦτα λέγοντι καὶ ἀποκρίνασθαι χαλεπὸν· τούτου δ'
ἔνεκα τοῦ νεανίσκου λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῇ οἱοί τε ὑμεῖς ἐστε καὶ
οἱοὶ ἡμεῖς. ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ,» ἔφη, «πρὶν ὑμῖν φίλοι γενέσθαι
ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας |to which place...:θα, ἣν
μὲν ἐθέλομεν |sack , ἣν δὲ θέλομεν |burn , καὶ
σὺν ὁπότε πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἔλθοις |be the elder, be|live, τότε παρ'
|an ambassador|lodge at
ἡμῖν οὐδένα φοβούμενος τῶν πολέμιων· ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἦτε
εἰς τήνδε τὴν χώραν, ἣ εἴ ποτε ἔλθοιτε, ὡς ἐν κρειττόνων
χώρᾳ |live, lodge |unbridle τοῖς ἵπποις. ἐπεὶ δὲ
|at
ἡμῖν φίλοι ἐγένεσθε καὶ δι' ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε τήνδε τὴν
χώραν, νῦν δὲ |drive out ἡμᾶς ἐκ τήσδε τῆς χώρας ἣν
παρ' ἡμῶν, ἐχόντων κατὰ |strength, |receive, undertake, γὰρ
|power; |associate with
αὐτὸς οἴσθα, οἱ πολέμοι οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν ἡμᾶς |drive out
καὶ οὐχ ὅπως δῶρα δούς καὶ εὖ ποιήσας ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθες
ἀξιοῖς ἡμᾶς |send away , ἀλλ' |depart ἡμᾶς

handing it over to you; but if you injure our country we will retaliate upon you as foes.”

Xenophon, hearing what they had to say, replied: «Such language addressed to us by you, of all people, is hard to answer. Yet for the sake of the young man with you, I will attempt to do so, that at least he may learn how different your nature is from ours. We,” he continued, «before we were your friends, had the free run of this country, moving this way or that, as it took our fancy, pillaging and burning just as we chose; and you yourself, Medosades, whenever you came to us on an embassy, camped with us, without apprehension of any foe. As a tribe collectively you scarcely approached the country at all, or if you found yourselves in it, you bivouacked with your horses bitted and bridled, as being in the territory of your superiors. Presently you made friends with us, and, thanks to us, by God’s help you have won this country, out of which to-day you seek to drive us; a country which we held by our own strength and gave to you. No hostile force, as you well know, was capable of expelling us. It might have been expected of you personally to speed us on our way with some gift, in return for the good we did you. Not so; even though our backs are turned to go, we are too slow in our movements for you. You will not suffer us to take

vocabulary

αἰσχύνῃ (ῶ) shame, dishonor

αἰσχύνω (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue

ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away

ἀπεχθάνομαι become hated ~external

βίος life ~biology

ἐναυλίζω live, stay at

ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic

ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise

ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
~station

ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow
~trophy

εὐεργέτης -ου (m, 1) benefactor

θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable

καταδύω enter, sink

ληστεία robbery

λυπέω (ῶ) annoy, distress

πλουτέω be rich

πορθέω sack, ravage, plunder

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συνακολουθέω follow with, be related

τέσσαρες four ~trapezoid

χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma

οὐδ' ἐναυλισθῆναι ὅσον δύνασαι ἐπιτρέπεις. καὶ ταῦτα λέγων οὔτε θεοὺς αἰσχύνῃ οὔτε τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν μέν σε ὀρᾷ πλουτοῦντα, πρὶν δὲ ἡμῖν φίλον γενέσθαι ἀπὸ ληστείας τὸν βίον ἔχοντα, ὡς αὐτὸς ἔφησθα. ἀτὰρ τί καὶ πρὸς ἐμέ λέγεις ταῦτα;» ἔφη· «οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι ἄρχω, ἀλλὰ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς παρεδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγαγεῖν οὐδὲν ἐμέ παρακαλέσαντες, ὧ θαυμαστότατοι, ὅπως ὥσπερ ἀπηχθανόμην αὐτοῖς ὅτε πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἦγον, οὕτω καὶ χαρισαίμην νῦν ἀποδιδούς.»

Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Ὀδρύσης, εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ μέν, ὧ Μηδόσαδες, κατὰ τῆς γῆς καταδύομαι ὑπὸ τῆς αἰσχύνης ἀκούων ταῦτα. καὶ εἰ μὲν πρόσθεν ἠπιστάμην, οὐδ' ἂν συνηκολούθησά σοι· καὶ νῦν ἄπειμι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν Μήδοκός με ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπαινοίῃ, εἰ ἐξελαύνομι τοὺς εὐεργέτας.» ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀπήλανε καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἱππεῖς πλὴν τεττάρων ἢ πέντε.

Ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης ἐλύπει γὰρ αὐτὸν ἡ χώρα πορθουμένη, ἐκέλευε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τῷ Λακεδαιμονίῳ. καὶ

οὐδ' |live, stay at ὅσον δύνασαι |entrust, de- καὶ ταῦτα
 |cide, allow
 λέγων οὔτε θεοὺς αἰσχύνῃ οὔτε τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν
 μέν σε ὀρᾷ |be rich , πρὶν δὲ ἡμῖν φίλον γενέσθαι ἀπὸ
 |robbery τὸν |life ἔχοντα, ὡς αὐτὸς ἔφησθα. ἀτὰρ τί καὶ
 πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγεις ταῦτα;» ἔφη· «οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι ἄρχω,
 ἀλλὰ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς παρεδώκατε τὸ |army
 |lead away, back ἔν ἐμὲ παρακαλέσαντες, ᾧ |wonderful;
 |admirable ,
 ὅπως ὥσπερ |become hated αὐτοῖς ὅτε πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἦγον,
 οὕτω καὶ |gratify νῦν ἀποδιδούς.»

Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Ὀδρύσης, εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ μὲν, ᾧ
 Μηδόσαδες, κατὰ τῆς γῆς |enter, sink ὑπὸ τῆς |shame,
 |dishonor
 ἀκούων ταῦτα. καὶ εἰ μὲν πρόσθεν |know , οὐδ' ἂν
 |follow with, be re- σοι· καὶ νῦν ἄπειμι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν Μηδοκός
 |lated
 με ὁ βασιλεὺς |concur , εἰ |drive out τοὺς |benefactor .»
 ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον |expel, exclude, ward off; γῶ
 |(intrans) ride away
 οἱ ἄλλοι ἵππεῖς πλὴν |four ἣ πέντε.

Ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης |annoy, γὰρ αὐτὸν ἡ χώρα |sack
 |distress ,
 ἐκέλευε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τῷ Λακεδαιμονίῳ. καὶ

up quarters even, if you can help it, and these words arouse no shame in you, either before the gods, or this Odrysian, in whose eyes to-day you are man of means, though until you cultivated our friendship you lived a robber's life, as you have told us. However, why do you address yourself to me? I am no longer in command. Our generals are the Lacedaemonians, to whom you and yours delivered the army for withdrawal; and that, without even inviting me to attend, you most marvellous of men, so that if I lost their favour when I brought you the troops, I might now win their gratitude by restoring them."

As soon as the Odrysian had heard this statement, he exclaimed: «For my part, Medosades, I sink under the earth for very shame at what I hear. If I had known the truth before, I would never have accompanied you. As it is, I return at once. Never would King Medocus applaud me, if I drove forth his benefactors." With these words, he mounted his horse and rode away, and with him the rest of his horsemen, except four or five.

But Medosades, still vexed by the pillaging of the country, urged Xenophon to summon the two Lacedaemonians; and he, taking the pick of his men, came

vocabulary

ἄέκων unwilling
ἄκων javelin; unwilling ~acme
ἀπολαμβάνω receive, recover, take
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy
έκων willingly, on purpose; giving in
 too easily
ἐπικαίριος at a fitting time; serious;
 vital
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
κράτιστος best
μισθός reward, wages
ὅποῖος whatever kind
ὀφείλω owe, should, if only

προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
προερέω say beforehand
πρόθυμος (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
συναναπράσσω join in exacting
 payment
συνέπομαι go along with ~sequel
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand;
 submit to
ὑφειμένως subduedly

ὃς λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδαιοτάτους προσήλθε τῷ Χαρμίνῳ καὶ Πολυνίκῳ καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι καλεῖ αὐτοὺς Μηδοσάδης προερῶν ἅπερ αὐτῷ, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. «Οἷομαι ἂν οὖν,» ἔφη, «ὕμᾱς ἀπολαβεῖν τῇ στρατιᾷ τὸν ὀφειλόμενον μισθόν, εἰ εἵποιτε ὅτι δεδέχεται ὑμῶν ἡ στρατιὰ συναναπρᾶξαι τὸν μισθὸν ἢ παρ' ἐκόντος ἢ παρ' ἄκοντος Σεύθου, καὶ ὅτι τούτων τυχόντες προθύμως ἂν συνέπεσθαι ὑμῖν φασι· καὶ ὅτι δίκαια ὑμῖν δοκοῦσι λέγειν· καὶ ὅτι ὑπέσχεσθε αὐτοῖς τότε ἀπιέναι ὅταν τὰ δίκαια ἔχωσιν οἱ στρατιῶται.» ἀκούσαντες οἱ Λάκωνες ταῦτα ἔφασαν ἐρεῖν καὶ ἄλλα ὅποια ἂν δύνωνται κράτιστα· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους.

Ἐλθὼν δὲ ἔλεξε Χαρμῖνος· «Εἰ μὲν σύ τι ἔχεις, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, πρὸς ἡμᾶς λέγειν, εἰ δὲ μή, ἡμεῖς πρὸς σὲ ἔχομεν.»

Ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης μάλα δὴ ὑφειμένως· «Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν λέγω,» ἔφη, «καὶ Σεύθῃς τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιούμεν τοὺς φίλους ἡμῖν γεγεννημένους μὴ κακῶς πάσχειν ὑφ' ὑμῶν.

ὅς λαβὼν τοὺς |fit, suitable |come forward, sur- ρμίνω
 |render, come in
 καὶ Πολυνίκῳ καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι καλεῖ αὐτοὺς Μηδοσάδης
 προερῶν ἅπερ αὐτῷ, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. «Οἷομαι
 ἂν οὖν,» ἔφη, «ὕμᾱς |receive, recover, take|army τὸν
 |aside, cut off
 |owe, should, if|reward, εἰ εἵποιτε ὅτι δεδέηται ὑμῶν ἡ
 |only |wages
 στρατιὰ |join in exacting τὸν |reward, ἢ παρ' |willingly ἢ παρ'
 |payment |wages
 ἄκοντος Σεύθου, καὶ ὅτι τούτων τυχόντες |willing, ἂν
 |eager
 |go along with 'μῖν φασι' καὶ ὅτι δίκαια ὑμῖν δοκοῦσι λέγειν·
 καὶ ὅτι |promise αὐτοῖς τότε ἀπιέναι ὅταν τὰ δίκαια
 ἔχωσιν οἱ |soldier, » ἀκούσαντες οἱ Λάκωνες ταῦτα
 |mercenary
 ἔφασαν ἐρεῖν καὶ ἄλλα |whatever kind ὄνται |best καὶ
 εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς |at a fitting time;
 |serious; vital
 Ἐλθὼν δὲ ἔλεξε Χαρμῖνος· «Εἰ μὲν σύ τι ἔχεις, ὦ
 Μηδόσαδες, πρὸς ἡμᾶς λέγειν, εἰ δὲ μή, ἡμεῖς πρὸς σέ
 ἔχομεν.»
 Ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης μάλα δὴ ὑφειμένως· «Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν
 λέγω,» ἔφη, «καὶ Σεύθης τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιούμεν τοὺς
 φίλους ἡμῖν γεγενημένους μὴ κακῶς πάσχειν ὑφ' ὑμῶν.

to Charminus and Polynicus and informed them that they were summoned by Medosades; probably they, like himself, would be warned to leave the country; «if so,” he added, «you will be able to recover the pay which is owing to the army. You can say to them, that the army has requested you to assist in exacting their pay from Seuthes, whether he like it or not; that they have promised, as soon as they get this, cheerfully to follow you; that the demand seems to you to be only just, and that you have accordingly promised not to leave, until the soldiers have got their dues.” The Lacedaemonians accepted the suggestion: they would apply these arguments and others the most forcible they could hit upon; and with the proper representatives of the army, they immediately set off.

On their arrival Charminus spoke: «If you have anything to say to us, Medosades, say it; but if not, we have something to say to you.”

And Medosades submissively made answer: «I say,” said he, «and Seuthes says the same: we think we have a right to ask that those who have become our friends should not be ill-treated by you; whatever ill you

vocabulary

εἴτε if, whenever; either/or

ἐνθένδε hence

ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

καίω burn ~caustic

καταπράσσω accomplish, build

~practice

κώμη village

μισθός reward, wages

ὅπότερος which of two, either of two

ὄρκος what is sworn by, witness, oath

~orc

προσέχω belong to, it beseems

συμπράσσω cooperate

τιμωρέω (τι) (+dat) take vengeance,
punish; aid one who has been attacked

τοίνυν well, then

ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do

~ischemia

ψηφίζω count, vote

ὅ τι γὰρ ἂν τούτους κακῶς ποιῆτε ἡμᾶς ἤδη ποιεῖτε·
ἡμέτεροι γάρ εἰσιν.»

«Ἡμεῖς τοίνυν,» ἔφασαν οἱ Λάκωνες, «ἀπίομεν ἂν
ὁπότε τὸν μισθὸν ἔχοιεν οἱ ταῦτα ὑμῖν καταπράξαντες·
εἰ δὲ μή, ἐρχόμεθα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσοντες τούτοις
καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι ἄνδρας οἱ τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους
ἡδίκησαν. ἦν δὲ δὴ καὶ ὑμεῖς τοιοῦτοι ἦτε, ἐνθὲνδε
ἀρξόμεθα τὰ δίκαια λαμβάνειν.»

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· «Ἐθέλοιτε ἂν τούτοις, ὦ
Μηδόσαδες, ἐπιτρέψαι, ἐπειδὴ φίλους ἔφατε εἶναι ὑμῖν,
ἐν ᾧ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν, ὁπότερ' ἂν ψηφίσωνται, εἴθ' ὑμᾶς
προσῆκεν ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἀπιέναι εἴθ' ἡμᾶς;»

Ὁ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν οὐκ ἔφη· ἐκέλευε δὲ μάλιστα μὲν
αὐτῶ τῷ Λάκωνε ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύθην περὶ τοῦ
μισθοῦ, καὶ οἶεσθαι ἂν Σεύθην πείσαι· εἰ δὲ μή,
Ξενοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῷ πέμπειν, καὶ συμπράξειν
ὑπισχνεῖτο. ἐδεῖτο δὲ τὰς κώμας μὴ καίειν.

ὅ τι γὰρ ἂν τούτους κακῶς ποιῆτε ἡμᾶς ἤδη ποιείτε·
 ἡμέτεροι γάρ εἰσιν.»

«Ἡμεῖς |well, then ἔφασαν οἱ Λάκωνες, «ἀπίομεν ἂν
 ὁπότε τὸν |reward, ἔχοιεν οἱ ταῦτα ὑμῖν |accomplish, build
 |wages
 εἰ δὲ μή, ἐρχόμεθα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσοντες τούτοις
 καὶ |take vengeance, ἄνδρας οἱ τούτους παρὰ τοὺς |oath
 |punish, aid
 ἡδίκησαν. ἦν δὲ δὴ καὶ ὑμεῖς τοιούτοι ᾗτε, |hence
 ἀρξόμεθα τὰ δίκαια λαμβάνειν.»

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· «Ἐθέλοιτε ἂν τούτοις, ὦ
 Μηδόσαδες, |entrust, de-, ἐπειδὴ φίλους ἔφατε εἶναι ὑμῖν,
 |cide, allow
 ἐν ᾧ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν, |which of two, |count, vote , |if, whenever;
 |either of two |either/or
 |belong to, it ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἀπιέναι |if, whenever;
 |beseems |either/or

Ὁ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν οὐκ ἔφη· ἐκέλευε δὲ μάλιστα μὲν
 αὐτῷ τῷ Λάκωνε ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύθην περὶ τοῦ
 |reward, , καὶ οἶεσθαι ἂν Σεύθην πείσαι· εἰ δὲ μή,
 |wages
 Ξενοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῷ πέμπειν, καὶ |cooperate
 |promise, . ἐδεῖτο δὲ τὰς |village μὴ |burn .
 |agree

do to them you really do to us, for they are a part of us.”

«Good!” replied the Lacedaemonians, «and we intend to go away as soon as those who won for you the people and the territory in question have got their pay. Failing that, we are coming without further delay to assist them and to punish certain others who have broken their oaths and done them wrong. If it should turn out that you come under this head, when we come to exact justice, we shall begin with you.”

Xenophon added: «Would you prefer, Medosades, to leave it to these people themselves, in whose country we are (your friends, since this is the designation you prefer), to decide by ballot, which of the two should leave the country, you or we?” To that proposal he shook his head, but he trusted the two Laconians might be induced to go to Seuthes about the pay, adding, «Seuthes, I am sure, will lend a willing ear;” or if they could not go, then he prayed them to send Xenophon with himself, promising to lend the latter all the aid in his power, and finally he begged them not to burn the villages.

*vocabulary***ἀδύνατος** unable; impossible**αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned**ἄπιστος** not trusting, not trustworthy
~stand**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take
aside, cut off ~epilepsy**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀσκέω** work on**ἄτιμος** (ι) without honor**ἀχάριστος** ungracious, unpleasant
~eucharist**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἑξακισχίλιοι** 6000**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor**μάταιος** vain, empty**μηδαμὸς** no one**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander
~plankton**πρόθυμος** (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume**σαυτοῦ** yourself**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,
mercenary ~strategy**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;
submit to**φανερὸς** visible, conspicuous ~photon

Ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἐδόκουν ἐπιτηδειότατοι εἶναι. ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει πρὸς Σεύθην· «Οὐδὲν ἀπαιτήσων, ὦ Σεύθη, πάρειμι, ἀλλὰ διδάξων, ἣν δύνωμαι, ὥς σὺ δικαίως μοι ἡχθέσθης ὅτι ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀπήτουν σε προθύμως ἃ ὑπέσχου αὐτοῖς· σοὶ γὰρ ἔγωγε οὐχ ἦττον ἐνόμιζον σύμφορον εἶναι ἀποδοῦναι ἢ ἐκείνοις ἀπολαβεῖν. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ οἶδα μετὰ τοὺς θεοὺς εἰς τὸ φανερόν σε τούτους καταστήσαντας, ἐπεὶ γε βασιλέα σε ἐποίησαν πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων· ὥστε οὐχ οἷόν τέ σοι λανθάνειν οὔτε ἦν τι καλὸν οὔτε ἦν τι αἰσχρὸν ποιήσης. τοιούτῳ δὲ ὄντι ἀνδρὶ μέγα μὲν μοι ἐδόκει εἶναι μὴ δοκεῖν ἀχαρίστως ἀποπέμψασθαι ἄνδρας εὐεργέτας, μέγα δὲ εὖ ἀκούειν ὑπὸ ἑξακισχιλίων ἀνθρώπων, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον μηδαμῶς ἄπιστον σαντὸν καταστήσαι ὅ τι λέγοις. ὁρῶ γὰρ τῶν μὲν ἀπίστων ματαίους καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ ἀτίμους τοὺς λόγους πλανωμένους· οἱ δ' ἂν φανεροὶ ὦσιν ἀλήθειαν ἀσκοῦντες, τούτων οἱ λόγοι, ἦν τι δέωνται, οὐδὲν

|thence πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἐδόκουν

|fit, suitable εἶναι. ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει πρὸς Σεύθην·

«Οὐδὲν |demand to ᾧ Σεύθῃ, πάρειμι, ἀλλὰ διδάξων,
|have returned

ἦν δύνωμαι, ὥς οὐ δικαίως μοι |be burdened with ἐρ τῶν

|soldier, |demand to|willing, ᾧ |promise αὐτοῖς· σοὶ
|mercenary |have returned|eager

γὰρ ἔγωγε οὐχ ἦττον ἐνόμιζον |accompanying; μὴ ἀποδοῦναι
|suitable

ἢ ἐκείνοις |receive, recover, ὧτον μὲν γὰρ οἶδα μετὰ τοὺς
|take aside, cut off

θεοὺς εἰς τὸ |visible, . . . τούτους καταστήσαντας, ἐπεὶ
|conspicuous

γε βασιλέα σε ἐποίησαν πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν

ἀνθρώπων· ὥστε οὐχ οἷόν τέ σοι λανθάνειν οὔτε ἦν τι

καλὸν οὔτε ἦν τι |shameful ποιήσης. τοιούτῳ δὲ ὄντι

ἀνδρὶ μέγα μὲν μοι ἐδόκει εἶναι μὴ δοκεῖν |ungracious,
|unpleasant

|send away ἄνδρας |benefactor , μέγα δὲ εὖ ἀκούειν

ὑπὸ |6000 ἀνθρώπων, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον |no one

|not trust-|yourself καταστήσαι ὅ τι λέγοις. ὁρῶ γὰρ τῶν μὲν
ing, not

trustwor- |and |unable; καὶ |without τοὺς λόγους
ing, not|empty |impossible |honor

trustwor- |lead astray; οἱ δ' ἂν |visible, . . . ἢ |truth |work on
(mp) wander |conspicuous

τούτων οἱ λόγοι, ἦν τι δέωνται, οὐδὲν

Accordingly they sent Xenophon, and with him a serviceable staff. Being arrived, he addressed Seuthes thus. «Seuthes, I am here to advance no claims, but to show you, if I can, how unjust it was on your part to be angered with me because I zealously demanded of you on behalf of the soldiers what you promised them. According to my belief, it was no less to your interest to deliver it up, than it was to theirs to receive it. I cannot forget that, next to the gods, it was they who raised you up to a conspicuous eminence, when they made you king of large territory and many men, a position in which you cannot escape notice, whether you do good or do evil. For a man so circumstanced, I regarded it as a great thing that he should avoid the suspicion even of ungrateful parting with his benefactors. It was a great thing, I thought, that you should be well spoken of by six thousand human beings; but the greatest thing of all, that you should in no wise discredit the sincerity of your own word. For what of the man who cannot be trusted? I see that the words of his mouth are but vain words, powerless, and unhonoured; but with him who is seen to regard truth, the case is otherwise. He can achieve by his words what another achieves

vocabulary

αἰσχροῦς shameful

ἄληθεύω speak truth; be true

ἀναμνησῶ (+2 acc) remind
someone ~mnemonic

ἀνύω accomplish, pass over, complete

ἀπειλή boast, threat

ἀπολαμβάνω receive, recover, take
aside, cut off ~epilepsy

βλάβος -εος (n, 3) harm

διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
~practice

ἐπαίρω lift, raise ~heresy

καταπράσσω accomplish, build
~practice

καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
~catastrophe

κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;
kill

κολάζω punish

μείων less, smaller

οὐκοῦν not so?; and so

παραχρῆμα on the spot

πιπράσκω export, sell as a slave
~porno

πολλαπλάσιος many times more

προτελέω pay or expend beforehand

συστρατεύω join in an expedition

σωφρονίζω calm, chasten

τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight
~talent

τοίνυν well, then

ὑπισχέομαι promise, agree to do
~ischemia

μείον δύνανται ἀνύσασθαι ἢ ἄλλων ἢ βία· ἦν τέ τινας σωφρονίζειν βούλωνται, γιγνώσκω τὰς τούτων ἀπειλὰς οὐχ ἦττον σωφρονιζούσας ἢ ἄλλων τὸ ἤδη κολάζειν· ἦν τέ τῇ τι ὑπισχνῶνται οἱ τοιοῦτοι ἄνδρες, οὐδὲν μείον διαπράττονται ἢ ἄλλοι παραχρήμα διδόντες·

«Ἀναμνήσθητι δὲ καὶ σὺ τί προτελέσας ἡμῖν συμμάχους ἡμᾶς ἔλαβες. οἶσθ' ὅτι οὐδέν· ἀλλὰ πιστευθεὶς ἀληθεύσειν ἃ ἔλεγες ἐπήρας τοσούτους ἀνθρώπους συστρατεύεσθαι τε καὶ κατεργάσασθαι σοι ἀρχὴν οὐ τριάκοντα μόνον ἀξίαν ταλάντων, ὅσα οἶονται δεῖν οὗτοι νῦν ἀπολαβεῖν, ἀλλὰ πολλαπλασίων. οὐκοῦν τοῦτο μὲν πρῶτον τὸ πιστεύεσθαι, τὸ καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν σοι κατεργασάμενον, τούτων τῶν χρημάτων πιπράσκεται. ἴθι δὴ ἀναμνήσθητι πῶς μέγα ἡγοῦ τότε καταπρᾶξαι ἃ νῦν καταστρεψάμενος ἔχεις. ἐγὼ μὲν εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι ηὔξω ἂν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα μᾶλλον σοι καταπραχθῆναι ἢ πολλαπλάσια τούτων τῶν χρημάτων γενέσθαι. ἐμοὶ τοίνυν μείζον βλάβος καὶ αἰσχίον δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ ταῦτα νῦν μὴ κατασχεῖν ἢ τότε

|less, *ῥύνανται* |accomplish ἢ ἄλλων ἢ βία· ἦν τέ τινας
|smaller

|calm, chasten *βούλονται, γινώσκω τὰς τούτων* |boast,
|threat

οὐχ ἦττον |calm, chasten ἢ ἄλλων τὸ ἤδη |punish ἦν

τέ τῇ τι |promise, agree οἱ τοιοῦτοι ἄνδρες, οὐδὲν |less,
|smaller

|travel over, ac- ἢ ἄλλοι |on the spot διδόντες·
|comply

«Ἀναμνήσθητι δὲ καὶ σὺ τί προτελέσας ἡμῖν συμμάχους

ἡμᾶς ἔλαβες. οἶσθ' ὅτι οὐδέν· ἀλλὰ πιστευθεὶς |speak truth;
|be true

ἃ ἔλεγες |lift, raise τοσούτους ἀνθρώπους |join in an expedi-
|tion

τε καὶ |achieve; cultivate; σοι ἀρχὴν οὐ τριάκοντα μόνον
|get; kill

ἀξίαν |scale, a unit, ὅσα οἴονται δεῖν οὗτοι νῦν |receive, recover, take
|of weight |aside, cut off

ἀλλὰ πολλαπλασίων. |not so?; and so μὲν πρῶτον τὸ

πιστεῦεσθαι, τὸ καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν σοι |achieve; cultivate;
|get; kill

τούτων τῶν χρημάτων |export, sell as a ἔθι δὲ ἀναμνήσθητι
|slave

πῶς μέγα ἡγοῦ τότε |accomplish, ἃ νῦν |overturn, subdue
|build

ἔχεις. ἐγὼ μὲν εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι ἡὔξω ἂν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα

μᾶλλον σοι |accomplish, build ἢ |many times more νῦν τῶν

χρημάτων γενέσθαι. ἐμοὶ |well, then εἴζον |harm καὶ

|shameful δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ ταῦτα νῦν μὴ κατασχεῖν ἢ τότε

by force. If he seeks to bring the foolish to their senses—his very frown, I perceive, has a more sobering effect than the chastisement inflicted by another. Or in negotiations the very promises of such an one are of equal weight with the gifts of another.

”Try and recall to mind in your own case, what advance of money you made to us to purchase our alliance. You know you did not advance one penny. It was simply confidence in the sincerity of your word which incited all these men to assist you in your campaign, and so to acquire for you an empire, worth many times more than thirty talents, which is all they now claim to receive. Here then, first of all, goes the credit which won for you your kingdom, sold for so mean a sum. Let me remind you of the great importance which you then attached to the acquisition of your present conquests. I am certain that to achieve what stands achieved to-day, you would willingly have foregone the gain of fifty times that paltry sum. To me it seems that to lose your present fortune were a more serious loss than never to have won it; since

vocabulary

ἀπιστία disbelief, distrust
ἀπορία difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce
βασιλεύω be king
διάκειμαι be in a condition
ἐλεύθερος not enslaved
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
ιδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman
καταδοξάζω suspect, be prejudiced
λυπηρός (ō) painful, causing pain, sad
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so

παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend
 ~genus
πένης -τος (m) poor
πλούσιος wealth ~plutocrat
πλουτέω be rich
πότερος which, whichever of two
προστατέω be boss of; defend
προστάτης -ου (m, 1) leader, protector
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
σωφρονέω be sane, moderate
ὑπείκω yield, withdraw ~victor
ὑπήκοος heeding, subject
φίλιος friendly

μὴ λαβεῖν, ὅσῳ περ χαλεπώτερον ἐκ πλουσίου πένητα
γενέσθαι ἢ ἀρχὴν μὴ πλουτῆσαι, καὶ ὅσῳ λυπηρότερον
ἐκ βασιλέως ἰδιώτην φανῆναι ἢ ἀρχὴν μὴ βασιλεῦσαι.

«Οὐκοῦν ἐπίστασαι μὲν ὅτι οἱ νῦν σοι ὑπήκοοι γενόμενοι
οὐ φιλία τῇ σῇ ἐπέισθησαν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἄρχεσθαι ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη,
καὶ ὅτι ἐπιχειροῖεν ἂν πάλιν ἐλεύθεροι γίνεσθαι, εἰ μὴ
τις αὐτοὺς φόβος κατέχοι. ποτέρως οὖν οἶμι μᾶλλον
ἂν φοβεῖσθαι τε αὐτοὺς καὶ σωφρονεῖν τὰ πρὸς σέ, εἰ
ὀρῶέν σοι τοὺς στρατιώτας οὕτω διακειμένους ὥς νῦν τε
μένοντας ἄν, εἰ σὺ κελεύεις, αἰθίς τ' ἂν ταχὺ ἐλθόντας,
εἰ δέοι, ἄλλους τε τούτων περὶ σοῦ ἀκούοντας πολλὰ
ἀγαθὰ ταχὺ ἄν σοι ὁπότε βούλοιο παραγενέσθαι, ἢ εἰ
καταδοξάσειαν μήτ' ἂν ἄλλους σοι ἐλθεῖν δι' ἀπιστίαν
ἐκ τῶν νῦν γεγεννημένων τούτους τε αὐτοῖς εὐνουστέρους
εἶναι ἢ σοί; ἀλλὰ μὴν οὐδὲ πλήθει γε ἡμῶν λειφθέντες
ὑπεῖξάν σοι, ἀλλὰ προστατῶν ἀπορία. οὐκοῦν νῦν
καὶ τοῦτο κίνδυνος μὴ λάβωσι προστατάς αὐτῶν τινὰς
τούτων οἱ νομίζουσιν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι, ἢ καὶ τούτων

μὴ λαβεῖν, ὅσῳ περ χαλεπώτερον ἐκ |wealth |poor
 γενέσθαι ἢ ἀρχὴν μὴ |be rich , καὶ ὅσῳ |painful, caus-
 |ing pain, sad
 ἐκ βασιλέως |private; a layman... ἢ ἀρχὴν μὴ |be king .
 «|not so?; and so ἴσασι μὲν ὅτι οἱ νῦν σοι |heeding, γενόμενοι
 |subject
 οὐ |friendly ἢ σὴ ἐπέισθησαν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἄρχεσθαι ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη,
 καὶ ὅτι |do, try, attack ἔν πάλιν |not enslaved, ἔγνεσθαι, εἰ μὴ
 τις αὐτοὺς φόβος κατέχοι. |which, οὖν οἶε μᾶλλον
 |whichever
 ἂν φοβεῖσθαι τε αὐτοὺς καὶ |be sane, moderate πρὸς σέ, εἰ
 ὁρῶέν σοι τοὺς |soldier, οὕτω |be in a condition ἔν νῦν τε
 |mercenary
 μένοντας ἄν, εἰ σὺν κελεύοις, αὐθὶς τ' ἂν ταχὺ ἐλθόντας,
 εἰ δέοι, ἄλλους τε τούτων περὶ σοῦ ἀκούοντας πολλὰ
 ἀγαθὰ ταχὺ ἄν σοι ὅποτε βούλοιο |be beside, attend, ἢ εἰ
 |suspect, be preju- μήτ' ἂν ἄλλους σοι ἐλθεῖν δι' |disbelief,
 |diced |distrust
 ἐκ τῶν νῦν γεγενημένων τούτους τε αὐτοῖς εὐνουστέρους
 εἶναι ἢ σοί; ἀλλὰ μὴν οὐδὲ πλήθει γε ἡμῶν λειφθέντες
 |yield, σοι, ἀλλὰ προστατῶν |difficulty, |not so?; and so
 |withdraw |bottleneck
 καὶ τοῦτο κίνδυνος μὴ λάβωσι |leader, αὐτῶν τινὰς
 |protector
 τούτων οἱ νομίζουσιν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι, ἢ καὶ τούτων

surely it is harder to be poor after being rich than never to have tasted wealth at all, and more painful to sink to the level of a subject, being a king, then never to have worn a crown.

«You cannot forget that your present vassals were not persuaded to become your subjects out of love for you, but by sheer force; and but for some restraining dread they would endeavour to be free again to-morrow. And how do you propose to stimulate their sense of awe, and keep them in good behaviour towards you? Shall they see our soldiers so disposed towards you that a word on your part would suffice to keep them now, or if necessary would bring them back again to-morrow? while others hearing from us a hundred stories in your praise, hasten to present themselves at your desire? Or will you drive them to conclude adversely, that through mistrust of what has happened now, no second set of soldiers will come to help you, for even these troops of ours are more their friends than yours? And indeed it was not because they fell short of us in numbers that they became your subjects, but from lack of proper leaders. There is a danger, therefore, now lest they should choose as their protectors some of us who regard ourselves as wronged by you, or even better men than us—the Lacedaemonians themselves;

vocabulary

ἄδηλος invisible, unknown
 ἀναλίσκω (αἶ) consume, spend on
 ἀναπράσσω exact, demand
 ἀντιστρατοπεδεύω encamp against
 ἀπαθής unaffected, impassive
 ἀπολαμβάνω receive, recover, take
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy
 ἀργύριον small coin
 δηλώ show, disclose
 δουλεία slavery
 δούλειος of a slave
 ἐγκαλέω demand payment; accuse
 ἐλευθερία freedom
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable

καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
 κρείσσων more powerful; better
 μισθώ rent out; (pass) be hired
 οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
 ὀφείλω owe, should, if only
 πάμπολυς very great
 πότερος which, whichever of two
 πρόθυμος (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume
 προνοέω foresee, think of ~paranoia
 στρατιά army ~strategy
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
 συστρατεύω join in an expedition
 ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do
 ~ischemia

κρείττονας τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, ἔαν μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται ὑπισχνῶνται προθυμότερον αὐτοῖς συστρατεύσεσθαι, ἂν τὰ παρὰ σοῦ νῦν ἀναπράξωσιν, οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι διὰ τὸ δεῖσθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς συνανέσωσιν αὐτοῖς ταῦτα. ὅτι γε μὴν οἱ νῦν ὑπὸ σοὶ Θρᾶκες γενόμενοι πολὺ ἂν προθυμότερον ἴοιεν ἐπὶ σε ἢ σὺν σοι οὐκ ἄδηλον· σοῦ μὲν γὰρ κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάρχει αὐτοῖς, κρατουμένου δέ σου ἐλευθερία.

«Εἰ δὲ καὶ τῆς χώρας προνοεῖσθαι ἤδη τι δεῖ ὥς σῆς οὔσης, ποτέρως ἂν οἶε ἀπαθῇ κακῶν μᾶλλον αὐτὴν εἶναι, εἰ οὗτοι οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπολαβόντες ἂ ἐγκαλοῦσιν εἰρήνην καταλιπόντες οἴχονται, ἢ εἰ οὗτοί τε μέναιεν ὥς ἐν πολεμῷ σύ τε ἄλλους πειρῶο πλέονας τούτων ἔχων ἀντιστρατοπεδεύεσθαι δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων; ἀργύριον δὲ ποτέρως ἂν πλεόν ἀναλωθείη, εἰ τούτοις τὸ ὀφειλόμενον ἀποδοθείη, ἢ εἰ ταῦτά τε ὀφείλοιντο ἄλλους τε κρείττονας δέοι σε μισθοῦσθαι;

«Ἀλλὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδῃ, ὥς πρὸς ἐμὲ ἐδήλον, πάμπολυ

κρείττονας τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, ἐὰν μὲν οἱ [|]soldier,
[|]mercenary
|promise, agree |willing, eager αὐτοῖς |join in an expedition, ἂν
τὰ παρὰ σοῦ νῦν |exact, demand , οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι
διὰ τὸ δεῖσθαι τῆς |army συναινέσωσιν αὐτοῖς ταῦτα.
ὅτι γε μὴν οἱ νῦν ὑπὸ σοὶ Θρᾶκες γενόμενοι πολὺ ἂν
|willing, eager ἴοιεν ἐπὶ σε ἢ σὺν σοι οὐκ [|]invisible, [|]unknown
σοῦ μὲν
γὰρ κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάρχει αὐτοῖς, κρατουμένου δέ
σου ἐλευθερία.

«Εἰ δὲ καὶ τῆς χώρας [|]foresee, think ἤδη τι δεῖ ὥς σῆς
[|]of
οὔσης, [|]which, ἂν οἷε [|]unaffected, κὼν μᾶλλον αὐτὴν
[|]whichever [|]impassive
εἶναι, εἰ οὗτοι οἱ [|]soldier, [|]receive, [|]recover, [|]demand pay-
[|]mercenary [|]take aside, cut off [|]ment; accuse
εἰρήνην [|]leave behind, [|]come, go , ἢ εἰ οὗτοί τε μένοιν
[|]abandon
ὥς ἐν πολεμῷ σύ τε ἄλλους πειρῶο πλέονας τούτων
ἔχων |encamp against δεομένους τῶν |fit, suitable ,
|small coin δὲ [|]which, ἂν πλέον [|]consume, , εἰ τούτοις τὸ
[|]whichever [|]spend on
|owe, should, if only ἵσθῆι, ἢ εἰ ταῦτά τε |owe, should, if ὄν
τε κρείττονας δέοι σε [|]rent out; (pass)
[|]be hired

«Ἀλλὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδῃ, ὥς πρὸς ἐμὲ [|]show, , [|]very great
[|]disclose

supposing our soldiers undertake to serve with more enthusiasm, if the debt you owe to them be first exacted; and the Lacedaemonians, who need their services, consent to this request. It is plain, at any rate, that the Thracians, now prostrate at your feet, would display far more enthusiasm in attacking, than in assisting you; for your mastery means their slavery, and your defeat their liberty.

”Again, the country is now yours, and from this time forward you have to make provision for what is yours; and how will you best secure it an immunity from ill? Either these soldiers receive their dues and go, leaving a legacy of peace behind, or they stay and occupy an enemy’s country, whilst you endeavour, by aid of a still larger army, to open a new campaign and turn them out; and your new troops will also need provisions. Or again, which will be the greater drain on your purse? to pay off your present debt, or, with that still owing, to bid for more troops, and of a better quality?

«Heracleides, as he used to prove to me, finds the sum excessive. But surely it is a

vocabulary

αἰτέω ask for ~etiology
ἀπαιτέω demand to have returned
ἀργύριον small coin
ἀριθμός number
δέκατος tenth ~decimal
διάκειμαι be in a condition
ἐνιαυτός cycle of a year
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
κτάομαι acquire, possess
μάρτυς witness

ὅμνυμι (ὅ) swear
ὀρίζω divide; ordain, define ~horizon
προνοέω foresee, think of ~paranoia
πρόσδοος (f) approach, procession; a rent
πώποτε never
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand; submit to

δοκεῖ τοῦτο τὸ ἀργύριον εἶναι. ἡ μὲν πολὺ γέ ἐστιν ἔλαττον νῦν σοι καὶ λαβεῖν τοῦτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι ἢ πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς σέ δέκατον τούτου μέρος. οὐ γὰρ ἀριθμὸς ἐστιν ὁ ὀρίζων τὸ πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ δύναμις τοῦ τε ἀποδιδόντος καὶ λαμβάνοντος. σοὶ δὲ νῦν ἢ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν πρόσσδος πλείων ἔσται ἢ ἔμπροσθεν τὰ παρόντα πάντα ἃ ἐκέκτησο.

«Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Σεύθη, ταῦτα ὡς φίλου ὄντος σου προνουμήην, ὅπως σύ τε ἄξιος δοκοίης εἶναι ὧν οἱ θεοὶ σοι ἔδωκαν ἀγαθῶν ἐγὼ τε μὴ διαφθαρείην ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν βουλόμενος κακῶς ποιῆσαι δυνηθείην σὺν ταύτῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ οὐτ' ἂν εἴ σοι πάλιν βουλοίμην βοηθῆσαι, ἱκανὸς ἂν γενοίμην. οὕτω γὰρ πρὸς με ἡ στρατιὰ διάκειται. καίτοι αὐτόν σε μάρτυρα σὺν θεοῖς εἰδόσι ποιοῦμαι ὅτι οὔτε ἔχω παρὰ σοῦ ἐπὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις οὐδὲν οὔτε ἤτησα πώποτε εἰς τὸ ἴδιον τὰ ἐκείνων οὔτε ἃ ὑπέσχου μοι ἀπήτησα· ὁμνυμι δέ σοι μηδὲ ἀποδιδόντος δέξασθαι ἂν, εἰ μὴ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμελλον

δοκεῖ τοῦτο τὸ |small coin εἶναι. ἡ μὴν πολὺ γέ ἐστιν
 ἔλαττον νῦν σοι καὶ λαβεῖν τοῦτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι ἢ πρὶν
 ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς σέ |tenth τούτου μέρος. οὐ γὰρ
 |number ἐστιν ὁ |divide; or- πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ
 |dain, define
 δύναμις τοῦ τε ἀποδιδόντος καὶ λαμβάνοντος. σοὶ δὲ νῦν
 ἡ κατ' |cycle of a|approach, pro-είων ἐστὶ ἡ ἔμπροσθεν τὰ
 |year |cession; a rent
 παρόντα πάντα ἃ |acquire .

«Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ Σεύθη, ταῦτα ὡς φίλου ὄντος σου
 |foresee, think of, ὅπως σύ τε ἄξιος δοκοίης εἶναι ὧν οἱ θεοί
 σοι ἔδωκαν ἀγαθῶν ἐγὼ τε μὴ διαφθαρεῖν ἐν τῇ |army
 εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν βουλόμενος κακῶς
 ποιῆσαι δυνηθείην σὺν ταύτῃ τῇ |army οὐτ' ἂν εἴ σοι
 πάλιν βουλοίμην βοηθῆσαι, ἱκανὸς ἂν γενοίμην. οὕτω γὰρ
 πρὸς με ἡ στρατιὰ |be in a condi-|and yet; and in fact;|witness
 |tion |although
 σὺν θεοῖς εἰδόσι ποιοῦμαι ὅτι οὐτε ἔχω παρὰ σοῦ ἐπὶ τοῖς
 |soldier, οὐδὲν οὐτε |ask for |never εἰς τὸ ἴδιον τὰ
 |mercenary
 ἐκείνων οὐτε ἃ |promise μοι |demand |swear δέ σοι μηδὲ
 |to have
 ἀποδιδόντος δέξασθαι ἂν, εἰ μὴ καὶ οἱ |returned |soldier, ἔμελλον
 |mercenary

far less serious thing for you to take and pay it back to-day than it would have been to pay the tithe of it, before we came to you; since the limit between less and more is no fixed number, but depends on the relative capacity of payer and recipient, and your yearly income now is larger than the whole property which you possessed in earlier days.

"Well, Seuthes, for myself these remarks are the expression of friendly forethought for a friend. They are expressed in the double hope that you may show yourself worthy of the good things which the gods have given you, and that my reputation may not be ruined with the army. For I must assure you that to-day, if I wished to injure a foe, I could not do so with this army. Nor again, if I wished to come and help you, should I be competent to the task; such is the disposition of the troops towards me. And yet I call you to witness, along with the gods who know, that never have I received anything from you on account of the soldiers. Never to this day have I, to my private gain, asked for what was theirs, nor even claimed the promises which were made to myself; and I swear to you, not even had you proposed to pay me my dues, would I have accepted them, unless the soldiers also had been going to receive theirs too;

vocabulary

αἰσχρός shameful
ἀργύριον small coin
ἀρετή goodness, excellence
γενναιότης -τος (f) nobility; (land)
 fertility
διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
 ~practice
δικαιοσύνη justice
ἐγκαλέω demand payment; accuse
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
καταμανθάνω examine, observe
κατανοέω notice, realize, learn
κατηγορέω accuse; indicate
κτῆμα -τος (n, 3) possession
λαμπρός brilliant ~lamp

λήρος idle talk
μέλος -ους (n, 3) limb; melody
μέλω concern, interest, be one's
 responsibility
περιοράω look around; watch; permit
πλουτέω be rich
σπανίζω be scarce; lack; use up
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
συναπολαμβάνω receive in common
 or at once
συνήδομαι rejoice, sympathize with
σφάλλω overthrow, balk, stagger
τιμάω (i) honor, exalt
ψέγω blame, censure

τὰ ἐαυτῶν συναπολαμβάνειν. αἰσχρὸν γὰρ ἦν τὰ μὲν ἐμὰ διαπεπρᾶχθαι, τὰ δ' ἐκείνων περιδεῖν κακῶς ἔχοντα ἄλλως τε καὶ τιμώμενον ὑπ' ἐκείνων. καίτοι Ἡρακλείδῃ γε λῆρος πάντα δοκεῖ εἶναι πρὸς τὸ ἀργύριον ἔχειν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπον· ἐγὼ δέ, ὦ Σεύθη, οὐδὲν νομίζω ἀνδρὶ ἄλλως τε καὶ ἄρχοντι κάλλιον εἶναι κτῆμα οὐδὲ λαμπρότερον ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναιότητος. ὁ γὰρ ταῦτα ἔχων πλουτεῖ μὲν ὄντων φίλων πολλῶν, πλουτεῖ δὲ ἄλλων βουλομένων γενέσθαι, καὶ εὖ μὲν πράττων ἔχει τοὺς συνησθησομένους, ἐὰν δέ τι σφαλῇ, οὐ σπανίζει τῶν βοηθησόντων. ἀλλὰ γὰρ εἰ μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἔργων κατέμαθες ὅτι σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς φίλος ἦν, μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν λόγων δύνασαι τοῦτο γινῶναι, ἀλλὰ τοὺς τῶν στρατιωτῶν λόγους πάντας κατανόησον· παρήσθα γὰρ καὶ ἤκουες ἃ ἔλεγον οἱ ψέγειν ἐμὲ βουλόμενοι. κατηγοροῦν γάρ μου πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους ὥς σὲ περὶ πλείονος ποιοίμην ἢ Λακεδαιμονίους, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐνεκάλουν ἐμοὶ ὥς μᾶλλον μέλει μοι ὅπως τὰ σὰ καλῶς ἔχοι ἢ ὅπως τὰ ἐαυτῶν· ἔφασαν

τὰ ἐαυτῶν |receive in common or |shameful γὰρ ἦν τὰ μὲν
 |at once
 ἐμὰ |travel over, ac-, τὰ δ' ἐκείνων περιδεῖν κακῶς ἔχοντα
 |comply
 ἄλλως τε καὶ |honor ὑπ' ἐκείνων. |and yet; ^{ττ}and in εἶδη γε
 |fact; although
 |idle talk ἅντα δοκεῖ εἶναι πρὸς τὸ |small coin ἔχειν ἐκ παντὸς
 τρόπου· ἐγὼ δέ, ὦ Σεύθη, οὐδὲν νομίζω ἀνδρὶ ἄλλως
 τε καὶ ἄρχοντι κάλλιον εἶναι |possession ὅδε |brilliant
 |excellence καὶ |justice καὶ |nobility; (land). ὁ γὰρ ταῦτα
 |fertility
 ἔχων |be rich μὲν ὄντων φίλων πολλῶν, |be rich δὲ
 ἄλλων βουλομένων γενέσθαι, καὶ εὖ μὲν πράττων ἔχει
 τοὺς |rejoice, sympathize, εἰς δέ τι |overthrow, ὃ |be scarce; ὅν
 |with |balk |lack; use up
 βοηθησόντων. ἀλλὰ γὰρ εἰ μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἔργων |examine,
 |observe
 ὅτι σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς φίλος ἦν, μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν
 λόγων δύνασαι τοῦτο γινῶναι, ἀλλὰ τοὺς τῶν |soldier,
 |mercenary
 λόγους πάντας |notice, realize, παρήσθα γὰρ καὶ ἤκουες ἃ
 |learn
 ἔλεγον οἱ |blame, ἐμὲ βουλόμενοι. |accuse; γάρ μου
 |censure |indicate
 πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους ὥς σὲ περὶ πλείονος ποιοίμην ἢ
 Λακεδαιμονίους, αὐτοὶ δ' |demand pay-^τοὶ ὥς μᾶλλον μέλει
 |ment; accuse
 μοι ὅπως τὰ σὰ καλῶς ἔχοι ἢ ὅπως τὰ ἐαυτῶν· ἔφασαν

how could I? How shameful it would have been in me, so to have secured my own interests, whilst I disregarded the disastrous state of theirs, I being so honoured by them. Of course to the mind of Heracleides this is all silly talk; since the one great object is to keep money by whatever means. That is not my tenet, Seuthes. I believe that no fairer or brighter jewel can be given to a man, and most of all a prince, than the threefold grace of valour, justice, and generosity. He that possesses these is rich in the multitude of friends which surround him; rich also in the desire of others to be included in their number. While he prospers, he is surrounded by those who will rejoice with him in his joy; or if misfortune overtake him, he has no lack of sympathisers to give him help. However, if you have failed to learn from my deeds that I was, heart and soul, your friend; if my words are powerless to reveal the fact to-day, I would at least direct your attention to what the soldiers said; you were standing by and heard what those who sought to blame me said. They accused me to the Lacedaemonians, and the point of their indictment was that I set greater store by yourself than by the Lacedaemonians; but, as regards themselves, the charge was that I took more pains to secure the success

vocabulary

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
αἷτιος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
αἰτίος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
ἀναέξω enlarge, increase
ἀποδείκνυμι (ῶ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἄτιμος (ι) without honor
ἐγκαλέω demand payment; accuse
ἐμπίμπλημι fill with
ἐνοράω look at, notice something in
εὐεργεσία good deed, public service
 ~ergonomics
εὖνοια good will, gift
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
κακόνοια ill-will
κατανοέω notice, realize, learn
καταπράσσω accomplish, build

~practice
καταράομαι (αᾶα) curse
μισθός reward, wages
ξένιος of hospitality ~xenophobe
ὄμμα -τος (n, 3) eye
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
παραλαμβάνω receive, undertake,
 associate with
περιοράω look around; watch; permit
πότερος which, whichever of two
προθυμέομαι (ῶ) be eager
προθυμία (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
προΐημι send forth, abandon
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
ὑπηρετέω serve
ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do
 ~ischemia

δέ με καὶ δῶρα ἔχειν παρὰ σοῦ. καίτοι τὰ δῶρα ταῦτα
 πότερον οἶει αὐτοὺς κακόνοιάν τινα ἐνιδόντας μοι πρὸς
 σὲ αἰτιᾶσθαι με ἔχειν παρὰ σοῦ ἢ προθυμίαν πολλήν περὶ
 σὲ κατανοήσαντας;

«Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι πάντας ἀνθρώπους νομίζειν εὖνοιαν δεῖν
 ἀποδείκνυσθαι τούτῳ παρ' οὗ ἂν δῶρά τις λαμβάνῃ. σὺ
 δὲ πρὶν μὲν ὑπηρετῆσαί τί σοι ἐμὲ ἐδέξω ἡδέως καὶ ὄμμασι
 καὶ φωνῇ καὶ ξενίοις καὶ ὅσα ἔσοιτο ὑπισχνούμενος
 οὐκ ἐνεπίμπλασο· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέπραξας ἃ ἐβούλου καὶ
 γεγένησαι ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην μέγιστος, νῦν οὕτω με
 ἄτιμον ὄντα ἐν τοῖς στρατιώταις τολμᾷς περιορᾶν; ἀλλὰ
 μὴν ὅτι σοι δόξει ἀποδοῦναι πιστεύω καὶ τὸν χρόνον
 διδάξειν σε καὶ αὐτόν γέ σε οὐχὶ ἀνέξεσθαι τοὺς σοὶ
 προεμένους εὐεργεσίαν ὀρώντά σοι ἐγκαλοῦντας. δέομαι
 οὖν σου, ὅταν ἀποδιδῶς, προθυμεῖσθαι ἐμὲ παρὰ τοῖς
 στρατιώταις τοιοῦτον ποιῆσαι οἷόνπερ καὶ παρέλαβες.

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης κατηράσατο τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ μὴ
 πάλαι ἀποδεδόσθαι τὸν μισθόν· καὶ πάντες Ἡρακλείδην

δέ με καὶ δῶρα ἔχειν παρὰ σοῦ. |and yet; and in, |fact; although
|fact; although

|which, |ill-will |τινα |look at, notice-ι |πρὸς
|whichever |something in

σέ |blame με ἔχειν παρὰ σοῦ ἢ |zeal, alacrity πολλὴν περὶ

σέ |notice, realize,
|learn

«Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι πάντας ἀνθρώπους νομίζω |good will, gift

|show, point out; ap- |ἴτω παρ' οὗ ἂν δῶρά τις λαμβάνη. σὺ
|point; (mid) declare

δὲ πρὶν μὲν |serve τί σοι ἐμὲ ἐδέξω |sweet καὶ |eye

καὶ φωνῇ καὶ |of hospitality ὅσα ἔσσιτο |promise, agree

οὐκ |fill with ἐπεὶ δὲ |accomplish, ἂ ἐβούλου καὶ
|build

γεγένησαι ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην μέγιστος, νῦν οὕτω με

|without ὄντα ἐν τοῖς |soldier, |τολμᾶς |look around; ἅ
|honor |mercenary |watch; permit

μὴν ὅτι σοι δόξει ἀποδοῦναι πιστεύω καὶ τὸν χρόνον

διδάξειν σε καὶ αὐτόν γέ σε οὐχὶ |enlarge, τοὺς σοὶ
|increase

προεμένους |good deed, |ῥωντά σοι |demand pay- δέομαι
|public service |ment; accuse

οὖν σου, ὅταν ἀποδιδῶς, |be eager ἐμὲ παρὰ τοῖς

|soldier, |τοιούτον ποιῆσαι οἶόν περ καὶ |receive, undertake, associate
|mercenary |with

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης |curse τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ μὴ

πάλα ἀποδεδόσθαι τὸν |reward, καὶ πάντες Ἡρακλείδην
|wages

of your interests than their own. They suggested that I had actually taken gifts from you. Was it, do you suppose, because they detected some ill-will in me towards you that they made the allegation? Was it not rather, that they had noticed my abundant zeal on your behalf?

«All men believe, I think, that a fund of kindly feeling is due to him from whom we accept gifts. But what is your behaviour? Before I had ministered to you in any way, or done you a single service, you welcomed me kindly with your eyes, your voice, your hospitality, and you could not sate yourself with promises of all the fine things that were to follow. But having once achieved your object, and become the great man you now are, as great indeed as I could make you, you can stand by and see me degraded among my own soldiers! Well, time will teach you — that I fully believe — to pay whatever seems to you right, and even without the lessons of that teacher you will hardly care to see those who have spent themselves in benefiting you, become your accusers. Only, when you do pay your debt, I beg of you to use your best endeavour to right me with the soldiers. Leave me at least where you found me; that is all I ask.”

After listening to this appeal, Seuthes called down curses on him, whose fault it was, that the debt had not long ago been paid, and, if the general suspicion was correct, this was Heracleides.

vocabulary

ἀνόμοιος different, dissimilar
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἀποστερέω despoil, defraud
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
ἄτιμος (ι) without honor
διανοέω have in mind
ἐντεῦθεν thence
ἐντιμος (ι) honored
ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise
ὀπλίτης -ου (ι, m, 1) hoplite, heavy
 infantryman ~hoplite
ὅπου where

περιοράω look around; watch; permit
πρόνοια foresight, providence
πώποτε never
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
τοίνυν well, then
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand;
 submit to
ὑποπτέω guess, observe, be
 suspicious of
χίλιοι (ιι) thousand ~kilo-
χωρίον area; downwards

τοῦτον ὑπώπτεισαν εἶναι· «ἐγὼ γάρ,» ἔφη, «οὔτε διανοήθην πώποτε ἀποστερήσαι ἀποδώσω τε.»

Ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν· «Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν διανοῇ ἀποδιδόναι, νῦν ἐγὼ σου δέομαι δι' ἐμοῦ ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ μὴ περιδεῖν με διὰ σὲ ἀνομοίως ἔχοντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε πρὸς σὲ ἀφικόμεθα.»

Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ' οὔτ' ἐν τοῖς στρατιώταις ἔσει δι' ἐμὲ ἀτιμότερος ἂν τε μένης παρ' ἐμοὶ χιλίους μόνους ὀπλίτας ἔχων, ἐγὼ σοι τά τε χωρία ἀποδώσω καὶ τᾶλλα ἃ ὑπεσχόμην.»

Ὁ δὲ πάλιν εἶπε· «Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὕτως οὐχ οἶόν τε· ἀπόπεμπε δὲ ἡμᾶς.»

«Καὶ μὴν,» ἔφη ὁ Σεύθης, «καὶ ἀσφαλέστερόν γέ σοι οἶδα ὄν παρ' ἐμοὶ μένειν ἢ ἀπιέναι.»

Ὁ δὲ πάλιν εἶπεν· «Ἄλλὰ τὴν μὲν σὴν πρόνοιαν ἐπαινῶ· ἐμοὶ δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἶόν τε· ὅπου δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἐντιμότερος ᾶ, νόμιζε καὶ σοὶ τοῦτο ἀγαθὸν ἔσεσθαι.»

τοῦτον |guess, observe, εἶναι· «ἐγὼ γάρ,» ἔφη, «οὔτε
|be suspicious of

διενοήθην |never |despoil, ἀποδώσω τε.»
|defraud

|thence πάλιν εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν· «Ἐπεὶ |well, then· ἀνοῇ

ἀποδιδόναι, νῦν ἐγὼ σου δέομαι δι' ἐμοῦ ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ

μὴ περιδεῖν με διὰ σέ |different, ἔχοντα ἐν τῇ |army νῦν
|dissimilar

τε καὶ ὅτε πρὸς σέ ἀφικόμεθα.»

Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ' οὔτ' ἐν τοῖς |soldier, ἔσει δι' ἐμέ
|mercenary

|without ἄν τε μένης παρ' ἐμοὶ χιλίους μόνους |hoplite, heavy in-
|honor |fantryman

ἔχων, ἐγὼ σοι τά τε |area; downwards· ὡ καὶ τὰλλα ἂ

|promise . . .»

Ὁ δὲ πάλιν εἶπε· «Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὔτως οὐχ οἶόν τε·

|send away δὲ ἡμᾶς.»

«Καὶ μὴν,» ἔφη ὁ Σεύθης, «καὶ |safe, easy, steady, γέ σοι οἶδα
|careful

ὄν παρ' ἐμοὶ μένειν ἢ ἀπιέναι.»

Ὁ δὲ πάλιν εἶπεν· «Ἀλλὰ τὴν μὲν σὴν |foresight,
|providence

|concur ἐμοὶ δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἶόν τε· |where δ' ἂν ἐγὼ

|honored ὦ, νόμιζε καὶ σοὶ τοῦτο ἀγαθὸν ἔσεσθαι.»

«For myself,” said Seuthes, «I never had any idea of robbing you of your just dues. I will repay.” Then Xenophon rejoined: «Since you are minded to pay, I only ask that you will do so through me, and will not suffer me on your account to hold a different position in the army from what I held when we joined you.” He replied: «As far as that goes, so far from holding a less honoured position among your own men on my account, if you will stay with me, keeping only a thousand heavy infantry, I will deliver to you the fortified places and everything I promised.”

The other answered: «On these terms I may not accept them, only let us go free.”

«Nay, but I know,” said Seuthes, «that it is safer for you to bide with me than to go away.”

Then Xenophon again: «For your forethought I thank you, but I may not stay. Somewhere I may rise to honour, and that, be sure, shall redound to your gain also.”

Thereupon Seuthes spoke: «Of silver

vocabulary

ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
ἀπειλή boast, threat
ἀργύριον small coin
γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at
διαδίδωμι distribute, send out
διατίθημι arrange; set out goods for sale ~thesis
ἐντεῦθεν thence
ἑξακόσιοι 600
ἐξικνέομαι arrive at
ἐπικίνδυνος (ὅ) in danger, dangerous
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
λαφυροπώλης -ου (ὅ, m, 1) booty seller
μισθός reward, wages
οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

ὄμηρος insurance, hostage
παραλαμβάνω receive, undertake, associate with
πέτρος rock ~petrified
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
προσθέω run to
προσλαμβάνω add, borrow, take hold, help
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy
συμπέμπω send with ~pomp
τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight ~talent
τετρακισχίλιοι 4000 ~kilo-
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand; submit to
ὕστεραῖος the next; later

Ἐντεῦθεν λέγει Σεύθης· «Ἀργύριον μὲν οὐκ ἔχω ἀλλ' ἢ μικρόν τι, καὶ τοῦτό σοι δίδωμι, τάλαντον· βοῦς δὲ ἑξακοσίους καὶ πρόβατα εἰς τετρακισχίλια καὶ ἀνδράποδα εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν. ταῦτα λαβὼν καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἀδικησάντων σε ὁμήρους προσλαβὼν ἄπιθι.»

Γελάσας ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· «Ἦν οὖν μὴ ἐξικνῆται ταῦτ' εἰς τὸν μισθόν, τίνος τάλαντον φήσω ἔχειν; ἄρ' οὐκ, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἐπικίνδυνόν μοί ἐστιν, ἀπιόντα γε ἄμεινον φυλάττεσθαι πέτρους; ἤκουες δὲ τὰς ἀπειλάς.»

Τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ ἔμεινε. Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἀπέδωκέ τε αὐτοῖς ἃ ὑπέσχετο καὶ τοὺς ἐλῶντας συνέπεμψε. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται τέως μὲν ἔλεγον ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν οἴχοιτο ὡς Σεύθην οἰκήσων καὶ ἃ ὑπέσχετο αὐτῷ ληψόμενος· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον, ἥσθησαν καὶ προσέθεον. Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδε Χαρμῖνόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον· «Ταῦτα,» ἔφη, «σέσωσται δι' ὑμᾶς τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ παραδίδωμι αὐτὰ ἐγὼ ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ διαθέμενοι διάδοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ.» οἱ μὲν οὖν παραλαβόντες καὶ λαφυροπώλας καταστήσαντες

|thence λέγει Σεύθης· «|small coin μὲν οὐκ ἔχω ἀλλ'
 ἢ μικρόν τι, καὶ τοῦτό σοι δίδωμι, |scale, a unit βούς δὲ
 |of weight
 |600 καὶ |cattle, flocks,|4000 καὶ |slave
 |herds
 εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν. ταῦτα λαβὼν καὶ τοὺς τῶν
 ἀδικησάντων σε |insurance, |add, borrow, |πιθι.»
 |hostage |take hold, help
 |laugh, ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· «Ἦν οὖν μὴ |arrive at ταῦτ'
 |smile
 εἰς τὸν |reward, , τίνος |scale, a unit φήσω ἔχειν; ἅρ' οὐκ,
 |wages |of weight
 ἐπειδὴ καὶ |in danger, dangerous' _τιν, ἀπιόντα γε |better
 φυλάττεσθαι |rock , ἤκουες δὲ τὰς |boast, _»
 |threat
 Τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ ἔμεινε. Τῇ δ' |the next; later_ ἔδωκέ τε
 αὐτοῖς ἃ |promise καὶ τοὺς ἐλῶντας |send with . οἱ δὲ
 |soldier, τέως μὲν ἔλεγον ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν οἴχοιτο ὡς
 |mercenary
 Σεύθην |inhabit καὶ ἃ |promise αὐτῷ ληψόμενος· ἐπεὶ
 δὲ εἶδον, |be pleased, ἐν-|run to Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδε
 |joy
 Χαρμῖνόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον· «Ταῦτα,» ἔφη, «σέσωσται
 δι' ὑμᾶς τῇ |army καὶ παραδίδωμι αὐτὰ ἐγὼ ὑμῖν·
 ὑμεῖς δὲ |arrange; set out_δοτε τῇ |army » οἱ μὲν οὖν
 |goods for sale
 |receive, undertake, as-|booty seller καταστήσαντες
 |sociate with

I have but little; that little, however, I give to you, one talent; but of beeves I can give you six hundred head, and of sheep four thousand, and of slaves six score. These take, and the hostages besides, who wronged you, and begone."

Xenophon laughed and said: «But supposing these all together do not amount to the pay; for whom is the talent, shall I say? It is a little dangerous for myself, is it not? I think I had better be on the look-out for stones when I return. You heard the threats?"

So for the moment he stayed there, but the next day Seuthes gave up to them what he had promised, and sent an escort to drive the cattle. The soldiers at first maintained that Xenophon had gone to take up his abode with Seuthes, and to receive what he had been promised; so when they saw him they were pleased, and ran to meet him. And Xenophon, seeing Charminus and Polynicus, said: «Thanks to your intervention, this much has been saved for the army. My duty is to deliver this fraction over to your keeping; do you divide and distribute it to the soldiers." Accordingly they took the property and appointed official vendors of the booty, and

vocabulary

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue
 ἀπαντάω encounter, come upon
 διαπλέω sail through
 ἐντεῦθεν thence
 ἐντοίχιος on the walls
 ἐπάγνυμι (ῑ) break
 ἐπάγω drive game; induce belief
 ~demagogue
 ἐπιάχω shout assent or defiance
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
 ἐπόμενυμι (ῑ) swear by
 ἐρωτάω ask about something
 ἐφόδιον supplies, funding
 ἐφόδιος for a journey
 θύω (ῑ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis
 ξένιος of hospitality ~xenophobe
 οἴκαδε homeward ~economics
 πόσος how many, much, far?
 πρόσσειμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
 πωλέω sell
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
 συνήδομαι rejoice, sympathize with
 φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon
 φυγή flight, means of escape ~fugitive
 χρυσίον (ῑ) gold coin
 ψῆφος (f) pebble, vote, decree, sentence

ἐπώλουν, καὶ πολλὴν εἶχον αἰτίαν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ οὐ προσήει, ἀλλὰ φανερὸς ἦν οἴκαδε παρασκευαζόμενος· οὐ γάρ πω ψῆφος αὐτῷ ἐπῆκτο Ἀθήνησι περὶ φυγῆς. προσελθόντες δὲ αὐτῷ οἱ ἐπιτήδειοι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐδέοντο μὴ ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἀπαγάγοι τὸ στράτευμα καὶ Θίβρωνι παραδοίῃ.

7.8

Ἐντεῦθεν διέπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον, καὶ ἀπαντᾷ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι Εὐκλείδης μάντις Φλειάσιος ὁ Κλεαγόρου υἱὸς τοῦ τὰ ἐντοίχια ἐν Λυκείῳ γεγραφότος. οὗτος συνήδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι ἐσέσωστο, καὶ ἡρώτα αὐτὸν πόσον χρυσίον ἔχοι. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ ἐπομόσας εἶπεν ἢ μὴν ἔσεσθαι μηδὲ ἐφόδιον ἱκανὸν οἴκαδε ἀπιόντι, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἅ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν εἶχεν. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ οὐκ ἐπίστευεν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔπεμψαν Λαμψακηνοὶ ξένια τῷ Ξενοφῶντι καὶ ἔθυε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι, παρεστήσατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην· ἰδὼν δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ ὁ Εὐκλείδης εἶπεν ὅτι πείθοιτο αὐτῷ μὴ εἶναι χρήματα. «Ἄλλ' οἶδα,» ἔφη, «ὅτι καὶ μέλλῃ ποτὲ

|sell , καὶ πολλὴν εἶχον αἰτίαν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ οὐ
|approach, ἀλλὰ |visible, ^{γ.} |homeward ^{π.} ρασκευαζόμενος
|conspicuous
οὐ γάρ πω |pebble, vote, δε- |πῆκτο Ἀθήνησι περὶ |flight, means
|cree, sentence |of escape
|come forward, sur- αὐτῷ οἱ |fit, suitable ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ
|render, come in
ἐδέοντο μὴ ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν |lead away, back |army καὶ
Θίβρωνι παραδοίῃ.

7.8

|thence |sail through εἰς Λάμβρακον, καὶ |encounter, come upon
Ξενοφῶντι Εὐκλείδης |seer Φλειάσιος ὁ Κλεαγόρου υἱὸς
τοῦ τὰ |on the walls Λυκείῳ γεγραφότος. οὗτος |rejoice, sym-
|pathize with
τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι ἐσέσωστο, καὶ |ask αὐτὸν |how many, much,
|far?
|gold coin ἔχοι. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ |swear by εἶπεν ἥ μὴν ἔσεσθαι
μηδὲ ἐφόδιον ἱκανὸν |homeward .ιόντι, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο τὸν
ἵππον καὶ ἅ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν εἶχεν. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ οὐκ ἐπίστευεν.
ἐπεὶ δ' ἔπεμψαν Λαμβρακηνοὶ |of hospitality Ξενοφῶντι καὶ
|rush; sacrifice ὕλῳ, παρεστήσατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην· ἰδὼν
δὲ τὰ ἱερά ὁ Εὐκλείδης εἶπεν ὅτι πείθοιτο αὐτῷ μὴ εἶναι
χρήματα. «Ἄλλ' οἶδα,» ἔφη, «ὅτι καὶ μέλλῃ ποτὲ

in the end incurred considerable blame. Xenophon held aloof. In fact it was no secret that he was making his preparations to return home, for as yet the vote of banishment had not been passed at Athens. But the authorities in the camp came to him and begged him not to go away until he had conducted the army to its destination, and handed it over to Thibron.

7.8

From this place they sailed across to Lampsacus, and here Xenophon was met by Eucleides the soothsayer, a Phliasian, the son of Cleagoras, who painted «the dreams” in the Lycium. Eucleides congratulated Xenophon upon his safe return, and asked him how much gold he had got? and Xenophon had to confess: «Upon my word, I shall have barely enough to get home, unless I sell my horse, and what I have about my person.” The other could not credit the statement. Now when the Lampsacenes sent gifts of hospitality to Xenophon, and he was sacrificing to Apollo, he requested the presence of Eucleides; and the latter, seeing the victims, said: «Now I believe what you said about having no money. But I am

vocabulary

ἀποδημέω be absent, abroad
 ἀπολαμβάνω receive, recover, take
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy
 δαρεικός Persian coin
 εἴτα then, therefore, next
 εἶωθα be accustomed, in the habit
 ἐμπόδιος getting in the way
 ἔνδεια a lack, need
 ἐνδύω go into, put on
 ἐντεῦθεν thence
 ἐπέρομαι ask as well; ask then
 ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
 θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
 καθά just as, as if
 καλλιερέω have good signs
 μειλίχιος pleasing, gentle
 ξενόω treat as a guest
 οἴκοι at home ~economics

ὄλοκαυτέω bring a whole offering
 πάτριος of the father(s), ancestral
 πέρνημι export, sell as a slave ~porno
 πιπράσκω export, sell as a slave
 ~porno
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
 σαυτοῦ yourself
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
 συμβουλεύω give advice; (mid) consult
 ~volunteer
 συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear
 συνομολογέω agree
 ὑπερβαίνω pass, transgress ~basis
 ὑποπτεύω guess, observe, be
 suspicious of
 ὕστεραίῳς the next; later
 χοῖρος young fattened pig

ἔσεσθαι, φαίνεται τι ἐμπόδιον, ἂν μηδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαυτῷ.»
 συνωμολόγει ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· «Ἐμπόδιος
 γάρ σοι ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ μειλίχιός ἐστι,» καὶ ἐπήρετο εἰ ἤδη
 θύσειεν, ὥσπερ οἴκοι, ἔφη, «εἰώθειν ἐγὼ ὑμῖν θύεσθαι καὶ
 ὀλοκαυτεῖν.» ὁ δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἐξ ὅτου ἀπεδήμησε τεθυκέναι
 τούτῳ τῷ θεῷ. συνεβούλευσεν οὖν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καθὰ
 εἰώθει, καὶ ἔφη συνοίσειεν ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία
 Ξενοφῶν προσελθὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐθύετο καὶ ὠλοκαύτει
 χοίρους τῷ πατρίῳ νόμῳ, καὶ ἐκαλλιέρει. καὶ ταύτῃ
 τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφικνεῖται Βίων καὶ Ναυσικλείδης χρήματα
 δώσοντες τῷ στρατεύματι, καὶ ξενοῦνται τῷ Ξενοφῶντι
 καὶ ἵππον ὃν ἐν Λαμφάκῳ ἀπέδοτο πεντήκοντα δαρεικῶν,
 ὑποπτεύοντες αὐτὸν δι' ἔνδειαν πεπρακέναι, ὅτι ἤκουον
 αὐτὸν ἤδεσθαι τῷ ἵππῳ, λυσάμενοι ἀπέδοσαν καὶ τὴν
 τιμὴν οὐκ ἤθελον ἀπολαβεῖν.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος, καὶ ὑπερβάντες
 τὴν Ἰδην εἰς Ἄντανδρον ἀφικνοῦνται πρῶτον, εἶτα παρὰ
 θάλατταν πορευόμενοι τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς Θήβης πεδῖον.

ἔσεσθαι, φαίνεταιί τι |getting in the way, ἔν' ἄλλο, σὺ σαντῶ. »

|agree ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· «|getting in the way

γάρ σοι ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ |pleasing, ἔστι, » καὶ |ask as well; ἡδὴ
gentle |ask then

θύσειεν, ὥσπερ |at home ᾗ, «|be accustomed, μὴ θύεσθαι καὶ
in the habit

|bring a whole ὁ δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἐξ ὅτου |be absent, abroad ἔναι
offering

τούτῳ τῷ θεῷ. |give advice; οὖν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καθὰ
(mid) consult

|be accustomed, in|bring together; be |expedient; ἄγρε;|the next; later
the habit (mp) happen

Ξενοφῶν προσελθὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐθύετο καὶ |bring a whole
offering

young τῷ |of the father(s), , καὶ |have good signs καὶ ταύτη
fattened |ancestral

pig τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφικνεῖται Βίων καὶ Ναυσικλείδης χρήματα

δώσοντες τῷ |army , καὶ |treat as a guest Ξενοφῶντι

καὶ ἵππον ὃν ἐν Λαμψάκῳ ἀπέδοτο πεντήκοντα |Persian coin

|guess, observe, αὐτὸν δι' ἔνδειαν πεπρακέναι, ὅτι ἤκουον
be suspicious of

αὐτὸν |ἡδομαι?: be |pleased, enjoy; ὁρνεοὶ ἀπέδοσαν καὶ τὴν
|ἡδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy

τιμὴν οὐκ ἤθελον |receive, recover,
take aside, cut off

|thence ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος, καὶ |pass, transgress

τὴν Ἰδην εἰς Ἄντανδρον ἀφικνοῦνται πρῶτον, |then, there-
fore, next

θάλατταν πορευόμενοι τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς Θήβης πεδίον.

certain,” he continued, «if it were ever to come, there is an obstacle in the way. If nothing else, you are that obstacle yourself.” Xenophon admitted the force of that remark. Then the other: «Zeus Meilichios is an obstacle to you, I am sure,” adding in another tone of voice, «have you tried sacrificing to that god, as I was wont to sacrifice and offer whole burnt offerings for you at home?” Xenophon replied that since he had been abroad, he had not sacrificed to that god. Accordingly Eucleides counselled him to sacrifice in the old customary way: he was sure that his fortune would improve. The next day Xenophon went on to Ophrynum and sacrificed, offering a holocaust of swine, after the custom of his family, and the signs which he obtained were favourable. That very day Bion and Nausicleides arrived laden with gifts for the army. These two were hospitably entertained by Xenophon, and were kind enough to repurchase the horse he had sold in Lampsacus for fifty darics; suspecting that he had parted with it out of need, and hearing that he was fond of the beast they restored it to him, refusing to be remunerated.

From that place they marched through the Troad, and, crossing Mount Ida, arrived at Antandrus, and then pushed along the seaboard of Mysia

vocabulary

ἁλώσιμος easy to take
 ἀνεψιός cousin ~nepotism
 ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off;
 (intrans) ride away
 βιάζω use force on, violate
 βιάω use force against, overcome
 δειπνέω eat, dine
 ἐνταῦθα there, here
 ἐντεῦθεν thence
 ἑξακόσιοι 600
 θύω (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

καθηγέομαι lead
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
 μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis
 μεταδίδωμι give part of ~donate
 ξενόω treat as a guest
 ὁδεύω make one's way ~odometer
 Πέρσης Persian
 πιστός faithful; trustworthy
 συνεξέρχομαι go out with
 τριακόσιοι three hundred ~three

ἐντεῦθεν δι' Ἀδραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ ὁδεύσαντες εἰς
Καϊκού πεδῖον ἐλθόντες Πέργαμον καταλαμβάνουσι τῆς
Μυσίας.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ξενοῦται Ξενοφῶν Ἑλλάδι τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ
Ἐρετριέως γυναικὶ καὶ Γοργίωνος καὶ Γογγύλου μητρί.
αὕτη δ' αὐτῷ φράζει ὅτι Ἀσιδάτης ἐστὶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
ἀνὴρ Πέρσης· τοῦτον ἔφη αὐτόν, εἰ ἔλθοι τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν
τριακοσίοις ἀνδράσι, λαβεῖν ἂν καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα
καὶ παῖδας καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἶναι δὲ πολλά. ταῦτα
δὲ καθηγησομένους ἔπεμψε τὸν τε αὐτῆς ἀνεψιὸν καὶ
Δαφναγόραν, ὃν περὶ πλείστου ἐποιεῖτο. ἔχων οὖν ὁ
Ξενοφῶν τούτους παρ' ἑαυτῷ ἐθύετο. καὶ Βασίας ὁ
Ἥλείος μάντις παρὼν εἶπεν ὅτι κάλλιστα εἴη τὰ ἱερὰ
αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀλώσιμος εἴη. δειπνήσας οὖν ἐπορεύετο
τούς τε λοχαγοὺς τοὺς μάλιστα φίλους λαβὼν καὶ[...]
πιστοὺς γεγεννημένους διὰ παντός, ὅπως εὖ ποιῆσαι
αὐτούς. συνεξέρχονται δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἄλλοι βιασάμενοι εἰς
ἑξακοσίους· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἀπήλαινον, ἵνα μὴ μεταδοίεν

|thence δι' Ἀδραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ |make one's way

Καΐκου πεδίον ἐλθόντες Πέργαμον |seize, understand, catch, overtake;
| (mp) happen

Μυσίας.

|there, here δὴ |treat as a guest φῶν Ἑλλάδι τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ

Ἑρετριέως γυναικὶ καὶ Γοργίωνος καὶ Γογγύλου μητρὶ.

αὕτη δ' αὐτῷ φράζει ὅτι Ἀσιδάτης ἐστὶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ

ἀνὴρ Πέρσης· τοῦτον ἔφη αὐτόν, εἰ ἔλθοι τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν

|three ἀνδράσι, λαβεῖν ἂν καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα
|hundred

καὶ παῖδας καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἶναι δὲ πολλά. ταῦτα

δὲ |lead ἔπεμψε τόν τε αὐτῆς |cousin καὶ

Δαφναγόραν, ὃν περὶ πλείστου ἐποιεῖτο. ἔχων οὖν ὁ

Ξενοφῶν τούτους παρ' αὐτῷ |rush; sacrifice Βασίλειος ὁ

Ἥλεις |seer παρὼν εἶπεν ὅτι κάλλιστα εἴη τὰ ἱερὰ

αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ |easy to take ἔη. |eat, dine οὖν ἐπορεύετο

τούς τε |captain τοὺς μάλιστα φίλους λαβὼν καὶ [...]

|faithful; , γεννημένους διὰ παντός, ὅπως εὖ ποιήσαι
|trustworthy

αὐτούς. |go out with δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἄλλοι βιασάμενοι εἰς

|600 οἱ δὲ |captain |expel, excludé, ward|give part of
|off; (intrans) ride away

to the plain of Thebe. Thence they made their way through Adramytium and Certonus by Atarneus, coming into the plain of the Caicus, and so reached Pergamus in Mysia.

Here Xenophon was hospitably entertained at the house of Hellas, the wife of Gongylus the Eretrian, the mother of Gorgion and Gongylus. From her he learnt that Asidates, a Persian notable, was in the plain. «If you take thirty men and go by night, you will take him prisoner,” she said, «wife, children, money, and all; of money he has a store;” and to show them the way to these treasures, she sent her own cousin and Daphnagoras, whom she set great store by. So then Xenophon, with these two to assist, did sacrifice; and Basias, an Eleian, the soothsayer in attendance, said that the victims were as promising as could be, and the great man would be an easy prey. Accordingly, after dinner he set off, taking with him the officers who had been his staunchest friends and confidants throughout; as he wished to do them a good turn. A number of others came thrusting themselves on their company, to the number of six hundred, but the officers repelled them: «They had no notion of

vocabulary

ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
ἀποδιδράσκω escape
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
βουπόρος ox-piercing
διαμπερές right through; all the time, forever
διαφαίνω seem, show through
 ~photon
διορύσσω dig through; undermine
ἐγγύς near
ἐκβοηθέω sally, go to help
ἐκτοξεύω shoot out
ἐνδίδωμι hand over, lend, show, allow
ἐνδοθεν from within
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled
εὖρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind
κράζω croak, scream
μάχιμος warlike
μηρός thigh, femur
μισθοφόρος mercenary

ὀβελίσκος rod, obelisk
ὀγδοήκοντα eighty ~octopus
ὀκτακόσιοι 800
ὀκτώ eight ~octopus
ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite
παραιμέλω not pay attention to
παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet
πατάσσω beat (heart); strike
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
πέριξ all around
πλησίος near, neighboring
πλίνθος (f) brick, block
προμαχείων breastwork, battlement
πυργομαχέω assault a tower
πύργος ramparts, tower; line of troops
πυρσεύω kindle; signal by beacon-fires
τοῖχος wall of a house
τύρσις tower, castle
ὕψηλός high
χωρίον area; downwards

τὸ μέρος, ὡς ἐτοίμων δὴ χρημάτων.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τὰ μὲν περίξ
 ὄντα ἀνδράποδα τῆς τύρσιος καὶ χρήματα τὰ πλείστα
 ἀπέδρα αὐτοὺς παραμελοῦντας, ὡς τὸν Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν
 λάβοιεν καὶ τὰ ἐκείνου. πυργομαχοῦντες δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ
 ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρσιν ὑψηλὴ γὰρ ἦν καὶ μεγάλη
 καὶ προμαχεῶνας καὶ ἄνδρας πολλοὺς καὶ μαχίμους
 ἔχουσα, διορύττειν ἐπεχείρησαν τὸν πύργον. ὁ δὲ τοῖχος
 ἦν ἐπ' ὀκτὼ πλίνθων γήινων τὸ εὖρος. ἅμα δὲ τῇ
 ἡμέρᾳ διωρώρυκτο· καὶ ὡς τὸ πρῶτον διεφάνη, ἐπάταξεν
 ἔνδοθεν βουπόρῳ τις ὀβελίσκῳ διαμπερὲς τὸν μηρὸν
 τοῦ ἐγγυτάτῳ· τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐποιοῦν μὴδὲ
 παριέναι ἔτι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι. κεκραγόντων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ
 πυρσευόντων ἐκβοηθοῦσιν Ἰταμένης μὲν ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
 δύναμιν, ἐκ Κομανίας δὲ ὀπλῖται Ἀσσύριοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι
 ἱππεῖς καὶ οὗτοι βασιλέως μισθοφόροι ὡς ὀγδοήκοντα, καὶ
 ἄλλοι πελτασταὶ εἰς ὀκτακοσίους, ἄλλοι δ' ἐκ Παρθινίου,
 ἄλλοι δ' ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίον χωρίων καὶ

τὸ μέρος, ὡς εἰσὶν δὴ χρημάτων.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τὰ μὲν |all around

ὄντα |slave τῆς |tower, |castle καὶ χρήματα τὰ πλείστα

|escape αὐτοὺς |not pay attention to ὡς τὸν Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν

λάβοιεν καὶ τὰ ἐκείνου. |assault a tower δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ

ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν |tower, |castle ὑψηλὴ γὰρ ἦν καὶ μεγάλη

καὶ |breastwork, bat- |tlement καὶ ἄνδρας πολλοὺς καὶ |warlike

ἔχουσα, |dig through; |do, try, attack τὸν |wall, |tower . ὁ δὲ |wall of a house

ἦν ἐπ' |eight πλίνθων γηγίνων τὸ |width; (caps) |the east wind δὲ τῇ

ἡμέρᾳ |dig through; |undermine καὶ ὡς τὸ πρῶτον |seem, |show |beat (heart); strike

ἔνδοθεν |ox-piercing τις |rod, obelisk |right |through τὸν |thigh

τοῦ ἐγγυτάτω· τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν |shoot out ἐποιοῦν μηδὲ

|dangle; pass |over, allow ἡ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι. |croak, scream δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ

|kindle; signal by |sally, go to help |beacon-fires γαμένης μὲν ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ

δύναμιν, ἐκ Κομανίας δὲ ὀπλῖται Ἀσσύριοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι

ἱππεῖς καὶ οὗτοι βασιλέως μισθοφόροι ὡς |eighty , καὶ

ἄλλοι |light troops εἰς |800 , ἄλλοι δ' ἐκ Παρθενίου,

ἄλλοι δ' ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίων χωρίων καὶ

sharing their portion of the spoil," they said, «just as though the property lay already at their feet."

About midnight they arrived. The slaves occupying the precincts of the tower, with the mass of goods and chattels, slipped through their fingers, their sole anxiety being to capture Asidates and his belongings. So they brought their batteries to bear, but failing to take the tower by assault (since it was high and solid, and well supplied with ramparts, besides having a large body of warlike defenders), they endeavoured to undermine it. The wall was eight clay bricks thick, but by daybreak the passage was effected and the wall undermined. At the first gleam of light through the aperture, one of the defendants inside, with a large ox-spit, smote right through the thigh of the man nearest the hole, and the rest discharged their arrows so hotly that it was dangerous to come anywhere near the passage; and what with their shouting and kindling of beacon fires, a relief party at length arrived, consisting of Itabelius at the head of his force, and a body of Assyrian heavy infantry from Comania, and some Hyrcanian cavalry, the latter also being mercenaries of the king. There were eighty of them, and another detachment of light troops, about eight hundred, and more from Parthenium, and more again from Apollonia and the neighbouring places, also cavalry.

vocabulary

ἄθυμος (ῥ) having low morale ~fume
 ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
 ἄφοδος departure, return; toilet, shit
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
 ἐγγύς near
 Ἕλληγν Greek
 ἐνταῦθα there, here
 ἐντός within
 ἐπικειμαι impose; shut a door
 ἥμισυς half ~hemisphere
 θρασύς brave, strong
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain
 μετέχω partake of
 μόλις with difficulty, barely
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

πιέζω press, squeeze ~piezoelectric
 πλαίσιον frame, scaffolding
 πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
 προσέχω direct to; think about
 σκοπᾶω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
 συμβοηθέω help in aiding
 σφενδονᾶω sling
 σφενδονέω sling
 σφενδόνη sling
 τιτρώσκω wound, bring to grief
 ~trauma
 τόξευμα -τος (n, 3) arrow
 φυγή flight, means of escape ~fugitive

ἱππεῖς.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὥρα ἦν σκοπεῖν πῶς ἔσται ἡ ἄφοδος· καὶ λαβόντες ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ πρόβατα ἤλαυνον καὶ ἀνδράποδα ἐντὸς πλαισίου ποιησάμενοι, οὐ τοῖς χρήμασιν ἔτι προσέχοντες τὸν νοῦν, ἀλλὰ μὴ φυγὴ εἴη ἡ ἄφοδος, εἰ καταλιπόντες τὰ χρήματα ἀπίοιεν, καὶ οἳ τε πολέμοι θρασύτεροι εἶεν καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀθυμότεροι· νῦν δὲ ἀπῆσαν ὥς περὶ τῶν χρημάτων μαχοῦμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἑώρα Γογγύλος ὀλίγους μὲν τοὺς Ἑλληνας, πολλοὺς δὲ τοὺς ἐπικειμένους, ἐξέρχεται καὶ αὐτὸς βία τῆς μητρὸς ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν, βουλόμενος μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου· συνεβοήθει δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς ἐξ Ἀλυσάρνης καὶ Τευθρανίας ὁ ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου. οἱ δὲ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεὶ πάννυ ἤδη ἐπιέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων καὶ σφενδονῶν, πορευόμενοι κύκλῳ, ὅπως τὰ ὄπλα ἔχοιεν πρὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων, μόλις διαβαίνουνσι τὸν Κάρκασον ποταμόν, τετρωμένοι ἐγγὺς οἱ ἡμίσεις. ἐνταῦθα δὲ Ἀγασίας ὁ Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς τιτρώσκεται, τὸν πάντα χρόνον

ἰππεῖς.

|there, here δὴ ὥρα ἦν σκοπεῖν πῶς ἔσται ἢ |departure, re-
 |turn; toilet,
 λαβόντες ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ |cattle, flocks, |shit
 |herds λαννον καὶ
 |slave |within τλαισίου ποιησάμενοι, οὐ τοῖς χρήμασιν
 ἔτι |direct to; think τὸν νοῦν, ἀλλὰ μὴ |flight, |means|departure, |return;
 |about |of escape |toilet, shit
 εἰ |leave behind, τὰ χρήματα ἀπίοιεν, καὶ οἳ τε πολέμιοι
 |abandon
 |brave, strong εἶεν καὶ οἳ |soldier, |having low morale δὲ
 |mercenary
 ἀπῆσαν ὡς περὶ τῶν χρημάτων μαχοῦμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ
 ἑώρα Γογγύλος ὀλίγους μὲν τοὺς |Greek , πολλοὺς δὲ
 τοὺς |impose; shut a door, χεται καὶ αὐτὸς βία τῆς μητρὸς
 ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν, βουλόμενος |partake of τοῦ
 ἔργου· συνεβοήθει δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς ἐξ Ἀλυσάρνης καὶ
 Τευθρανίας ὁ ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου. οἳ δὲ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεὶ
 πάνυ ἤδη |press, ὑπὸ τῶν |arrow καὶ σφενδονῶν,
 |squeeze
 πορευόμενοι |circle, , ὅπως τὰ |tool ἔχοιεν πρὸ τῶν
 |wheel
 |arrow , |with |pass over, cross ἵν Κάρκασον ποταμόν,
 |diffi-
 |wound, bring, οἳ |half |there, here δὲ Ἀγασίας ὁ
 |to grief |barely
 Στυμφάλιος |captain |wound, bring, τὸν πάντα χρόνον
 |to grief

It was now high time to consider how they were to beat a retreat. So seizing all the cattle and sheep to be had, with the slaves, they put them within a hollow square and proceed to drive them off. Not that they had a thought to give to the spoils now, but for precaution's sake and for fear lest if they left the goods and chattels behind and made off, the retreat would rapidly degenerate into a stampede, the enemy growing bolder as the troops lost heart. For the present then they retired as if they meant to do battle for the spoils. As soon as Gongylus espied how few the Hellenes were and how large the attacking party, out he came himself, in spite of his mother, with his private force, wishing to share in the action. Another too joined in the rescue—Procles, from Halisarna and Teuthrania, a descendant of Damaratus. By this time Xenophon and his men were being sore pressed by the arrows and slingstones, though they marched in a curve so as to keep their shields facing the missiles, and even so, barely crossed the river Carcasus, nearly half of them wounded. Here it was that Agasias the Stymphalian, the captain, received his wound, while keeping up a steady unflagging

vocabulary

ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
ἀποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out
 ~basis
ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute
ἀφυλακτέω be off guard
διακόσιοι (ἄ) two hundred
διασώζω preserve through
ἐγγύς near
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue
ἐξαυλίζομαι leave one's quarters
ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals
 ~zygote

θῦμα -τος (n, 3) victim, sacrifice
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
κώμη village
λοχαγός (ἄ) captain
νύκτωρ by night
πόλισμα buildings of a city
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
συμπράσσω cooperate
συντυγχάνω fall in with; happen
ὕστεραίῳς the next; later

μαχόμενος πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ διασώζονται ἀνδράποδα ὡς διακόσια ἔχοντες καὶ πρόβατα ὅσον θύματα.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ θυσάμενος ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐξάγει νύκτωρ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, ὅπως ὅτι μακροτάτην ἔλθοι τῆς Λυδίας, εἰς τὸ μὴ διὰ τὸ ἐγγὺς εἶναι φοβεῖσθαι, ἀλλ' ἀφυλακτεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ἀσιδάτης ἀκούσας ὅτι πάλιν ἐπ' αὐτὸν τεθυμένος εἴη ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἥξοι, ἐξαυλίζεται εἰς κώμας ὑπὸ τὸ Παρθένιον πόλισμα ἐχούσας. ἐνταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα συντυγχάνουσιν αὐτῷ καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους καὶ πάντα τὰ ὄντα· καὶ οὕτω τὰ πρότερα ἱερὰ ἀπέβη.

Ἔπειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Πέργαμον. ἐνταῦθα τὸν θεὸν ἠσπάσατο Ξενοφῶν· συνέπραττον γὰρ καὶ οἱ Λάκωνες καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ὥστ' ἐξαίρετα λαβεῖν καὶ ἵππους καὶ ζεύγη καὶ τᾶλλα· ὥστε ἰκανὸν εἶναι καὶ ἄλλον ἤδη εὖ ποιεῖν.

μαχόμενος πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ |preserve
|through
|slave ὥς |two hundred ἄνδρες καὶ |cattle, flocks, ὄσους
|herds
|victim,
|sacrifice
Τῇ δὲ |the next; |rush; sacrifice Ἐνοφῶν |lead out |by night πάν
|later
τὸ |army , ὅπως ὅτι μακροτάτην ἔλθοι τῆς Λυδίας,
εἰς τὸ μὴ διὰ τὸ |near εἶναι φοβεῖσθαι, ἀλλ' |be off guard
ὁ δὲ Ἀσιδάτης ἀκούσας ὅτι πάλιν ἐπ' αὐτὸν |rush; sacrifice, ὁ
Ἐνοφῶν καὶ παντὶ τῷ |army ἥξοι, |leave one's quarters
|village ὑπὸ τὸ Παρθένιον |buildings of a city . . . |there, here ἰ
περὶ Ἐνοφῶντα |fall in with; happen ὑπὸ καὶ λαμβάνουσιν
αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους καὶ πάντα
τὰ ὄντα· καὶ οὕτω τὰ πρότερα ἱερὰ |leave, get off;
|turn out
Ἔπειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Πέργαμον. |there, here
τὸν θεὸν |greet, salute Ἐνοφῶν· |cooperate γὰρ καὶ οἱ
Λάκωνες καὶ οἱ |captain καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ
|soldier,
|mercenary ὥστ' ἐξαίρετα λαβεῖν καὶ ἵππους καὶ |team
καὶ τᾶλλα· ὥστε ἰκανὸν εἶναι καὶ ἄλλον ἤδη εὖ ποιεῖν.

fight against the enemy from beginning to end. And so they reached home in safety with about two hundred captives, and sheep enough for sacrifices.

The next day Xenophon sacrificed and led out the whole army under the cover of night, intending to pierce far into the heart of Lydia with a view to lulling to sleep the enemy's alarm at his proximity, and so in fact to put him off his guard. But Asidates, hearing that Xenophon had again sacrificed with the intention of another attack, and was approaching with his whole army, left his tower and took up quarters in some villages lying under the town of Parthenium. Here Xenophon's party fell in with him, and took him prisoner, with his wife, his children, his horses, and all that he had; and so the promise of the earlier victims was literally fulfilled.

After that they returned again to Pergamus, and here Xenophon might well thank God with a warm heart, for the Laconians, the officers, the other generals, and the soldiers as a body united to give him the pick of horses and cattle teams, and the rest; so that he was now in a position himself to do another a good

vocabulary

παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend

~genus

παραλαμβάνω receive, undertake,
associate with

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

Ἐν τούτῳ Θίβρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ
στράτευμα καὶ συμμείξας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ ἐπολέμει
πρὸς Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον.

Ἐν τούτῳ Θίβρων |be beside, attend |receive, undertake,
 |army καὶ συμμείξας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ ἐπολέμει
 πρὸς Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον.

turn.

Meanwhile Thibron arrived and received the troops which he incorporated with the rest of his Hellenic forces, and so proceeded to prosecute a war against Tissaphernes and